

THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WHEREIN

The Words of *Lilie's GRAMMAR* are (as much as might be) retained; many errors thereof amended; many needless things left out: many necessities that were wanting, supplied; and all things ordered in a Method more agreeable to Childrens capacity

By *Charles Hoole*. Mr. of Arts of Lincoln-Colledge in Oxford, sometimes School-master of *Rotheram* in *York-shire*.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose) The English Translation is set down on the contrary page for the benefit of Young-learners.

The sixth Edition more exactly Corrected than the former Impressions.

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammar is the Foundation of all Discipline.

LONDON,
Printed for Francis Smith at the Castle and Elephant
without Temple-Bar. 1670.





Imprimatur,

*Feb. Hall : R. P. D.
Episc. Lon. a sac. Domest.
Feb. 26. 1663.*



A

Dr. *Saunderson*
(late Bishop of *Lincoln*)
HIS
Approbation of this
GRAMMAR.

I Have perused this present *Work*, which the Author, to his great Commendation, hath contrived with so much care and judgment, that I cannot but very well approve of it, as being the *shortest, orderliest, and plainest*, for the ease both of Master and Scholar, and with the least variation from the COMMON-GRAMMAR, of any Book that I have seen published in *this kind*.

ROBERT SAUNDERSON.

Ita testor Edvardus Sylvester.

THE
CALIFORNIA GAZETTE

THE WEEK OF 1850

Published weekly, except on Sundays and public holidays, at the office of the printer, in the city of San Francisco, California.

By J. B. COOK, Printer.

Vol. 1, No. 1.

San Francisco, California, 1850.

Printed by J. B. COOK, at the office of the printer, in the city of San Francisco, California.

Subscription price, \$1.00 per annum, in advance.

Single copies, 10 cents.

THE
LATINE GRAMMAR
FITTED FOR
THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

WHEREIN

The Words of *Lilie's GRAMMAR* are (as much as might be) retained; many errors thereof amended; many needless things left out: many necessities that were wanting, supplied; and all things ordered in a Method more agreeable to Childrens capacity

By *Charles Hoole*. Mr. of Arts of Lincoln-Colledge in *Oxford*, sometimes School-master of *Rotheram* in *York-shire*.

And (that nothing might be wanting to the purpose) The English Translation is set down on the contrary page for the benefit of Young-learners.

The sixth Edition more exactly Corrected than the former Impressions.

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammar is the Foundation of all Discipline.

LONDON,
Printed for *Francis Smith* at the *Castle and Elephant*
without Temple-Bar. 1670.

GRAMMATICA LATINA
IN
USUM SCHOLARUM
ADORNATA.

Grammatices Liliæ verbis (quantum fieri liquit) retentis ; multis ejus erroribus emendatis ; minus-necessariis amputatis ; pluribus, quæ deficerent, suppletis ; & omnibus Methodo faciliiori ad tenellæ ætatis captum conformata dispositis.

Opera & Studio CAROLI HOOLE A. M.
è C. L. Oxon. Scholaræ olim Rotherhamensis in agro Ebor.

Adjecta est insuper (nè quid huic instituto desit)
in juventutis gratiam, in adversâ paginâ, Anglicana interpretatio.

Editio sexta prioribus emendatior.

FRANC. PATRI.
Grammatica est omnium Disciplinarum Fundamentum.

LONDINI,
Excudebat pro Francis Smith, ad Castellum &
Elephantum extra Temple-Bar. 1670.

To the Lovers and Professors of
GRAMMAR - LEARNING:

Especially, the School-Masters of his acquaintance, either in
City or Country.

Gentlemen,

I Have lately published some Helps towards
grounding little ones in the Latine tongue:
and finding them (by my own and others pra-
ctice) to become successful; I more willingly go
on to prosecute my begun design: viz. to con-
trive (at vacant times) such necessary Subsidia-
ries for every Classis in a Grammar-
School, as may much facilitate the good
(though with some tedious) old way of teach-
ing by Grammar, Authors, and Exercises.

And because our greatest cumber hitherto
hath been Grammar, I have first begun with
it, and endeavoured to bring the Rules of that
Art to the reach of Childrens apprehensions;
that in daily reading, writing, and speaking
Latine, they may clearly see, and at once un-
derstand the Reason of what they do.

What I have done herein I most humbly
submit to your candid judgements, and if in
your Opinions, I but seem to effect any thing,
that may make our School-labour less trou-
blesom, I have what I desire, and therefore
rest,

Your truly devoted Friend,
and humble servant,
CHARLES HOOLE.

VVHereas it hath been generally desired, that a readier way might be devised for the bringing on of children with more speed and delight, to the attainment of the *Latine tongue*, than that of the *Common-Grammar*: Whereupon sundry learned men, & those well exercised in the *Art of Teaching*, have bestowed much pains to remedy such defects, and remove such inconveniencies as they had observed in the foresaid *Grammar*. And whereas Mr. *Tho. Hayne*, late *School-master* of *Christ Church-Hospital, London*, and Mr. *Simon Humphreys*, now *School-master* of *Stamford*, have for divers years past, well-experienced, and under their hands attested, the Abilities of this Author, Mr. *Charles Hool, Mr. of Arts of Linc. Col. in Oxon.* for a *Work of this Nature*; whereby he was encouraged to frame a *Latine-Grammar*, which might be more fit for the *Public use*. We whose names are under written, having diligently perused this *Grammar*, do conceive the same to be very conducing to the end and purpose for which it was designed and intended. It being a *Work* which (in our opinion) hath marvellously well accommodated the *Precepts of Grammar*, to the capacity of the weakest Learner.

John Edwards, *Dr. in Phys. Profes.*
Nat. Philos. Oxon. Late Mr.
of Merch-Sch. London.

Edvardus Silvester, *School-master in Oxon.*

M. FAB.



HEC Professo—plus habet in recessu quam in fronte promittit. — Quò minus sunt ferendi, qui hanc Artem ut tenuem ac jejunam cavillantur: qua nisi Oratori futuro fundamenta fideliter jecerit, quicquid superstruxeris, corruet: & qua vel sola omnium studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; non quia magna sit opera, consonantes à vocalibus discernere, ipsasque eas in semivocalium numerum, mutarumque parti-ri: sed quia interiora velut sacri hujus aduentibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, qua non modò accuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem, ac scientiam possit.

C I C E R O de Oratore lib. 3.

PRaecepta latine loquendi puerilis doctrina tradit, & subtilior cognitio, ac ratio literarum alit; aut consuetudo sermonis quotidiani ac domestici libri confirmant, & lectio veterum Oratorum & Poëtarum.

Desid. E R A S M U S Roterodamus.

PROCLIVUS est vel in triplici jure Doctoris nomen, quam semel boni Grammatici titulum promeruisse.

GRAM-



THE LATINE GRAMMAR.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

The Latine Grammar containeth Rules of right speaking Latine It hath four Parts.

Grammar is the Art of Writing and Speaking aright.

With the Latines in Latine.

There bee four	1	Orthographie.	Lib. I.
Parts of Gram-	2	Etymologie.	Lib. II.
mar.	3	Syntaxis.	Lib. III.
	4	Profodia.	Lib. IV.

Grammar hath its name from letters, which the Greeks call *Grammata*, and implies as much as *literature*; as if you should call it the *Letter-Art*, or *Skill in letters*; for this Art begins with letters, of which syllables are made; and of syllables, words; and of words, speech; which is either *Prose* or *Verse*.

Orthographie is spent about Letters; *Profodia* about Syllables; *Etymologie* about Words; and *Syntaxis* about a Speech. The natural order therefore requires, that *Profodia* should be ranked in the second place; But we, following the method of the Common-Grammar (because indeed the quantity of Syllables, cannot so well be perceived before Words be understood) thought good to set *Profodia* in the last place.

Lib. I. Of Orthographie.

Orthographie, which

Ortographie is the first part of Grammar, which teacheth with what letters any word is to be spelled; as, *testio* not *lexio*.

treateth.

Orthographie	}	Of Letters.	Chap. 1.
treateth		Of Syllables.	Chap. 2.
		Of Right utterance.	Chap. 3.
		Of Points of Sentences.	Chap. 4.

Chap.



GRAMMATICA LATINA.

De Grammaticâ, & ejus partibus.

Grammatica est rectè Scribendi atque Lo- Grammatica
quendi Ars. Latina rectè
Latinis Latinè. loquendi La-
tine præcep-
ta continet.
Grammaticæ qua- } 1 *Orthographia.* Lib. I.
tuor sunt partes. } 2 *Etymologia.* Lib. II.
} 3 *Syntaxis.* Lib. III.
} 4 *Prosodia.* Lib. IV. partes

Nomen *Grammaticæ* impositum est à *literis*, quas *Grammata* Græci vocant, sonantque idem quid *litera- tura*, quasi *Artem Literariam* dicas : *literæ* enim sunt prima hujus Artis initia, ex quibus fiunt *syllabæ* ; ex *syllabis*, *diſtiones*; & è diſtionibus, *oratio* ; quæ *soluta* vel *ligata* est.

Orthographia versatur in *Literis*, *Prosodia* in *Syl- labis*, *Etymologia* in diſtionibus, & *Syntaxis* in *Ora- tione*. Ordo igitur naturalis postulat, ut *Prosodia* in secundo loco collocetur. Nobis autem methodum *Vulgaris Grammatices* observantibus (quippe, *Sylla- barum* quantitas ante *Vocum* intelligentiam non tam facile percipi queat) ultimum *Prosodiæ* locum assignare, visum est.

Lib. I. De Orthographia.

Ortographia est prima pars Grammatices, quâ I *Orthogra-*
docemur quibus quæque diſtio sit formanda li- phia. quæ
teris ; ut *lectio* non *lexio*.

Orthographia } *De Literis.* Cap. 1.
autem agit } *De Syllabis.* Cap. 2. agit.
} *De Orthoëpia.* Cap. 3.
} *De Sententiarum punctis.* Cap. 4.
Cap.

The Latine Grammar.

Chap. I. Of Letters.

Of Letters

which are

A Letter is the least part of a word.
There be 23 Latine Letters, A B C D E F
G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z.

Which are all contained in this verse.

Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Three things } 1 The Name, whereby it is called.
belong to e- } 2 The Figure or Character whereby
very Letter. } it is known, or noted.
3 The Force, or power, whereby it
is pronounced or uttered.

Letters are distinguished, } Vowels,
according to their } and
sound into } Consonants.

Vowels

A Vowel is a letter which soundeth by it self, and they be five, *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y* the Greek one : of which being diversely placed, or made as many Diphthongs, *ae, au, ei, eu, oe, and y*, as *Harpyia*.

and

A Consonant is a letter which soundeth not, except it be joyned with a vowel, as *B, C, D, &c.* Likewise *J* and *V* become consonants, when they are set before themselves; or other vowels in the same syllable, as *Junio, Jovis, Voluntas, Vultus*.

Consonants

Of Consonants, some are

1 Mutes, which have no sound of themselves, and they are nine, *b, c, d, f, g, h, k, p, q, t*, in which the sound of the vowel follows after.

For *f* answereth to *phi* the Greek letter, and *q* to make it sound takes *u* to it.

2 Semivowels, which have some sound of themselves, and they are seven, *l, m, n, r, s, x, z*, in which the sound of the vowel goeth before.

Semi-

Cap. I. De Literis.

Litera est minima pars dictionis.
Literæ Latinæ sunt Viginti tres, A B C D E
F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T U X Y Z.

De literis

Quæ omnes in hoc versiculo continentur.
Gaza frequens Lybicos duxit Karthago triumphos.

Tria accidunt
unicæque literæ
1 *Nomen*, quo appellatur.
2 *Figura*, quâ notatur.
3 *Potestas*, quâ pronunciatur.

Distinguuntur Lite-
ræ secundum so-
num in
Vocales,
&
Consonantes.

quæ sunt

Vocalis est litera quæ per se sonat ; & sunt quin-
que, *a, e, i, o, u*, & *y* Græcæ : ex quibus variè disposi-
tis totidem fiunt *Diphthongi*, *æ, æu, ei, eu, æ, & y*, ut
Harpyia.

Vocales

Consonans est litera, quæ non, nisi cum vocali jun-
cta, sonat; ut, *B, C, D, &c.* Item & *V.* consonan-
tes fiunt, cum vel sibi, vel aliis vocalibus in eadem
syllabâ præponuntur ; ut, *Juno, Jovis, Voluntas, Vul-*
tus.

&

1 *Mute*, quæ sonum nullum à seipsis
habent, & sunt novem, *b, c, d, f, g, h, p,*
q, t, in quibus sonus vocalis sequitur.

Consonan-
cium aliz
sunt

Nam *f* responderet Græcorum, & *q*
ut sonet semper sibi adsciscit *u*.

Consonantes

2 *Semivocales*, quæ aliquid soni à seip-
sis habent ; & sunt septem. *l, m, n, r, s, x,*
3 in quibus sonus vocalis præcedit.

Semi-

The Latine Grammar.

Semi-vowels are some of them { **Liquids**, which do melt, or lose their force after a Mute in the same syllable; as, *l, m, n, r*.
Double Consonants, which have the force of two letters, as, *x, z*, and *j* between two vowels in single words. For in the word *jejunium*, the first *j* seems to be a single consonant, the second a double consonant, and the third a vowel.

S is neither a Liquid nor a Mute, but a letter of its own power or pronunciation; which some therefore call *Monadicon*, or a letter, of whose sort there is but that one.

H is not properly a letter, but a note of aspiration; as in *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; which before *ie* in Hebrew words is seldom pronounced, for we say *Hjeremias, Hjerosolyma*, as though they begun with *j* consonant; but Greek words are pronounced as if they begun with *I* vowel; as, *Hierarchia*.

Great
and
Small.

Letters according to their shape are { **Great** } which are { **Great characters**; as, *A, B, C*.
 { **or** } written with { **Small characters**; as, *a, b, c*.
 { **Small** }

Great letters are written in the beginning of

- 1 Sentences; as, *Deum time, Fear God. Regem honora, Honour the King.*
- 2 Proper names, as, *Carolus Charles, Londinium London, Thamisis the Thames.*
- 3 The more eminent words in a sentence; as, *Religionis Christianae fundamentum est Fides.*
Faith is the Foundation of Christian Religion.
- 4 Every verse in a Poëm; as,
*utendum est atate; cito pede praterit atas,
 Nec bona tam sequitur, quàm, bona prima fuit.*
**Improve the time; time passeth quickly on,
 Nor doth so good succeed, as that that's gone.**

Small

Grammatica Latina.

{
Semi-vocalium alia sunt
{

Liquide, quæ post Mutam in eâdem syllaba liqueſcunt, ſive vim ſuam amittunt; ut, *l, m, n, r*.
Duplices, quæ duarum literarum vim habent; ut, *x, z, & j* inter duas vocales in vocibus ſimplicibus. Nam in *jejunium*, primam *j* videtur eſſe conſona ſimplex, ſecundum duplex, & tertiam vocale.

S nec Liquida eſt, nec Muta, ſed ſuæ poteſtatis; (ſive pronunciationis) litera; quam idcirco nonnulli *Momadiceu* appellârunt.

H propriè quidem non eſt litera, ſed aspirationis nota; ut, *pulcher, homo, hiatus*; ſed ante *ie* in Hebraicis diſtinctionibus raro pronunciatur; dicere enim ſolemus *Hjeremias, Hjerofolyma*, quaſi ab *j* conſona inciperent; ſed Græcæ voces pronunciantur tanquam inciperent ab *I* vocali, ut *Hierarchia*.

Literæ quoad formam ſuam ſunt;	{	<i>Majuscula</i> , quæ Majusculis characteribus ſcribuntur, ut, <i>A, B, C</i> . <i>Minuscula</i> , quæ minusculis characteribus ſcribuntur, ut, <i>a, b, c</i> .	Majusculæ & Minusculæ.
--------------------------------	---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------

Majusculis inchoantur

- 1 Sententiæ; ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*
- 2 Propria nomina; ut, *Carolus, Londinum, Thamiſis.*
- 3 Diſtiones quælibet in oratione notatu digniores; ut,
Religionis Chriſtiane fundamentum eſt Fides.
- 4 In Carminibus verſus ſinguli; ut,
*utendum eſt atate; cito pede præterit ætas;
 Nec bona tam ſequitur, quàm bona prima fuit.*

The Latin Grammar

Small letters are commonly written in all other places, whereof those are chiefly to be minded which have a double character as *i* and *s*; for *i* and *u* be vowels, but *j* and *v* be consonants, which some call *ja* and *va*. Likewise long *f* is alwayes written in the beginning or middle of a word, but short *s* in the end of it, as *scriptus*.

which stand
for

A word,

05

Number.

When
great
letters
be set
alone,
or but
a few
togeth-
er, they
do sig-
nific
or
stand
some-
times
for

whole words; as, *M. T. C. Mark Tully Cicero*,
S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit, sendeth
much greeting. *A. M. Anno mundi*. In
the year of the world. *A. D. Anno Domini*,
In the year of our Lord. *R. P. Res-*
publica, the Common-wealth. *P. C. Pa-*
tres Conscripti, the Senators. *HS* or *LLS*,
Due libræ & semis, two pound and a half
(the note of a Silver coin worth 1 s. ob.
a q.) *N. B. nota bene*, mark well.

A number; as, I one, V five, X ten, L fifty,
C an hundred, or CC two hundred, D
or D five hundred, or CC or M a thou-
sand, ICCC five thousand, CCCX ten thou-
sand, ICCC fifty thousand, CCCCCC
an hundred thousand, ICCCC five hun-
dred thousand, CCCCC ten hun-
dred thousand or a Million.

The lesser number set before takes away so much as it self is from the greater ; but being set after it, adds so much to it ; as, IV *makes four*, but VI *six*, IX *nine*, but XI *eleven*.

A cross line made over a numeral letter implieth it to signifie so many thousands, as otherwise it would contain lesser sums; as, $\overline{\text{III}}$ three thousand, $\overline{\text{X}}$ ten thousand, and so of the rest.

Chap. 2. Of Syllables.

2 Of Syllables.

A *Syllable*, is a taking letters together, and uttering them with one breath; as, *vir tus*.

And

Grammatica Latina.

In reliquis locis maximā ex parte Minusculæ scribuntur, è quibus istæ sunt præcipuè notandæ, quæ duplicem obtrinent characterem, ut *i u & s*; nam *i & u* vocales sunt; *j* verò & *v* sunt consonæ, quas aliqui *ja & va* nominant, s' longum semper in principio, vel medio dictionis pingitur, sed *s* breve in fine; ut scripsi-

Literæ majusculæ cum solæ aut paucae scribuntur, significant aliquando.

Integra vocabula; ut, *M. T. C. Marcus Tullius Cicero, S. P. D. Salutem plurimam dicit. A. M. Anno mundi. A. D. Anno Domini. R. P. Respublica. P. C. Patres Conscripti. HS. aut LLS. Duæ libræ & semis* (notā nummi sesterii valentis asses duos cum semisse) *N. B. Nota bene.*

Numerum; ut, *I unum, V quinque, X decem, L quinquaginta, C centum, & vel CC ducenti, I & vel D quingenti, & vel CII & vel M mille, I & & & quinque millia, CC I & & & decem millia, I & & & & quinquaginta millia, CCC I & & & & centena millia, I & & & & & quingenta millia, CCCC I & & & & & decies centena millia.*

Quæ significat Vocabulum.

Numerum.

Minor numerus præpositus, tantundem demit majori sequenti; postpositus verò tantundem addit: ut, *IV* valet quatuor, *VI* verò sex, *IX* valet novem, ac *XI* undecim.

Linea transversa notis numericis superposita, eandem tot millia continere innuit, quot alioqui minores numeros continerent, ut *III* tria millia, *X* decem millia, & sic de cæteris.

Chap. 2. De syllabis.

Syllaba est comprehensio literarum uno spiritu prolata; ut, *vir-tus.*

B

Estque

De syllabis.

and

And it is

Improper, which consisteth of one only vowel or diphthong; as, *A-a-cus*.
Proper, which consisteth of one or more consonants taken together with a vowel or diphthong; as, *Cæ-le-stis*.

Of parting
and putting
them toge-
ther.

He that would write rightly, must learn as he writes, *to part syllables, and put them together*.

Note therefore that

1. A Syllable in Latine doth not exceed the number of six letters; as, *Sethrs*, *Scorbs*.
2. In words of many syllables a consonant set between two vowels belongs to the latter; as, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. If a consonant be doubled, the first belongs to the foregoing, and the latter to the following syllable; as, *An-nus*.
4. Consonants which cannot be joyned in the beginning of a word, must be parted in the middle of it; as, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonants which can be joyned in the begining of a word, must not be parted in the middle; as, *no-ster*.

6. In simple words these letters alway belong to the following vowel, viz.	bd	as	He-bdomas	because we say	Bdellium.
	cn		Te-chna.		Cncus.
	et		Do-ctus.		Ctesipho.
	gn		A-gnus.		Gnatus.
	mn		A-mnis.		Mnemosyne
	phth		Na-phtha.		Phthibis.
	ps		Scri-psi.		Psitacus.
	pt		A-ptus.		Ptolomæus
	sb		Le-sbia.		Sbegis.
	sc		Pi-scis.		Scamnum.
	sm		Co-smus.		Smaragdus
	sp		A-sper.		Spero.
	sq		Te-squa.		Squalor.
	st		Pa-stor.		Sterto.
	tl		A-tlas.		tleptolemus.
	tm		La-tmius.		Tmolus.
	tn		A-tna.		Thnesko.

7. In

Grammatica Latina.

II

Estque { *Impropria*, quæ constant ex solâ vocali vel diphthongo; ut, *A-a-cus*.
{ *Propria*, quæ constant ex consonante unâ vel pluribus, cum vocali vel diphthongo comprehensis; ut, *Cæ-le-stis*.

&

Reâ scripturo discendum est syllabas, inter scribendum, aptè distinguere, atque connectere.

earundem
distinctione
vel
connexione.

Notandum igitur quod

1. Syllaba apud Latinos numerum senarium literarum non excedit; ut, *Stirps*, *Scorbs*.
2. In Polysyllabis consonans inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet; ut, *Do-mi-nus*.
3. Si consonans geminetur, prior ad præcedentem, posterior ad sequentem syllabam pertinet; ut, *An-nus*.
4. Consonæ, quæ in initio vocis conjungi non possunt, in medio sunt distinguendæ; ut, *Sul-cus*.
5. Consonæ quæ in initio vocis conjungi possunt, in medio non sunt distinguendæ; ut, *No-ster*.

	<i>bd</i>		<i>He-bdomas</i>		<i>Bdellium.</i>
	<i>cn</i>		<i>Te-chna</i>		<i>Cneus.</i>
6. In	<i>et</i>		<i>Do-ctus</i>		<i>Ctesipho.</i>
simpli-	<i>gn</i>		<i>A-guus</i>		<i>Gnatus.</i>
cibus	<i>mn</i>		<i>A-mnis</i>		<i>Macmosyne</i>
voci-	<i>phth</i>		<i>Na-phiha</i>		<i>Phthiſis.</i>
bus hæ	<i>ps</i>		<i>Scri-psi</i>		<i>Psittacus.</i>
literæ	<i>pt</i>		<i>A-ptus</i>		<i>Ptolomæus</i>
vocali	<i>sb</i>	ut	<i>Le-sbia</i>	quia dicitur	<i>Sbesia.</i>
se-	<i>sc</i>		<i>Pi-scis</i>		<i>Scamnium.</i>
quenti	<i>sm</i>		<i>Co-smus</i>		<i>Smaragdus</i>
sem-	<i>sp</i>		<i>A-sper</i>		<i>Spero.</i>
per ad-	<i>sq</i>		<i>Te-squa</i>		<i>Squalor.</i>
hæ-	<i>st</i>		<i>Pa-ſtor</i>		<i>Sterto.</i>
rent,	<i>tl</i>		<i>A-ilas</i>		<i>Tisptolemus</i>
v. r.	<i>tm</i>		<i>La-tmius</i>		<i>Tmolus.</i>
	<i>tn</i>		<i>A-tna</i>		<i>Thnesko.</i>

B 2

7. In

7. In words compounded every part must be separated from another; as, *Abf-con-do*.
8. In words compounded with a preposition, we must respect the ear and good sound; as, *Aufero*, not *Absfero*; and *Abſtuli*, not *Autuli*: and therefore it is that consonants are often times put in: as *Redamo*, for *Reamo*; *Ambigo* for *Amigo*.
9. *S* is rightly written after *X* in compound words, whose simples begin with *s*; as *Exſcribo*, of *ex* and *ſcribo*, *exſul* of *ex* and *ſolum*: but not in others, as, *Exoro* of *Ex* and *oro*, *Exigo* of *Ex* and *ago*.
10. *Ti* before a vowel is pronounced like *ſi*; as, *Oratio*. Except,
 1. In the beginning of a word, as, *Tiara*.
 2. When *ſ* goeth immediately before it; as, *Queſtio*.
 3. In poetical Infinitive Moods; as, *mitti*, for *mitti*.
 4. In words borrowed from other languages; as *Politia*.

Chap. 3. Of Right Utterance.

3. Of Right Uttering and amending the faults in Pronouncing.

O *Rhœpîe*, or Right Utterance, is the manner of right ſpeaking our; as, *Homo*, not *omo*.

Boyes muſt neither over-haſten their ſpeech, nor pauſe between every word; but muſt be made to avoid the uſual faults in pronouncing; ſuch as are,

1. *Trauliſm*, when one ſtuttereth or ſtammereth; as *Catacanit*, for *canit*, which fault may be amended by quickly patterning over ſome ribble rabble made hard to pronounce on purpoſe; as,

Arx, tridens, roſtris, ſphinx, præſter, torrida, ſeps, ſtrix,

2. *Pla-*

Grammatica Latina.

I.

7. In compositis quæque pars ab alterâ separanda est; ut, *Abf-con-do*.
8. In compositis cum præpositione auribus & *Eupho-niæ* serviendum est; ut, *Aufero* non *Absfero*, & *ab-stuli* non *autuli* : ideòque Consonantes non rarò interferuntur ; ut, *Redamo* pro *Reamo*, *Ambigo* pro *Amigo*.
9. Post *X* in compositis, quorum simplicia incipiunt ab *S* rectissimè scribitur *s*; ut, *Ex-scribo*, ab *ex* & *scribo*; *ex-sul*, ab *ex* & *solum*, sed non in aliis; ut *exoro* ab *ex* & *oro*; *exigo*, ab *ex* & *ago*.
10. *Ti* ante vocalem liquefcit *fi*; ut, *Oratio*.
Nisi,
1. In initio dictionis; ut, *Tiara*.
2. Quando *s* præcedit; ut, *Quæstia*.
3. In poëticis infinitivis; ut, *mittier*.
4. In dictionibus mutuatitiis; ut, *Politia*.

Cap. 3. De orthoëpia.

O rthoëpia est rectè Enunciandi ratio ; ut, *Homo* non *Omo*.

Pueri nec sermonem præcipitent, nec ad singulas quasque voces confilescant. Dererrendi sunt autem à vitiis sermonis vulgò propriis, cujusmodi sunt.

1. *Traulismus*, qui est hæsitantia vel titubantia oris; ut, *Cacacanit* pro *Canit*. Cui vitio facilè succurritur, si centones quosdam affectatæ difficultatis, quàm citissimè volvant; ut,

Arx, iridens, rostris, sphinx, præster, corrida, seps, strix.

3. De Orthoëpia, & vitiis sermonis emendandis.

2. *Plateasm*, when one speaketh too broadly; as, *Argo* for *Ergo*. *Mountes* for *Montes*. *Taibai* for *Tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, when one speaketh too mincingly; as, *Nync* for *nunc*. *Elquis* for *Aliquis*. Or too lispingly; as, *Apuh* for *Apud*. *Amath* for *Amar*.

Chap. 4. Of Points in Sentences.

4. Of points in sentences.

A Point or Pause is a note of distinction, signifying the space of breathing, or how long one may stay his breath. There be eight of these especially to be noted.

1. Comma,

1. A *Comma* is an half circle, which stayeth a sentence a little, by distinguishing its shorter parts; as, *Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Graculus esuriens, in Caelum, iusseris, ibit.*

2. Colon :

2. A *Colon* is two pricks, which suspends a sentence somewhat long, by dividing it in the midst; as, *Utendum est atate : cito pede praterit atas.*

3. Semi-colon ;

3. A *Semicolon* is a prick with a *Comma* under it, staying a sentence longer than a *Comma*, and not so long as a *Colon*; as, *Tu, quid divitiæ possunt, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*

4. Period.

4. A *Period* is a full prick after a perfect sentence, as, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. Parenthesis ()

5. A *Parenthesis* is two half Moons including a sentence, which, though it be taken away, the speech nevertheless will be whole; as,

———— *Princeps (quia bella mirantur Hostes,) militibus urbes premunit & armis.*

6. Interrogation ?

6. An *Interrogation* marks a question with two pricks, whereof the higher hath a tail upward: as, *Quomodo vales ?*

7. Exclamation !

7. An *Exclamation* is marked with two pricks, whereof the upper is a line coming down upon a point as, *O tempora ! O mores !*

8. Hyphen

2. *Plateasmus*, est justo crassior pronuntiatio : ut, *Argo* pro *Ergo*. *Montes* pro *Monte*. *Taibai* pro *Tibi*.

3. *Ischnotes*, est justo exilior pronuntiatio; ut, *Nunc* pro *Nunc*. *Aliquis* pro *Aliquis*. Aut blæsius, ut, *Apud* pro *Apud*. *Amat* pro *Amat*.

Cap. 4. De Sententiarum Punctis.

Punctum sive Pausa est nota distinctionis, respirandi intervallum significans. Horum octo sunt præcipue notanda.

1. *Comma* est semi-circulus, sententiam sustinens, breviores ejus clausulas distinguendo : ut:

Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes, Græculus esuriens, in Cælum, jusseris, ibit.

2. *Colon* sunt duo puncta, quæ sententiam diutius suspendunt, medias ejus partes dirimendo : ut, *utendum est ætate : cito pede præterit ætas.*

3. *Semicolon* est punctum cum Commata subiecto, sententiam diutius paulò sustinens quàm Comma : colon ; minùs diu verò quàm Colon : ut, *Tu, quid divitiæ possint, consideras; quid virtus, non item.*

4. *Periodus* est punctum plenum post perfectam sententiam : ut, *Deum time. Regem honora.*

5. *Parentthesis* sunt duæ semilunulæ sententiam includens, quæ remorâ sermo tamen manet integer : ut, *thesis ()*

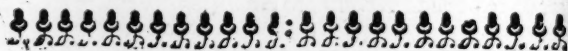
Princeps (quia bella minantur Hostes) militibus urbes præmunit, & armis.

6. *Interrogatio* signat questionem duobus punctis, quorum superius est caudatum ; ut, *Quomodo va-*

7. *Exclamatio* item notatur duobus punctis, quorum superius est lincola in punctum descendens ; ut, *O tempora ! O mores !*

§. Hyphen.

§. *Hyphen* is a little stroke interposed in a word divided at the end of a line; as, *Humanissimè*: or, in words that are united, but not compounded; as, *Res-publica*, a Common-wealth.



BOOK. II.

Of Etymologia.

Etymologic

ETYMOLOGIE is the second part of Grammar, which teacheth how to know the difference of words, duly considering the properties or things belonging to every one of them.

teacheth

Now, a word is a dart or piece of a Speech, which it self doth signifie something, but cannot be divided into parts that signifie: as, *Pi-e-tas*, Godliness.

Chap. I.

Of the eight Parts of Speech, and their general Accidents.

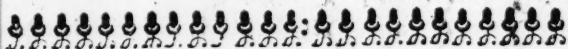
Of the eight
Parts of
Speech;
which are

THere bee
eight sorts
of words:

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1. A Noun. | Chap. 2. |
| 2. A Pronoun. | Chap. 23. |
| 3. A Verb. | Chap. 34. |
| 4. A Participle. | Chap. 39. |
| 5. An Adverb. | Chap. 40. |
| 6. A Conjunction. | Chap. 41. |
| 7. A Preposition. | Chap. 42. |
| 8. An Interjection. | Chap. 43. |

And

3. *Hyphen* est lincola interposita voci 3. *Hyphen* dissectæ in fine lineæ, ut, *Humanis-* *simè* : aut in vocibus unitis, sed non compositis; ut *Res-publica*.



LIB. II.

De Etymologia.

ETYMOLOGIA est secunda pars Gram. Etymologia maticæ, quæ docet dictionum discrimina, singularum proprietates, sive Accidentia diligentèr expendens.

Est autem dictio sive vox, pars orationis, quæ ipsa aliquid significat, sed in partes significantes dividi non potest : ut, *Pi-t-tas*.

Cap. 1.

De octo Partibus Orationis, & earum Accidentibus generalibus.

Octo sunt vocum genera :

1. *Nomen.*
2. *Pronomen.*
3. *Verbum.*
4. *Participium.*
5. *Adverbium.*
6. *Conjunctio.*
7. *Prepositio.*
8. *Interjectio.*

Cap. 2.

Cap. 23. De octo

Cap. 24. Partibus

Cap. 39. Orationis;

Cap. 40. quæ sunt

Cap. 41.

Cap. 42.

Cap. 43.

Atque

The Latine Grammar.

And these be commonly called *Parts of Speech*, because of them every speech is made; though they are seldom all to be found in one Speech

Declined or Undeclined, four	{ <i>first</i> } { <i>latter</i> }	of these are	{ Declined, which change their endings. } { Undeclined, which change not their endings. }

There belongs to every Part of Speech

1 Species, or Kinde,	{ according to which a word is }	{ Primitive, which is not derived of any other word; as, <i>Arbor</i> , <i>Amo</i> . } { Derivative, which is derived from another word; as, <i>Arbustum</i> <i>Amicus</i> . }
2 Figure, or Form,	{ according to which a word is }	{ Simple, or single; which is not com- pounded with another; as, <i>Ami- cus</i> , <i>Amo</i> . } { Compound, or mixt; which is made of two or more words; as, <i>Inimi- cus</i> , <i>Redamo</i> . }

There belong to words Declined

To which
belong,

1. *Analogie*, when a word agrees with a Common Rule; as, *Musa*, *Amo*.
2. *Anomalie*, when a word swerves from the Common Rule; as, *Filia*, *Fero*.

Two
Numbers,
Singular,
and Plural.
Three
Persons,
The first,
The second,
The third.

3. Two Numbers } whereof

{ The Singular speaketh but of one; } { as, <i>Lapis</i> a Stone. } { The Plural of more than one; as, } { <i>Lapides</i> Stones. }
4. Three Persons }

{ The first speaketh of himself; as, <i>Ego nu- gans puer ludo</i> . I trifling boy do play. } { The second is spoken to; as, <i>Tu nugans puer ludis</i> . Thou trifling boy playest. } { The third is spoken of; as, <i>Ille nugans puer ludit</i> . He trifling boy playeth. }

Ego and *Nos* be alwayes of the First Person.

Tu and *vos*, and every Vocative case of the Second.

All

Atque hæc vulgò vocantur *Partes Orationis*, quò lex
hisce omnis oratio conficiatur : etsi omnes in una
oratione rarò admodum occurrant.

Harum quatuor	Priores	sunt	Declinabiles, sive variabi- les, quæ in <i>sine</i> possunt variari.	Declina- biles.
	Posteriores		Indeclinabiles, sive inva- riabiles, quæ in <i>sine</i> non possunt variari.	Indeclina- biles.

Accidunt cuique Parti Orationis.

1. *Species*, secundum quam vox dicitur
 - Primitiva*, quæ aliunde non tra-
hitur; ut, *Arbor*, *Amo*.
 - Derivativa*, quæ aliundè forma-
tur, ut, *Arbustum*, *Amicus*.
 - Simplex*, quæ cum alia non com-
ponitur; ut, *Amicus*, *Amo*.
 - Composita*, quæ à duabus vel plu-
ribus fit; ut, *Inimicus*, *Redamo*.
2. *Figura*,

Accidunt vocibus Declinabilibus

1. *Analogia*, cum dictio convenit Communi Regulæ; Quibus
ut, *Musa*, *Amo*. accidunt.
2. *Anomalia*, cum dictio recedit à Communi Regulâ;
ut, *Filia*, *Fero*.
3. *Numeri*
 - Singularis } de uno; ut, *Lapis*, Numeri
duo, } loquitur } duo,
quorum } de pluribus; ut, Singularis,
Pluralis. } *Lapides*. & Pluralis.
 - Prima*, quæ loquitur de se; ut, *Ego* tres,
nugans puer ludo. Prima.
 - Secunda*, ad quam loquimur; ut, *Tu* Secunda,
nugans puer ludis.
 - Tertia*, de quâ loquimur; ut, *Ille nu-* Tertia.
gans puer ludit.
4. *Personæ*
 - tres,

Ego & *nos* sunt semper Primæ Personæ.
Tu & *Vos*, & omnes Vocativi Secundæ.

All other Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles be of the Third, unless *Ego* or *Nos*, *Tu* or *Vos* be exprest or understood.

Chap. 2.

Of a Noun, and its proper Accidents.

A Noun
nameth a
thing,
and is
Substant.

or

Adjective.

A Noun is a part of Speech which nameth a thing without any difference of Time or Person; as, *Manus* a Hand, *Domus* a House.

And it is
either

Substantive, which may stand by it self in a Speech, and requireth nothing to be added to declare its signification; as, *Homo* a Man.

Adjective, which stands in need of a Substantive to declare its signification; as, *Bonus* good.

A Substantive sheweth what a thing is; as, *Equus* a Horse.

An Adjective sheweth what alike the thing is; as, *Albus* White.

Proper,

or

Common.

Both
which
are

Proper, which is spoken of some one thing only; as, *Carolus* Charles, *Londinum* London, *Thamisis* the Thames, *Anglus* English, *Scotus* Scotch.

Common, which signifieth a thing common to many; as, *Homo* a Man, *Urbs* a City, *Fluvius* a River, *Regio* a Country, *Magnus* Great.

It hath

There belong to a

Noun, Pronoun, and

a Participle.

Case.

Gender.

Declension.

Comparison.

Chap. 3.

Chap. 4.

Chap. 11.

Chap. 17.

Chap. 3.

Cætera Nomina, Pronomina, & Participia sunt
certæ personæ, nisi Ego vel Nos, Tu vel Vos expri-
mantur vel subintelligantur.

Cap. 3.

De Nomine, & ejus Accidentibus
specialibus.

Nomen est Pars Orationis quæ rem nominat, Nomen rem
sine ulla Temporis aut Personæ differentia; ut, nominat,
Manus, Domus.

Estque *Substantivum*, quod per se in Oratione sub-
sistit, & nihil addi postulat ad suam sig-
nificationem exprimendam; ut, *Homo.* *estque*
Adjectivum, quod Substantivo indiget ad
suam significationem exprimendam; ut, *Bonus.* *Substanti-*
Adjectivum. *vel*

Substantivum indicat quid sit rei; ut, *Equus.*
Adjectivum indicat quale sit rei; ut, *Albus.*

Quorum *Proprium*, quod rem uni individuo propri-
am significat; ut, *Carolus, Londinum,* *Proprium;*
Tbami sis, Anglus, Scotus. *vel*
Commune, five Appellativum, quod rem *Commune;*
multis communem significat; ut, *Homo,*
Urbs, Fluvius, Regio, Magnus.

Accidunt Nomini, *Casus.*
Pronomini, & *Genus.*
Participio, *Declinatio.*
Comparatio.

Cap. 3.
Cap. 4. Ejus sunt
Cap. 11.
Cap. 17.

Cap. 3.

Chap. 3. Of Case.

A Case is the special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

There be *Six Cases* in both numbers.

Six Cases,
The Nominative,

1. The *Nominative Case* is the first word whereby we name any thing, and it goeth before the Verb, and answereth to the question, *who*, or, *what*? as *Magister Docet*, The Master teacheth.

Genitive,

2. The *Genitive case* signifies whose a thing is, and answereth to the question, *whose*, or, *whereof*? as *Doctrina Magistri*, the learning of the Master, of the Master's learning.

Dative,

3. The *Dative* attributes, or gives something to one, and answereth to the question, *to whom*, or *to what*? as, *Do librum Magistro*, I give a Book to the Master.

Accusative,

4. The *Accusative case* follows the Verb, and signifies whereunto the Action of the Verb referreth; and answereth to the question, *whom*, or *What*? as *Amo Magistrum*, I love the Master.

Vocative,

5. The *Vocative case* is used in calling or speaking to; as, *O Magister*, O Master.

Ablative.

6. The *ablative case* is commonly joyaed with a Preposition that servert thereunto; and answereth to the question, *from whom*, or *from what*? and the like; as, *Accepi librum a Magistro*, I received a book from the Master.

The *Nominative case* is sometimes called the *right* or *streight case*, and the rest *oblique* or *thwart cases*, because their endings swerve from the *Nominative*.

Chap. 4. Of Gender.

Gender is the differencing of Sex in respect of speech.

For

Cap. 3. De Casu.

Casus est specialis, Nominis, Pronominis, aut Participii terminatio.

Sunt autem *Sex Casus* in utroque numero.

Sex Casus.

1. *Nominativus* est prima vox, quâ rem aliquam nominamus : præcedit autem Verbum, & respondet questioni *Quis*, aut *Quid* ? ut, *Magister docet.*

2. *Genitivus* significat cujus sit res quæpiam, & respondet questioni *cujus* ? ut, *Doctrina Magistri.*

Genitivus.

3. *Dativus* quid cuiquam attribuit, & respondet questioni *Cui* ? ut, *Do librum Magistro.*

Dativus.

4. *Accusativus* sequitur Verbum, utpote in quem actio Verbi immediatè transit, & respondet questioni, *Quem*, vel *Quid* ? ut *Amo Magistrum.*

Accusativus.

5. *Vocativus* vocandis compellandisque personis accommodatur ; ut, *O Magister.*

Vocativus.

6. *Ablativus* conjungitur ferè præpositioni *Ablativo* inservienti ; & respondet questioni *à quo* ; & similibus, ut, *Accepi librum à Magistro.*

Ablativus.

Nominativus aliquando *Rectus Casus* dicitur : ceteri verò *Obliqui*, quod eorum terminationes flectant à *Nominativo*.

Cap. 4. De Genere.

Genus est Sexus discretio ratione sermonis.

Discernit

For it makes a difference berwixt Nouns that are used as *Hees* or *Shees*, thereby to know the agreement of the Substantive or Adjective.

Seven Gen-
ders.

Genders of Nouns be seven; whereof the three first may not unfitly be termed *Simple*, and the four last *Compound* Genders.

They are known by their Articles (or notes) which are borrowed of the Pronoun, and be thus declined.

Singulariter		Male.	Fem.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Male.	Fem.	Neut.
	Nom.	<i>Hic</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hi</i>	<i>Hæ</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Gen.	<i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>	<i>Hujus</i>		<i>Horum</i>	<i>Harum</i>	<i>Horum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>	<i>Huius</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>
	Acc.	<i>Hunc</i>	<i>Hanc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>Hos</i>	<i>Has</i>	<i>Hæc</i>
	Voc.							
	Abl.	<i>Hoc</i>	<i>Hæc</i>	<i>Hoc</i>		<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>	<i>His</i>

Masculine. 1. The *Masculine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Hees*; and is declined with *Hic*; as, *Hic vir*, a man.

Feminine. 2. The *Feminine* gender is of Nouns which are given to *Shees*; and is declined with *Hæc*; as, *Hæc mulier*, a Woman.

Neuter. 3. The *Neuter* is of Nouns which are given to things that are accounted neither *Hees* nor *Shees*; and is declined with *Hoc*; as, *Hoc Saxum*, a Stone.

Common of two. 4. The *Common of two* is made of the *Masculine* and the *Feminine* joyned together; and is declined with *Hic* and *Hæc*; as, *Hic & Hæc Parens*, a Parent.

Common of three. 5. The *Common of three* is made of all three *Simple* Genders.

Discernit enim inter ea nomina, quæ tanquam mares aut fœminæ construuntur, propter convenientiam Substantivi & Adjectivi cognoscendam.

Genera Nominum sunt septem: quorum tria prima Genera non ineptè *Simplicia*, quatuor vero postrema *Composita* dici queant.

Dignoscuntur autem suis Articulis (sive notis) qui à Pronominibus accipiuntur; & in hunc modum variantur:

Singulariter		Malc.	Fœm.	Neut.	Pluraliter	Malc.	Fœm.	Neut.
	Nom.	Hic	Hæc	Hoc		Hi	Hæ	Hæc
	Gen.	Huius	Huius	Huius		Horum	Harum	Horum
	Dat.	Huius	Huius	Huius		His	His	His
	Acc.	Hunc	Hanc	Hoc		Hos	Has	Hæc
	Voc.							
	Abl.	Hoc	Hæc	Hoc		His	His	His

1. *Masculinum* genas maribus attribuitur; ejus nota est *Hic*; ut, *Hic vir*.

2. *Fœmininum* fœminis attribuitur; ejus nota est *Hæc*; ut, *Hæc mulier*.

3. *Neutrum* nec maribus, nec fœminis attribuitur; ejus nota est *Hoc*; ut, *Hoc saxum*.

4. *Commune duorum* ex Masculino & Fœminino Commune componitur; ejus nota est *Hic & Hæc*; ut, *Hic & duorum*.
Hæc Parens.

5. *Commune trium* ex omnibus simplicibus generibus trium.

Genders joyned together, and is declined with *Hic*, *Hæc*, and *Hoc*; as, *Hic*, *Hæc* & *Hoc* *Felix*, Happy.

Doubtful.

6. The *Doubtful* may be either the Masculine or the Feminine; and is declined with *Hic* vel *Hæc*; as, *Hic* vel *Hæc* *Dies*, a Day.

Epicene.

7. The *Epicene* comprehendeth both Sexes under one Article; as, *Hic passer*, a Sparrow. And in this Gender, to avoid ambiguity, we use to express the Sex by He, or She; as, *Passer mas* a He, or Cock-sparrow: *Passer fœmina* a She, or Hen-sparrow.



Propria quæ Maribus :

OR,

WILLIAM LILIES Rules,
OF THE
GENDERS OF NOUNS.

Rules of the
Genders of
Nouns are

I. General.

I. Of Sub-

stantives

proper.

I. Proper

names.

1. Of Gods.

2. Of Men.

3. Of Rivers.

4. Of months

5. Of winds

are of the

Masculine

Gender.

Chap. 5.

Of the General Rules of Proper Names.

I. **P**roper Names which are given to Males, or Hees, are Masculines: As 1. Of Gods; as *Bacchus*, *chi*. *Mars*, *tis*. *Apollo*, *inis*. 2. Of Men, as, *Cato*, *tōnis*. *Virgilius*, *lii*. 3. Of Rivers; as, *Tybris*, *bris*. *Orontes*, *tis*. 4. Of Months; as, *October*, *bris*. 5. Of winds; as, *Lybs*, *ybis*. *Notus*, *ti*. *Auster*, *stri*, the South-wind.

II. Pro-

bus componitur; cujus nota est *Hic, Hac & Hoc*; ut, *Hic, Hac & Hoc Fœlix*.

6. *Dubium*, aut Masculinum aut Fœmininum Ar- Dubium.
ticulum indifferenter assumere potest; cujus nota est.
Hic, vel *Hac*; ut, *Hic* vel *Hac Dies*.

7. *Epicœnum* sub uno Articulo utrumque sexum Epicœnum,
complectitur; ut, *Hic Passer*. Hoc autem in genere,
ad vitandam ambiguitatem, sexum exprimere solemus
per marem & fœminam; ut, *Passer mas, Passer fœ-*
mina.



Propria quæ Maribus:

VEL,

GULIELMI LILII Regulæ,
DE
GENERIBUS NOMINUM.

Cap. 5.

De Regulis Generalibus Propriorum.

Regulæ de
generibus
nominum.

1. Generales
I. Substan-
tivorum.

propriorum.

1. Propria;

1. Deorum.

2. Virorum.

3. Fluviorum

4. Mensium.

5. Ventorum

mascula

sunt.

Propria, quæ Maribus tribuuntur, Mascula dicas;
ut sunt, 1. Divorum, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo. 2.

Virorum;

ut, Cato, Virgilius. 3. Fluviorum; ut, Tiberis, Orontes.

4. Mensium; ut, October, 5. Ventorum; ut, Lybs, Notus,

(Auster.

2 Proper Names,

1 Of Goddesses,

2 of Women.

3 Of Cities.

4 of Regions.

5 Of Islands.

6: Fæminines.

II. **P**roper Names shewing the female kind are Feminines, as, 1. Of Goddesses, as Juno, nōnis. Venus, rēris. 2. Of Women, as, Anna, nā, Philoris, loīdis. 3. Of Cities, as, Elis, līdis, Opus, pūntis. 4. Of Regions, as, Græcia, æ. Persis, īdis. 5. Of Islands, as, Cæta, tæ. Britannia, nix. Cyprus, pri.

But some names of Cities are excepted, as, 1. These Masculines, Sulmo, mōnis. Agragas, gāntis. 2. Some Neuters, as, Argo, gi. Tibur, īris. Prænestis, stis, and 3. Anxur, xuris, which is both of the Masculine and Neuter Gender.

Chap. 6.

Of the general Rules of Common Names.

II. General of Common Names.

I Common names of Trees are Feminines.

Common names of Trees are of the Feminine Gender; as, *Alnus*, ni, an *Alder*. *Cupressus*, si, a *Cypress*. *Cedrus*, dri, a *Cedar*. But *Pinus*, ni, a *Pine*. *Oleaster*, tri, a *wild Olive*, are Masculines. *Siler*, lēris, an *Oler*. *Suber*, bēris, a *Cork tree*. Thus, *uris*, the *Frankincense tree*. *Robur*, ōris, an *Oak*, and *Acer*, cēris, a *Maple*, are Neuter.

2 Common names of Birds, Beasts and Fishes be Epicenes.

II. **T**he names of Birds, as, *Passer*, ēris, a *Sparrow*. *Hirundo*, dinis, a *Swallow*. Of Beasts, as, *Tigris*, grīdis, a *Tyger*. *Vulpis*, is, a *Fox*. And of Fishes, as, *Ostrea*, æ, an *Oyster*. *Cetus*, ti, a *whale*, are of the Epicene gender.

3 All that end in *um*, and that change not their ending are Neuters.

III. But here is to be noted that of all the Nouns afore-mentioned, every Noun (except proper names of Men and Women) in *um* is of the Neuter Gender. And so are Nouns that change not their ending.

But

Propria ſæmineum referentia nomina ſexum,
 Fæmineo generi tribuuntur : ſive 1. *Dearum*
Sunt; ut, Juno, Venus. 2. *Mulierum; ſeu, Anna, Philoris*
 3. *urbium; ut, Elis, Opus* 4. *Regionũ; ut, Græcia, Perſis.*
 5. *Inſula item nomen; cen, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.*

2 Propria,
 1 Dearum,
 2 Mulierum
 3 Urbium,
 4 Regionum
 5 Inſularum
 Fæminina
 ſunt.

Excipienda tamen quedam ſunt *urbium*; ut iſta
 1. *Maſcula, Sulmo, Agrabas;* 2. *quedã neutralia, ut, Ar-*
 (cos.
Tybur, Preneste; & genus. 3. *Anxur quod dat utrumq;.*

Cap. 6.

De Regulis Generalibus Appellativorum.

I. **A**ppellativa a borũ erunt muliebria; ut, *Alnus,* II *Generales*
Cupreſſus, Cedrus, Maſ pinus, maſ oleaſter. Appellati-
Et ſunt neutra, ſiler, ſuber, thus, robur, acérque. vorum.

IAppellativa
 Arborũ ſunt
 ſæminina.

II. *Sunt etiam volucrum; cen, paſſer, hirundo, fera-* 2 Appellati-
 (rum) *va volucrũ,*
ut, Tygris, Vulpes; & piſcium; ut, oſtea, cerus, ferarum, &
Diſta Epicæna: quibus vox ipſa genus ſeret aptum. Piſcium: pi-
 cæna ſunt.

III. *Attamen ex cunctis, quæ diximus ante notandũ,* 3 *Omne in*
Omne quod exit in um (ſi hominum modò Propria tollas) um, & invariabile tuum
Eſſe genus neutrum: ſic invariabile nomen. Neutra.

2. Special Rules of common Names are three.

But now will I speak in order touching all other Common names, or which are as Common names; for in these the Gender is alwayes known by the Genitive case, as the three special rules following will shew.

Chap. 7

Of the First Special Rule.

I.
A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case, is Feminine.
Except Masculines.

A Noun not encreasing in the Genitive case singular, is of the Feminine Gender; as, *Caro, carnis* flesh. *Capra, caprae*, a she Goat. *Nubes, nubis* a cloud.

1. **M** Any Names belonging to Men, ending in *a*, are of the Masculine gender; as, *Scriba, bae*, a Scribe. *Affecta, clae*, a Page. *Scurra, re*, a Scold. *Rabula, le*, a Bravler. *Lixa, ae*, a Scullion. *Lanista, te*, a Fencer. 2. Such as come from the first Greek Declension, and ends in *as*; as *Satrapas, pe*, a **Pér**. Or in *es*; as, *Athletes, te*, a Wrestler. And such as are made of them in *a*; as, *Satrapa, pe*, *Athleta, te*. 3. Likewise, *Verris, ris*, a Boar-pig. *Natalis, lis*, a Birth-day. *Aqualis, lis*, an ewer. 4. Words that are compounded of *as* (and signifie more than *as*) a pound weight; as, *centussis, sis*, an hundred pound weight. 5. Add to these, *Lienis, nis*, the milt. *Orbis, bis*, a roundle. *Callis, lis*, a path. *Caulis, lis*, a stalk. *Follis, lis*, a pair of bellows. *Collis, lis*, a little hill. *mensis, sis*, a month. *ensis, sis*, a sword. *festis, sis*, a club. *funis, nis*, a rope. *panis, nis*, bread. *penis, nis*, a mans yard. *crinis, nis*, hair. *ignis, nis*, fire. *cassis, sis*, a net. *fascis, cis* a faggot. *torris, ris*, a firebrand. *sentis, tis*, a thorn. *piscis, cis*, a fish. *unguis, guis*, a nail. *z hoof. vermis, mis* a worm. *vectis, tis*, a door-bar. *postis, sis*, a post. and *axis, xis*, an axle tree. 6. Nouns ending

1. *er*, } *Venter, tris*, a belly; } are of the
in { *os*, } *as*, { *Logus, gi*, a word; } Masculine
2. *us*, } *Annus, ni*, a year; } gender.

Yet

*Sed nunc de reliquis, quæ Appellativa vocantur,
Aut quæ sunt tanquam Appellativa ordine dicam :
Nam genus his semper dignoscitur ex Genitivo :
Infrà ut monstrabit Specialis Regula triplex.*

Regulæ spec-
ciales Ap-
pellativorū
sunt tres.

Cap. 7.

De Prima Regula Speciali, & ejus
Exceptionibus.

Nomen non crescens Genitivo, *ceu*, caro, carnis;
Capra, capræ, nubes, nubis; genus est muliebre.

I.
Nomen non
crescens, est
Muliebre.

I. **M**ascula nomina in a, dicuntur multa virorum;
ut, Scriba, asseccla, scurra, & rabula, lixa, lanista.

Excipiuntur
Masculina.

2. Mascula Græcorum quot Declinatio prima

Fundit in as & in es, & ab illis quot per a fiunt;

ut, Satrapas, Sarrapa, Athletes, Athleta. 3. Leguntur

Mascula item verrēs, natalis, aqualis, 4 Ab asse

Nata; *ut*, centussis. 5. Coniunge, lienis & orbis,

Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, & ensis,

Fustis, funis, panis, penis, crinis, & ignis,

Cassis, fassis, torris, sentis, piscis & unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis, societur & axis.

6. Mascula in r. ex, *ceu* venter; in os, vel a. us; *ut*,
(logos, annus.

Fæmini

Y Et these are Feminines. 1. *Mater, tris*, a mother. 2. *Humus, mi*, the ground : *domus, mi, mūs*, an house or home : *Alvus, vi*, a panch : *colus, li, lās*, a staff : *ficus, ci, cūs*, a fige : *acus, cūs*, a needle : *porticus, cūs*, a gallery : *tribus, būs*, a tribe : *socrus, cri*, a mother in law : *nurus, rūs*, a daughter in law : *manus, nūs*, a hand : *idus iduum*, the Ides of the month : *anus, nūs*, an old woman : *varnūs, ni*, a van. 3. To these you may add Greek words which turn os into us, as, *papyrus, ri*, paper : *antidotus, ti*, an antidote : *costus, si*, the herb cost : *Marj. diphthongus, gi*, a diphthong : *byssus, si*, fine flax : *abyssus, si*, an abyss : *cristallus, li*, crystal : *Synodus, di*, a Synod : *sapphyrus, ri*, a Sapphire : *eremus, mi*, a wilderness : *arctus, eti*, Charles wain : with many more, which would be long to set down.

Neuters.

II. Nouns ending in e, whose Genitive makes *is*, are of the Neuter gender; as, *mare, is*, the sea, *rete, us*, a net. And 2. Nouns that end in *on*; as, *harbiton, ti*, a Hute : or in *um*; as, *ovum, vi*, an egg. 3. *Hippamanes, nis*, Mare-poison : *cacoethes, ths*, an evil custome : *virus, poison* : *pelagus, gi*, the sea. But 4. *Vulgus, gi*, the common people, is sometime Masculine, sometime Neuter.

Doubtfuls.

III. These Nouns are of the Doubtful Gender; *Talpa, pa*, a mole : *dama, ma*, a falow bar : *canalis, lis*, a Channel : *Balanus, ni*, mast : *finis, ni*, an end : *clunis, nis*, a buttock : *restis, sis*, a rope : *perus, ni, nūs*, bignals : *amnis, amnis*, a river. *Pampinus, ni*, a vine-leaf : *corbis, bis*, a basket : *linter, tris*, a cockboat : *torquis, quis*, a gold-chain : *specus, cūs*, a den : *anguis, guis*, a snake : *ficus, ci*, a pile : *phaselus, si*, a barge : *Le-cythus, thi*, an oil-glass : *pharus, ri*, a watch-tower : and *Paradisus, si*, Paradise.

IV. Nouns

Feminei generis sunt, 1. Mater. 2. humus, domus,
Et colus, & quartæ pro fructu ficus, acúsque, (alvus,

Porticus, atque tribus, socrus, nurus, & manus, idus;

Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

3. His jungas os in us vertentia Græca, Papyrus,

Antidorus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,

Crystallus, Synodus, sapphirus, eremus & arctus,

Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

II **N**eutrum nomen in e, si gignit is; ut, mare, rete. Neutra.

2. Et quot in on vel in um fiunt; ut, barbiton, ovum.

3. Est neutrum hippomanes, genus & neutrū cacoëthes,

Et virus pelagus. 4. Neutrum modò, mas modò vulgus.

III. **I**ncerti generis sunt talpa & dama, canalis, Dubia.

Et balanus, finis, clunis, restis, penus, amnis.

Pampinus, & corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,

Pro morbo ficus, fici dans, atque Phaselus,

Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, & Paradisus.

IV. Compositum

The Latine Grammar.

IV. **N**Ouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a*, are of the Common of two gender; as, *Graſſigena, ne*, a Grecian boyn, of *gigno* to beget; *Agricola, la*, an husband: man. of *colo* to till; *advena, ne*, a stranger, of *venio* to come. To these add *Senex, vis*, an old man; *auriga, ge*, a waggoner; *verna, ne*, a bondslave: *sodalis, lis*, a companion: *vates, tis*, a Prophet: *exterritis*, a banished man: *Patruelis, lis*, an Uncle's son: *Perduellis, lis*, an enemy in war: *Affinis, nis*, a kinsman: *juvenis, nis*, a youth: *testis, tis*, a witness: *civis vis*, a citizen: *canis, nis*, a dog: *hostis, tis*, a foe, or enemy.

Chap. 3.

Of the second special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

II.
A noun en-
creasing
Long is Fe-
minine.

If the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular encreasing, sound long, a noun is of the Feminine gender; as, *Pietas, pietatis*, godliness: *virtus, tutis*, virtue.

Except
Masculines.

I **C**ERTAIN nouns of one syllable are Masculine; as *Sal, salis*, salt: *sol, solis*, the Sun: *ren, renis*, the kidney: *splen, splenis*, the spleen, *Car, caris*, a man of Caria: *Ser, seris*, a man of Seres: *vir, viri*, a man: *vas, vadis*, a surety: *as, assis*, a pound weight: *mas, maris*, a male: *Bes, beſſis*, eight ounces: *præs, prædis*, a surety: *pes, pedis*, a foot: *glis, gliris*, a dormouse: *mos, moris*, a manno: *flos, floris*, a flower: *ros, roris*, dew: *Tros, troris*, a Trojane: *mus muris*, a mouse: *dens, dentis*, a tooth: *mons, montis*, a mountain: *pons pontis*, a bridge: *fons, fontis*, a spring: *Seps, septis*, a serpent: *gryps, gryphis*, a gryffen: *thrax, thracis*, a Thracian: *Rex Regis*, a king: *grex, gregis*, a flock: and *Phryx, Phrygis*, a Phrygian. 2. Nouns of many syllables in *n*; as, *Acarnan, nasis*, one of Acarnania: *lichen, chénis*, lichen: *liber, wort*, a dolphin: *phénis*, a dolphin. 3. Nouns that end in *o* and signifie a body; as, *Leo, ónis*, a lion: *curculio, ónis*, a weazel. so also, *senio, ónis*, age: *ternio, ónis*, tresp: *sermo, mónis*, speech.

4. Nouns

V. **C**ompositum à verbo dans à commune duorum Communia,
(est,

Grajugena, à gigno; agricola, à colo; id advena monstrat Excipe hæc
Puerpera.

A venio : adde senex, auriga, & verna, sodalis,

Vates, extorris, patrueles, perque duellis,

Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

Cap. 3. De secundâ Speciali Regulâ, &
ejus Exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc pieras, pieratis,
Virtus, virtutis, monstrat, genus est muliebre.

II.
Nomen a-
cutè cre-
scens est
muliebre.

I. **M**ascula dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quæ
(dam, Excipiuntur
Masculina.

Sal, sol, ren, & splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas,

Pes, Cres, præ, & pes, glis-gloris habens genitivo,

Mos, flos, ros, & Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons,
simul & fons.

Seps pro serpente, gryps, Thrax, Rex, grex gregis, &
Phryx.

2. Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n, ut, Acarnan,

Lichen, & delphin : 3. & in o, signantia corpus,

ut leo, circulio, sic senio, ternio, sermo.

4 Mascula

4. Nouns $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{er} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{os} \end{array} \right\} \text{as} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{crater, tēris a goblet} \\ \text{conditor, tōris a builder} \\ \text{Herōs, rōis a nobleman.} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{are} \\ \text{mascu-} \\ \text{line.} \end{array}$

5. So are also *torrens, rentis, a brook: nefrens, entis, and dis a pig: Oriens, entis, the East:* with many in *dens,* as *bidens, dentis, a two grain'd fork.* 6. Add to these *gigas, gantis, a giant: Elephas, phantīs, an Elephant: adamas, mantis, an adamant: Garamas, mantis, one of Garamaria: tapes, pētis, tapestry: lebes, hētis, a can- dlen: Cures, yētis, one of Cures: Magnes, nētis, a load- stone: meridies, diei, noon.* 7. Nouns compounded of *as*, and signifie part of *as*; as, *dodrans, antis, nine ounces: semis iſſis, half a pound:* 8. To these add *Sam- nis, nitis, a Samnite: hydrops, drōpis, the droppe: niſti- corax, yātis, a night-raven: vervex, vēcis, a wether: phoenix, nīcis, a Phœnix: bombyx, bycis, a silk-worm.* Yet of these *Syren, rēnis, a mermaid:* and alſo *ſeror, ēris, a ſiſter:* and *uxor, ōris, a wife,* are feminines.

Neuters,

II. **T**Heſe nouns of one ſyllable be of the Neu- ter gender, *mel, mellis, honey: fel, fellis, gall: lac, laētis, milk: far, ſarris, bread=cozn: ver, veris, the ſpring: cor, cordis, a heart: vas, vaſis, a veſſel: os, oſſis, a bone: and os, oris, a mouth: rus, ruris, the country: thus, thuris, frankincenſe: ius, iuris, right: crus, cruris, the leg: pus, puris, corrupt matter.* 2. Nouns in *al*, as *capital, talis, a quoff.* And in *ar*, as, *laquear, aris, a vault.* 3. *Halec, lecis, an herrin,* is of the feminine and Neuter gender,

III. Theſe

4. *Mascula in er, or, & os; cen crator, conditor, heros.*

5. *Sic torrens, nefrens, oriens, cum pluribus indens,*

Quale bidens, quando pro instrumento reperitur.

6 *Addē gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamasque, rapésque,*

Atque lebes, Cures, magnes, unūque meridi-

Es, nomen quintæ. 7. Et quæ componuntur ab affe,

ut dodrans, semis. 8. Jungantur Mascula Samais,

Hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, & mascula vervex,

Phoenix, & bombyx, pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his

Sunt muliebre genus, Syren, nec non soror, uxor.

II. *Sunt neutralia & hæc monosyllaba nomina, mel, Neutra*
(fel,

Lac, far, ver, cor, æs, vas vasis, os-offis, & oris,

Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus, Et in al polyssyllaba, in æque,

ut capital, laquear; Nentrum hæc, & muliebre.

III. *Sunt*

Doubtfuls.

III. **T** Hese nouns be of the Doubtful gender, *Pytho, onis*, a spirit of Prophecie: *serpens, entis*, a serpent: *bubo, bōis*, an owl: *rudens, dentis*, a cable: *grus, gruis*, a crane: *Perdix, dicis*, a partridge: *lynx, cis*, a spotted beast: *limax, macis*, a snail: *stirps, pis*, a stock: *calx, cis*, an heel: *dies, diei*, a day, is only masculine in the plural number.

Commons.

IV. **T** Hese nouns be of the Common of two gender: *Parent, rentis*, a parent: *autor, storm*, an author: *infans, fantis*, a babe: *adolescens, scentis*, a youth: *dux, ducis*, a leader: *illex, legis*, a lawless person: *heres, redis*, an heir: *exlex, legis*, an outlaw: Words compounded of *frons, tis*, a forehead: as, *bifrons, tis*, one having two foreheads: *custos, stodis*, a keeper: *bos, bovis*, a neat: *fur, furis*, a thief: *fus, suis*, a swine: *sacerdos, dotis*, a Priest.

Chap. 9.

Of the third Special Rule, and it's Exceptions.

III. A noun encreasing short, is of the Masculine gender. Except Feminines.

A Noun is of the masculine gender, if the last syllable but one of the genitive case singular increasingsound short; as, *sanguis, sanguinis*, blood.

I. **A** Noun of more than two syllables, ending in *do*, which makes *dinis*; as, *dulcedo, dinis*, sweetness: and in *go*, which makes *ginis*; as, *compago, ginis*, a toynt: are of the feminine gender. 2. Add *Virgo, ginis*, a maid: *grando, dinis*, hail: *fides, dei*, faith: *compes, pedis*, fetters: *reges, getis*, a mat: *seges, getis*, standing corn: *arbor, boris*, a tree: *hyems, emis*, winter: *bacchar, charis*.

III. **S**unt dubia hac Python, scorbs, serpens, bubo, ^{Dubia,}
rudens, grus.

Perdix, lynx, lymax, stirps, pro trunco, pedis & calx :

Adde dies numero tantum mas est secundo.

IV. **S**unt Commune, parens, aurorque, infans, adole- ^{Communia,}
scens.

Dux, illex, haeres, exlex; à fronte creata,

ut bifrons; custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

Cap. 9.

De tertia Speciali Regula, & ejus
exceptionibus.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si genitivi,
Sit gravi, ut sanguis, genitivo sanguinis; est ^{III.} Nomen gra-
(mas. viter cre-
scens, est
masculinum.

I. **F**eminei generis fit hyperdissyllabon in do.
Quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in geni- ^{Excipiuntur}
Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis, idque ^{(tivo} ^{Fœminina,}
Monstrat compago, compaginis. 2. Adjice virgo,
Grando, fides, compes, reges, & soges, arbor, hyemsque:
Sic

charis, the herb Ladies-globe, or cloſon-spikenard: *ſindon, dōnis*, fine linnen: *Gorgon, gōnis*, the monster Gorgon: *icon, cōnis*, an image: *Amazon, zōnis*, an Amazon. 3. Greek nouns ending in *as*, *as*, *lampas, pālis*, a lamp. Or in *is*, *as*, *jaspis, ſīdis*, jasper: *cassī, ſīdis*, an helmet: *cūspis, ſpīdis*, a spear-point. 4. One word in *us*, *as*, *pecus, cūdis*, small-cattle. 5. To these add, *forſex, ſcis*, a pair of shears, *pellex, licis*, an harlot: *Carex, ricis*, sedg: *ſupellex, lectilis*, household-stuff: *appendix, dicis*, an appendix: *Hiſtrix, ſtricis*, an hedgehog: *coxendix, dicis*, an hip: *ſilix, licis*, fern. 6 *Halcyon, onis*, a kings fiſher: and *mulier, liēris*, a woman, may be put in this rank, or rule.

Neuters.

II. **A** Noun ſignifying a thing without life, is of the neuter gender, if it end in *a*; *as*, *Problema, mātis*, a problem: In *en*; *as*, *omen, ominis*, luck. In *ay*; *as*, *jubar, bāris*, the ſun-beam. In *ur*; *as*, *jecur, cōris*, the liver. In *us*; *a*, *onus, nēris*, a burden. In *put*, *as*, *occiput cipitis*, the hinder part of the head. 2. Yet of theſe, *pecten, cēnis*, a comb *ſurfur, ſūris*, bran, are maſculines. 3. Theſe are neuters, *Cadaver, vēris*, a carcass: *verber, bēris*, a ſtripe: *iter, tinēis*, a journey *ſubet bēris*, cork: *tuber, bēris*, a toad-ſtool: *uber, bēris*, a dug: *gingiber, bēris*, ginger: *laſer, ſeris*, the herb Ben jaman *cicer, ceres*, a vetch: *piper, vēris*, pepper: *papaver, vēris*, poppy: *ſiſer, ſeris*, a parſnip: *ſter, leris*, an oſier. 4. *Aquor, ōris* the ſea: *marmor, ōris*, a marble: and *ador, dōris*, wheate, are neuters. 5. And ſo is *pecus, cat*, tle, when it makes *pecōris*.

Doubtfuls.

III. **T** Heſe nouns are of the Doubtful gender: *cardo, dīais*, the hinge of a doo: *margo, glais*, a margent: *cinis, nēris*, aſhes: *obex, bicis*, a bolt: *pulois*,

Sic bacchar, findon, Gorgon, icon, & Amazon.

3 *Gracula in as vel in is finita ; ut, Lampas, Iaspis,*

Et cassis, cuspis. 4 Vox una pecus pecudis dans.

5 *His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex ;*

Appendix, histrix, coxendix, adde filixque.

6 *Halcyon, & mulier, possunt hâc classe reponi.*

II. **E** *St neutrale genus signans rem non animatam, Neutra.*

Nomen in a; ut, probléma; en, ut, omen; ar, ut jubar ;
ur dans,

ut jecur; us, ut onus; put, ut occiput. 2 Attamen ex his

Mascula sunt pecten, furfur. 3 Sunt neutra cadaver,

Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, & ubers,

Gingiber, & laser, cicer, & piper, atque papaver,

Et siser, atque filer. 4 Neutra æquor, marmor, adorque.

5 *Atque pecus, quando pecoris facit in Genitivo.*

III. *Sunt dubii generis cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Dubia.*

D

Pulvis

pulvis, veris, dust; adeps, dipis, fat; forceps, cipis, a pair of tongs; Pumex, micis, a pumice-stone; ramex, micis, burstnells; anas, natis, a duck; imbrex, bricis, a gutter-tile; eulex, licis, a gnat; natrix, tricis, a water-snake; onyx, nicis, the nail of ones hand, with its compounds; and flex, licis, a flint; though these be rather used as Masculines.

Commons, IV. **T**Hese nouns be of the common of two gender, *vigil, gilis, a watchman; pugil, gilis, a champion; exsul, sulis, a banished man; praesul, sulis, a super-intendent; Homo, minis, a man; nemo* wants the Genitive case, and in the Dative makes *nemini, no body; martyr, tyris, a martyr. Ligur, guris, one of Liguria; augur, guris, a soothsayer; Arcas, cadis, an Arcadian; Astitis, stitis, a President; miles, litis, a soldier; podes, ditis, a footman; interpres, pretis, an interpreter; comes, mitis, a companion; hospes, spitis, an host or guest; ales, lites, a bird of wing; Praeses, sidis, a President; Princeps, cipis, a Prince; auceps, cupis, a Fowler; eques, quitis, an horseman; obses, sidis, an hostage.
2. And many other nouns derived of verbs; as, *conjugis, an husband or a wife; iudex, dicis, a judge; vindex, dicis, a revenger; opifex, ficis, a workman; and auspex, spicis, a soothsayer.**

Chap. 10.

Of the Genders of Adjectives.

II. General Rules of Adjectives,

I Of one termination,
2 Of two terminations

I. **A**Djectives of one termination are of all the three genders; as, *hic, haec, & hoc felix, licis, happy; hic, haec and hoc audax, daxis, bold.*

II. Adjectives, if they have two terminations, the first is of the Common of two gender; the second, is of the Neuter; as, *hic & haec omnis, & hoc omne, all.*

Pulvis, adeps, forceps, pumex, ramex, anas, imbrex,

Adde culex, natrix, & onyx, cum prole, filioque.

Quamvis hæc melius vult mascula dicier usus.

IV. **C**ommunis generis sunt ista, vigil, pugil, exsul, Communia

Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, & Arcas,

Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes,

Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses,

2. Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur,

ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, & aruspex.

Cap. 10.

De Generibus Adjectivorum.

I. **A**djectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem,

ut, felix, audax, retineant genus omne sub unâ

II. Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut omnis, & omne,

Vox commune duâ prior est, Vox altera neutrum.

II. Regulae
generales
Adjectivorum.
1 Unius vo-
cis.
2 Geminæ
vocis.

D 2

III. At

3 Of three terminations,

III. But if Adjectives do vary three Terminations; as, *Sacer, sacra, sacrum*. **holy**: the first termination is Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third is Neuter.

Except
1 Adjectives
like Substantives.

1 But some are by declining, almost Substantives, yet by nature and use, rather Adjectives: such are *Pauper, peris, puer, puber, beris, of ripe age: degener generis, one that goes out of kinde: uber, beris, plentiful: dives, vitis, rich: locuples plētis, wealthy: soppes spātis, safe: comes mitis, a companion: superstes stitū, a survivor*, and some others, which due reading will reach.

2 Of Adjectives that are declin'd by *er* and *is*.

2 These Nouns have a certain manner of declining proper to themselves; *Campester, of the plain field: volucer, swift in flight: celebrer, famous: celer, swift: saluber, wholesome*. To which add *Pedester, of a footman: equester, of an horseman: acer, sharp, Paluster, of a fen: alacer, cheerful: sylvester, of a wood*. And these you shall decline thus; *Hic celer, hac celeris, hoc celerē, swift*: or, *Hic* and *Hac celeris* and *hoc celerē, swift, &c.*

Chap. II.

Of the first Declension.

There be five Declensions.

D Declension is the variation of a word by Cases. There be five declensions of nouns.

A Noun is known of what Declension it is by the ending of the Genitive case singular; for the Ge-

nitive case of the	1st	2d	3d	4th	5th
ends in	e	i	is	as	ei

III. At si tres variant voces, sacer, ut sacra, sacrum;

Vox prima est mas, altera fœmina, tertia neutrum.

1 At sunt quæ flexu propè Substantiva vocares;

Adjectiva tamen naturâ usâque reperta.

Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber,

Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes;

Cum paucis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.

2 Hæc proprium quendâ sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent,

Campester, volucer, cèleber, celer, atque saluber:

Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junge paluster,

Ac alacer sylvester: At hæc tu sic variabis,

Hic celer, hæc céleris, neutro hoc célere; aut alitèr sic,

Hic atq; hæc céleris, rursum hoc célere est tibi neutrû.

Adjectiva trium vocû, in prima sunt Masculini in secunda fœminini in tertia neutrius generis.

Excipe I Adjectiva propè Substantiva.

2 Adjectiva quæ per er & us, variantur.

Cap. II.

De Declinatione primâ.

Declinatio est variatio dictionis per Casus.

Sunt autem Declinationes nominum quinque.

Dignoscitur nomen cujus sit Declinationis ex Terminatione genitivi singularis; definit enim genitivus

1^{ma} || 2^{da} || 3^{tia} || 4^{ta} || 5^{ta} ||

|| æ || i || is || us || ei ||

D 3

Ge-

Declinationes sunt quinque.

The Latine Grammar.

The Genitive case is formed of the Nominative, (which is the first word) by changing the Termination; and other cases are formed of the Genitive.

The Vocative in the singular number; is, for the most part, like the Nominative; and in the plural always.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the Nominative, the Accusative, and Vocative cases alike in both numbers, which three cases end in *a* in the plural.

The Dative and Ablative plural are always alike.

The Genitive plural in many words, admits a *Syncope*, i.e. the loss of a middle letter or syllable.

Nouns of the first be declined like *Musa*.

The first declension is of Latine nouns (for the most part Feminines) not encreasing, ending in *a*; which are declined like *Musa*, a Song.

The Terminations of the first Declension are	Singularly in the	Nominative	} case, {	<i>a</i>	The Example or Type thereof is	<i>Musa</i>
		Genitive		<i>ae</i>		<i>Musae</i>
		Dative		<i>e</i>		<i>Musae</i>
		Accusative		<i>am</i>		<i>Musam</i>
		Vocative		<i>a</i>		<i>Musa</i>
		Ablative		<i>a</i>		<i>Musa</i>
	Plurally in the	Nominative	} case, {	<i>ae</i>		<i>Musae</i>
		Genitive		<i>arum</i>		<i>Musarum</i>
		Dative		<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>
		Accusative		<i>as</i>		<i>Musas</i>
		Vocative		<i>ae</i>		<i>Musae</i>
		Ablative		<i>is</i>		<i>Musis</i>

Genitivus fit à Nominativo, qui est prima vox mutata Terminatione, alii autem casus à Genitivo formantur.

Vocativus singularis *plerumque* similis est Nominativo; pluralis semper.

Nomina neutrius generis habent nominativum, accusativum, & vocativum similes in utroque numero; qui tres casus in plurali desinunt in *a*.

Dativus & Ablativus plurales, semper sunt similes.

Genitivus pluralis in complurimis *Syncopen* admittit.

Prima declinatio est nominum Latinorum (*plerumque* foeminarum) non crescentium in *a*; quæ variantur sicut *Musa*. Nomina primæ variantur ut *Musa*.

Primæ Declinationis Terminationes sunt	Singulariter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>a</i>	<i>Musa</i>
		Genitivo		<i>æ</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Dativo		<i>æ</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Accusativo		<i>am</i>	<i>Musam</i>
		Vocativo		<i>a</i>	<i>Musa</i>
		Ablativo		<i>â</i>	<i>Musâ</i>
	Pluraliter,	Nominativo	casu,	<i>æ</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Genitivo		<i>arû</i>	<i>Musarum</i>
		Dativo		<i>is</i>	<i>Musis</i>
		Accusativo		<i>as</i>	<i>Musas</i>
		Vocativo		<i>æ</i>	<i>Musæ</i>
		Ablativo		<i>is</i>	<i>Musis</i>

Ejus Exemplum sive Typus est

The Latine Grammar.

As is found in the Genitive case singular in imitation of the Greeks; as, *Pater-familias*, the good man of the house.

The Antients dissolved *a* into *ai*; as, *aulai*, for *aula*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, with some few others; make their Dative and ablative plural in *abus*, to distinguish them from their Masculines, *filius, natus, Deus, equus*, which follow the form of the second declension.

This Declension is also of Greek Nouns, viz. Masculines in *as* and *es*, and feminines in *a* and *e*.

Nouns in *as* and *a* make their accusative in *am*, and *an*, sometimes in the Poëts; as.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Aeneæ</i>	<i>Aeneæ</i>	<i>Ancā, an</i>	<i>Anea</i>	<i>Ancā</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiaæ</i>	<i>Maiaæ</i>	<i>Maiā, an</i>	<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiā</i>

Greek words in the plural number are declined like Latine.

Es makes in the accusative case *en* in the Vocative and Ablative *e*, or *a*.

Nom. | Gen. | Dat. | Acc. | Voc. or Abl.

Anchises | *Anchisæ* | *Anchisæ* | *Anchisen* | *Anchise, vel Anchisæ*

E makes the Genitive in *es*, the Dative in *e*, the Accusative in *en*, the Vocative and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Accu. || Voc. & Abl.

Penelope || *Penelopes* || *Penelope* || *Penelopen* || *Penelope*

Some add hereunto Hebrew words in *am*, as *Adam, Ada*, which are better reduced to the second Declension by putting to *us*, as *Adamus, Adami, Adam*.

As in Genitivo reperitur ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, *Pater-familias*.

Prisci dissolvebant *e* in *ai*; ut, *aulai* pro *aulæ*.

Filia, nata, dea, equa, cum paucis aliis *Dat.* & *Ablativum* pluralem mittunt in *abus*, ut distinguantur à suis Masculinis, *Filius, natus, Deus, equus*, quæ sequuntur formam secundæ Declinationis.

Est etiam hæc declinatio Græcorum Masculinorum in *as* & *es*, & Femininorum in *a*, & *e*,

As & *a* accusativum *am* faciunt, & *an* aliquando apud Poetas; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
<i>Aneas</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneam, an</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>	<i>Aneæ</i>
<i>Maia</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiam, an</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>	<i>Maiæ</i>

Græca in plurali declinantur ut Latina.

Es in accusativo *en* sumit, in vocativo vel ablativo *e*, vel *a*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc. & Abl.
<i>Anchises</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisæ</i>	<i>Anchisen</i>	<i>Anchise, vel Anchisæ</i>

E Genitivum in *es*, mittit, dativum in *e* accusativum in *en*, vocativum & ablativum in *e*; ut,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc. & Abl.
<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopes</i>	<i>Penelope</i>	<i>Penelopem</i>	<i>Penelope</i>

Sunt qui huc addunt Hebræa quædam in *am*; ut, *Adam, Adæ*, quæ tamen melius ad secundam declinationem reducuntur, addendo *us*, ut, *Adamus, Adami*.

Cap.

Chap. 12.

Of the second Declension.

Of the Second like
Magister,
Dominus, or
Regnum.

The second Declension is (for the most part) of Masculines in *us*, as *Magister*, a Master, *Dominus*, a Lord, or of Neuters in *um*, as *Regnum*, a kingdom.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,			The Examples or Types of it are			
	N.	G.	D.		Magister	Dominus	Regnum
	<i>us, um</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
	<i>um,</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
	<i>e, um</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>		<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>		<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
Plurally,							
	N.	G.	D.		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	<i>i, a</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
	<i>os, a</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	<i>i, a</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

When the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative endeth in *e*; but *Deus* God, maketh *o Deus*, and *Filius* a son, maketh *o fili*.

Proper names of Men in *ius*, make their Vocative in *i*; as, Nom. *Georgius*, *George*, Voc. *o Georgi*.

Agnus, a lamb, *lucus*, a grove; *chorus*, a choir; *fluvius*, a river; do make their Vocative case in *e* and in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
We read in the Plural number	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Dios</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Dii</i>

Greek

Cap. 12.

De secunda Declinatione.

Secunda Declinatio est (plerumque) Masculinorum in *us*, *er*, *ut* } *Magister* } Neutrorum in *um*, *ut*, Secunda, *ut*, *Regnum*, *Magister*, *Dominus*, *Regnum*.
Dominus

Terminationis hujus Declinationis sunt			Fjes Exempla, five Typi sunt		
Singulariter,	N.	<i>us, um</i>	<i>Magister</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
	G.	<i>i</i>	<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regni</i>
	D.	<i>o</i>	<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
	A.	<i>um</i>	<i>Magistrum</i>	<i>Dominum</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
	V.	<i>us, um</i>	<i>Magister</i>	<i>Domine</i>	<i>Regnum</i>
	A.	<i>o</i>	<i>Magistro</i>	<i>Domino</i>	<i>Regno</i>
Pluraliter,	N.	<i>i, a</i>	<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Dominus</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	G.	<i>orum</i>	<i>Magistorum</i>	<i>Dominorum</i>	<i>Regnorum</i>
	D.	<i>is</i>	<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>
	A.	<i>os, a</i>	<i>Magistros</i>	<i>Dominos</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	V.	<i>i, a</i>	<i>Magistri</i>	<i>Domini</i>	<i>Regna</i>
	A.	<i>is</i>	<i>Magistris</i>	<i>Dominis</i>	<i>Regnis</i>

Quando Nominativus exit in *us*; Vocativus exit in *e*, sed *Deus* format *o Deus*, & *Filius*, *o fili*.

Propria Hominum in *ius*, faciunt Vocativum in *i*, *ut*, Nom. *Georgius*, Voc. *o Georgi*.

Agnus, *lucus*, *chorus*, *fluvius*, formant Vocativum in *e* & in *us*.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.
Legimus plurali	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divorum</i>	<i>Divis</i>	<i>Divos</i>	<i>Divi</i>	<i>Divis</i>
	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deorum</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Deos</i>	<i>Dii</i>	<i>Diis</i>

Nomina

Greek Nouns of this declension, have three Terminations: *eus* of the Masculine, *os* of the Masculine and Feminine, and *on* of the Neuter Gender.

Eus makes the Genitive case in *ei*, or *eos*; the dative in *ei*, the accusative in *ea*, the vocative in *eu*, the ablative in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| *Orpheus* || *Orphei, pheos* || *Orphei* || *Orphea* || *Orphen* || *Orpheo* ||

Os makes the accusative case in *on*; as, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *Delo*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *Delo*.

But Attick Nouns in *os* make the Genitive in *os*; as, *Androgeos* *Androgeo*, &c. And nouns contracted in *u*, make their Vocative in *u*; as, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On is declined like other Neuters; as, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilii*, Dat. *Ilio*, Accus. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilio*.

Chap. 13. Of the third Declension.

Of the third
like *Lapis*,
or *Caput*.

THe third declension is very diverse. For it contains all Genders, and (at the least) eleven Terminations in the Nominative case singular: in *a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singular.	Nom.	diverse.	The Examples or Types of it are	<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Gen.	<i>is</i>		<i>Lapidis</i>	<i>Capitis</i>
		Dat.	<i>i</i>		<i>Lapidi</i>	<i>Capiti</i>
		Acc.	<i>em</i>		<i>Lapidem</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Voc.	diverse.		<i>Lapis</i>	<i>Caput</i>
		Abl.	<i>e</i>		<i>Lapide</i>	<i>Capite</i>
	Plural.	Nom.	<i>es</i>	The Examples or Types of it are	<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Gen.	<i>um</i>		<i>Lapidum</i>	<i>Capitum</i>
		Dat.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>
		Acc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Voc.	<i>es</i>		<i>Lapides</i>	<i>Capita</i>
		Abl.	<i>ibus</i>		<i>Lapidibus</i>	<i>Capitibus</i>

Nomina Græca hujus declinationis tres habent terminationes; viz. *eus* Masculini, *os* Masculini & Feminini, & *on* Neutrius.

Eus Genitivum facit in *ei*, vel *eos*, dativum in *ei*, accusativum in *ea*, vocativum in *eu*, ablativum in *eo*.

|| Nom. || Gen. || Dat. || Acc. || Voc. || Abl. ||

|| *Orpheus* || *Orphei*, *pheos* || *Orphei* || *Orphea* || *Orhen* || *Orpheo* ||

Os accusativum in *on* mittit; ut, Nom. *Delos*, Gen. *Deli*, Dat. *De/o*, Acc. *Delon*, Voc. *Dele*, Abl. *De'o*.

Sed Attica in *os*, Genitivum in *o* mittunt; *Androgeos* *Androgeo*, &c. Et contracta in *us* formant vocativum in *u*; ut, *Oedipus*, *Oedipu*.

On formatur more aliorum Neutrorum; ut, Nom. *Ilion*, Gen. *Ilui*, Dat. *Ilui*, Acc. *Ilion*, Voc. *Ilion*, Abl. *Ilui*.

Cap. 13. De tertiâ Declinatione.

Tertia Declinatio est admodum varia. Continet enim omnia genera, & undecim (ad minimum) Terminationes in Nominativo singulari: *a, e, i, u, o, s, t, x*. Tertiarum ut, *Lapi, aur, caput*.

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	}	variaz	Ejus Exempla sive Typi sunt	Lapis	}	Caput
		Gen.		is		Lapidis		Capitis
		Dat.		i		Lapidi		Capiti
		Acc.	}	em		Lapidem	Caput	
		Voc.		variaz		Lapis	Caput	
		Abl.		e		Lapide	Capite	
	Pluraliter	Nom.	}	es		Lapides	}	Capita
		Gen.		um		Lapidum		Capitum
		Dat.		ibus		Lapidibus		Capitibus
		Acc.	}	es		Lapides	Capita	
		Voc.		es		Lapides	Capita	
		Abl.		ibus		Lapidibus	Capitibus	

What Nouns
make the
Accusative
in *im*.

The Accusative cases of some words are declined only in *im*; as, *vis*, strength : *ravis*, hoarseness : *sitis*, thirst : *tussis*, a cough : *magudenis*, the stalk of the herb Benjamin : *Charybdis*, a gulf : and *amussis*, a Carpenters line : To which we may add the names of Rivers; as, *Araris*, the Soan in France : *Tybris*, *Tybris* by Rome.

in *im* and *em*

Some make their accusative in *im* and *em* indifferently ; as, *Pelvis*, a Basin : *turris* a Tower : *buris*, a plow tilt : *puppis*, a poop of a ship : *torquis*, a chain to wear about ones neck : *securis*, an ax : *vestis*, a rope : *febris*, an Ague : *clavis*, a key : *bipennis*, a twoble : *aqualis*, a water-pot : *navis*, a ship.

The Abl. in *i*

Their Ablative ends in *i* only, whose Accusative ends only in *im*; as, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Names of months in *er* and *is*, do make their Ablative in *i* only ; as, *September*, Abl. *bri*, *Aprilis*, Abl. *li*.

Neuters, ending in *al*, *ar*, and *e*, for the most part make their Ablative in *i*;

as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Vestigal, Abl. li, toll.} \\ \text{Calcar, Abl. ári a spur.} \\ \text{Rete, Abl. li, a net.} \end{array} \right. \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{For Rete in the Ab-} \\ \text{lative, is of Retis.} \end{array} \right.$

Yet these Nouns in *ar*, and *e*, keepe, in their Ablative case ; as, *Far*, bread-corn : *hepar*, the liver : *jubar*, the sun beam : *nectar*, sweet wine : *gausape*, a frize : *præsepe*, a stall : *Soraacte*, a hill in Italy ; *Præneste*, the city Palestrina : *Reate*, the city Reati in Italy.

Adjectives, having the Nominative common in *is*, *or*, and the Neuter in *e*, make their Ablative in *i* only ; as, *Fortis*, *ti*, strong : *Acer*, or *Acris*, *cri*, sharp.

Nouns, which take on them the nature of Adjectives, make their Ablative case for the most part in *i*; as *Sodalis*, *li*.

Except

Quorundam Accusativi flectuntur tantum in *im*, *Quæ nomina*
 ut, *Vim, ravim, sitim, tussim,* formant Accusativa in *im*.
Maguderim, Charybdim, & amussim.
 Quibus addas & Fluviorum nomina, ut, *Ararim,*
Tybrim.

Quædam Accusativos flectunt in *im*, & *em* com. in *im* & *em*.
 muniter, ut,
Pelyis, turris, buvis,
Puppis, torquis, securis,
Restis, febris, clavis,
Bipennis, aqualis, navis.

Quorum Accusativus in *im* tantum desinit, *is* Ab- Ablat. in *i*.
 lativus exit in *i*, ut, *tussim*, Abl. *tussi*.

Mensium nomina in *er*, & *is*, Ablativum in *i* so-
 lum mittunt, ut, *September*, Abl. *bri*, *Aprilis*, Abl. *li*.

Neutra desinentia in *al*, *ar*, & *e*, Ablativum magna
 ex parte mittunt in *i*,

ut, { *Vestigal*, Abl. *li*. } Nam *Rete* in Ablativo,
 { *Calcar*, Abl. *ari*, } est à *Retis*.
 { *Rete*, Abl. *ti*. }

Hæc tamen in *ar* & *e* retinent *e* in Ablativo; *Far,*
bepar, jubar, nectar, gausape, prasepe, Soracte, Præne-
ste, Reate.

Adjectiva, quæ Nominativum communem in *is* vel
er & *e* Neutrum habent, Ablativum mittunt in *i*; ut,
Fortis, forti; Acer vel acris, acri.

Quæ Adjectivorum naturam induunt, majori ex
 parte mittunt Ablativum in *i*, ut, *Sodalis, li.*

Excipe

Except Proper names; as, *Clemens, tis, Clement.*
 Nouns whose Accusative cases end in *em* or *im*,
 in *e* and *i*. make their Ablative in *e*, and *i*; as, *Puppi*, Accul.
pem vel *pim*, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Par also, with its compounds, makes both *e* and *i*.
 Also nouns of the Comparative degree; as, *melior*,
better, and the rest of the Adjectives, except those
 above mentioned in *er* or *is*. But *Pauper*, *poor*; *de-*
gener, *out of kind*; *uber*, *plentiful*; *sospes*, *safe*, and
hospes, *an host*, make their Ablative in *e* only.

Some Substantives, as, *Ignis*, *fire*; *amnis*, *a river*;
anguis, *a snake*; *supellex*, *household-stuff*; *vectus*, *a*
door-bar; *unguis*, *a nail*, or *hoof*: Gentiles, as, *Arpi-*
nas, *one of Arpinum*; and Verbals in *trix*, as, *Victrix*,
a Conqueress, make their Ablative in *e* and *i*.

Nom. plural
 in *ia*.

Neuters whose Ablative ends in *i*, or in *e* and
i, make their Nominative plural in *ia*; as, *Fortis, tia*,
strong, *felix, licia*, **happy**.

Except Comparatives; as, *fortiora*, **stronger**, but
Plus makes *plura* and *pluria*, **more**.

Es & eis,

Some Nouns make their Nominative & Accusative
 plural in *es* or *eis* the diphthong; as, *Omnes*, or *omneis*
all, and *eis* is sometimes contracted into *is*; as, *Sardis*.

Gen. in *ium*.

Of Ablatives in *i* only, or in *e* or *i*, the Genitive
 case plural ends in *ium*; as, *utili utilium*, **profitable**,
puppi vel pe, puppium, Except Comparatives; as, *melioris*.

And	{	<i>Supplicum,</i>	} of	{	<i>Supplex</i> , a suppliant.
		<i>Complicum,</i>			<i>Complex</i> , a partner.
		<i>Strigilum,</i>			<i>Strigil</i> , an horse-cob
		<i>Artificum,</i>			<i>Artifex</i> , an artificer
		<i>Veterum,</i>			<i>Vetus</i> , old.
		<i>Vigilum,</i>			<i>Vigil</i> , a watchman
		<i>Memorum,</i>			<i>Memor</i> , mindful.
	{	<i>Inopum,</i>		{	<i>Inops</i> , poor.
		<i>Pugilum,</i>			<i>Pugil</i> , a champion.

But *plus* maketh *plurium*.

When

Excipe propria; ut, *Clemens, re.*

Nomina quorum Accusativa per *em* & *im* capiunt, in *e* & *i*,
formant Ablativos in *e* & *i*, ut, *Puppis*, Acc. *pem* vel
pim, Abl. *pe* vel *pi*.

Pav, quoque cum compositis *e* & *i* habet. Comparativa etiam, ut *melior*, & reliqua Adjectiva, præterea quæ suprà dicta sunt in *er* & *is*. Sed *Pauper*,
degener, *uber*, *sospes*, *hospes*, in *e* tantum faciunt Ablativum.

Substantiva quædam; ut,

Ignis, amaris, anguis,

Supplex, vestis, unguis.

Gentilia; ut, *Arpinās*: & Verbalia in *trix*; ut,
Victrix, Ablativum mittunt in *e* & *i*.

Neutra, quorum Ablativus exit in *i*, vel in *e* & *i*, Nom. pl. in
Nominativum pluralem mittunt in *ia*; ut, *fortis, fortia*,
tia, felix, felicia.

Præter Comparativa; ut, *fortiora*; *Plus* habet
plura & *pluria*.

Nonnulla Nominativum & Accusativum pluralem *Es* & *eis*,
mittunt per *es* & *eis* Diphthongum; ut, *Omnes* vel *om-*
neis. *Eis* autem aliquando contrahitur in *is*; ut, *Sar-*
dis.

Ex his Ablativis in *i* tantum, vel in *e* & *i*, sic pluraliter Gen. in *ium*
Genitivus in *ium*; ut, *utili, utilium; puppi* vel *puppe*,
puppium. Præter Comparativa; ut, *meliorum*.

Item præter ista;

Supplicum, complicum, strigilum;

Artificum, veterum, vigilum;

Memorum, inopum, pugilum.

At *plus, plurimum* format.

E

Quando

When the Nominative cases singular end with two Consonants, the Genitives plural end in *ium*; as, *Pars, Partium*.

Except	{	<i>Hyemum</i>	}	of	{	<i>Hyems</i> winter.
		<i>Principum</i>				<i>Princeps</i> a Prince.
		<i>Forcipum</i>				<i>Forceps</i> a pair of tongs
		<i>Municipum</i>				<i>Municeps</i> a free-man.
		<i>Inopum</i>				<i>Inops</i> poor.
		<i>Cœlibum</i>				<i>Cœlebs</i> a single-man.
		<i>Clientum</i>				<i>Cliens</i> a Client.
		<i>Participum</i>				<i>Particeps</i> a Partner.

When like syllables are found in the Nominative and Genitive cases singular, the Genitive case plural ends in *ium*; as, *collis* a hill, makes *collium*.

To which add, { *Virium*, } of { *Vis* strength.
 { *Salium*, } { *Sal* salt.
 { *Ditium*, } { *Dis* rich.

{ *Manium* } of { *Manes* spirits.
 { *Penatum* } { *Penates* household-gods.
 { *Litium* } { *Lis* controverſie.

Yet except, { *Vatum* } of { *Vates* a Poët.
 { *Juvenum* } { *Juvenis* a youth.
 { *Canum* } { *Canis* a dog.

{ *Opum* } of { *Opes* wealth.
 { *Apum* } { *Apes* a Bee.
 { *Panum* } { *Panis* bread.

As a pound makes *assium*, *mas* a male, *marium*, *vas-vadis* a surety *vadum*, *nox* night *noctium*, *nix* snow *nivium*, *os* a bone *ossium*, *faux* a jaw *faucium*, *mus* a mouse *murium*, *caro* flesh *carnium*, *cor* a heart *cordium*.

Uam.

Ales a bird makes *alitrarium*, and *cœlites* the heavenly inhabitants *cœlitrarium*, by taking to them *u.*

BONM.

Quando Nominativi singulares duabus consonantibus finiuntur, genitivi plurales excut in *ium*; ut, *Pars, partium*.

Excipe,

Hyemum, principum, forcipum, municipum;
Inopum, cælibum, clientum, participum.

Ubi in Nominativis & Genitivis singularibus reperiuntur pares syllabæ, Genitivus pluralis exit in *ium*; ut, *Collis, collium*.

His adde;

Virium, salium, ditium,
Manium, penatium, litium.

Excipe tamen,

Vatum, juvenum, eanum;
Opum, apum, panum.

As format *assium*; mas, *marium*; vas *vadis, vadium*;
nox, noctium;nix, *nivium*; os, *ossium*; fax, *fancium*;
mus, murum; caro, *carnium*; cor, *cordium*.

Ales facit *alium*; & cælitæ, *cælitum*, affumen- *ium*.

Bovum of *bos, bovis*, an *Or*, is an irregular word, as also *bobus* and *bubus*, for *beivibus*.

Orum & ium

The Names of Feasts, which are only plural, make their Genitive case sometimes in *orum*; as, *Agonaliorum*: sometime in *ium*; as, *Floralium*; and sometimes both in *orum*, and *ium*; as, *Saturnalia, liorum*, and *lium*,

Abl. in u & ibus.

Neuters singular in *a*, make the Dative and Ablative plural in *is* or *ibus*; as, *Problema, tis*, vel *mutibus*. So also *Quinquatria, tris*, vel *tribus*,

Words derived from the Greek, when they are declined after their own manner, imitate these examples,

Sing.	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	V.	Abl.
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>unte</i>
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yor</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>

Some of these make the Genitive plural in *ay* and *ium*

Chap. 14.

Of the fourth Declension.

Of the fourth like *Manus*, or

THe fourth Declension hath only two terminations in the Nominative case singular,

Cornu.

{ *us*, Masculine and Feminine, } as { *Manus*,
{ *u*, Neuter, } { *Cornu*.

The

Equum à bos, bovis, anomalum est; ut etiam *bebuis* vel *bubuis*, pro *bovibus*.

Festorum nomina quæ tantum pluralia sunt, Genitivum aliquando in *orum*; ut, *Agonalia, liorum*: aliquando in *ium*; ut, *Floralia, lium*: aliquando tam in *orum*, quam in *ium* mittunt; ut, *Saturnalia, liorum, & lium*.

Neutra Græca singularia in *a*, faciunt dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *is* and *ibus*; ut *Problema, matibus*, vel *matibus*. Sic etiam *Quinquatria, triis*, vel *tribus*.

Græco fonte derivata, quando juxta linguæ suæ morem variantur, hæc exempla imitantur.

Sing.	N.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	V.	Abl.	
<i>Titan</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>anos</i>	<i>ani</i>	<i>ana</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ane</i>	Horum nonnulla formant Genitivum pluralem in <i>um</i> vel <i>ium</i> .
<i>Arcas</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ados</i>	<i>adi</i>	<i>ada</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>ade</i>	
<i>Phyllis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>idos</i>	<i>idi</i>	<i>ida</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ide</i>	
<i>Genesis</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is, eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>im, in</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	
<i>Opus</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>untos</i>	<i>unti</i>	<i>unta</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>unte</i>	
<i>Tethys</i>	<i>ys</i>	<i>yos</i>	<i>yi</i>	<i>yn</i>	<i>y</i>	<i>y</i>	
<i>Dido</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	
<i>Achilles</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	

Cap. 14.

De quarto Declinatione.

Quarta Declinatio duas tantum sortitur terminaciones in Recto singulari, Quarta, ut *Manus* aut

{ Masculinorum & Femininorum in *us*, } ut { *Manus* Cornu,
 { Neutorum in *u*, } { *Cornu*.

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly.	Nom.	us, u	The Examples or Types of it are	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	us, u		Manus	Cornu
		Dat.	ui, u		Manui,	Cornu
		Acc.	um, u		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u		Manus	Cornu
		Abl.	u, u		Manu	Cornu
	Plurally.	Nom.	us, na		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus

Antiently the Genitive singular ended in *i*, and *us*, thence the Antients said *fructi* for *fructus*; and *anuis* for *anus*.

The most holy name *Jesus*, makes *Jesum* in the Accusative, and in other cases *Jesu*.

The Dative case hath sometimes *u*; as, *fructu* for *fructui*.

These words make their Dative and Ablative plural in *ibus*; viz. *Artus*, a joint: *arcus*, a bow: *tribus*, a stock: *acus*, a needle: *figus*, a fig: *specus*, a hole: *quercus*, an oak: *lacus*, a lake: *partus*, young: *veru*, a spit: *genu*, a knee.

All other Nouns make *ibus*.

Chap. 15.

Of the fifth Declension.

Of the fifth,
like *Facies*.

THe fifth Declension hath one only termination in *es*; as, *Facies*, a face.

All nouns of this Declension are Feminines; except *Dies*, a day, and *Meridies*, noon-day.

The

Terminationes hujus Declinationis sunt	Singulariter	Nom.	us, u	Ijus Exemplum five Typi sunt	Manus	Cornu
		Gen.	ūs, u		Manūs	Cornu
		Dat.	ui, u		Manui	Cornu
		Acc.	um, u		Manum	Cornu
		Voc.	us, u		Manus	Cornu
		Abl.	u, u		Manu	Cornu
	Pluraliter	Nom.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Gen.	uum		Manuum	Cornuum
		Dat.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus
		Acc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Voc.	us, ua		Manus	Cornua
		Abl.	ibus		Manibus	Cornibus

Olim Genitivus singularis exhibet in *i* & *ūs*; inde Veteres dixerunt *fructi* pro *fructūs*, & *antiū* pro *antūs*.

Sacro-sanctum nomen *Jesus* habet in Accusativo *Jesum*, in reliquis verò casibus *Jesu*.

Dativus interdum *u* habet; ut, *fructu* pro *fructui*.

Hæc Dativum & Ablativum pluralem in *ubus* for-

mant; viz. *Artus*, *arcus*, *tribus*, *acus*;
ficus, *specus*, *quercus*, *latus*;
partus, *veru*, *genu*.

Cætera omnia in *ibus*.

Cap. 15.

De quinta Declinatione.

Quinta Declinatio unicam habet terminationem in *es*; ut, *Facies*.

Quintæ, ut
Faciēs.

Omnia nomina hujus Declinationis sunt scœmini-
na, exceptis *Dies*, & *meridies*.

E 4

Ter-

The Terminations of this Declension are	Singularly,	Nom.	es	The Example or Type is	Facies	The Genitive singular once ended in <i>es, ii</i> , and <i>e</i> , & the Dative sometimes in <i>e</i> . Some Nouns of the third Declension were declined after this; as, <i>plebs, plebei</i> . No nouns of this Declension have the Gen. Dat. and Ablative plural, except, <i>Res, a thing; species, a kinde; facies, a face;acies, an edge; dies, a day; meridies, mid-day, or noon</i> :
		Gen.	ei		Faciei	
		Dat.	ei		Faciei	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Plurally,	Nom.	es		Facies	
		Gen.	erum		Facierum	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciebus	
		Acc.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciebus	

Chap. 16. Of the declining of Adjectives.

Adjectives of three Terminations, are declined like *bonus*.

Adjectives are declined with three Terminations, or three Articles.

Adjectives of three Terminations are varied after the first and second Declension; viz. The termination *r*, like *Magister*; *us*, like *Dominus*; *a*, like *Musa*; *um*, like *Regnum*.

Their Example or Type is,	Singularly,	Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
		Gen.	boni	bonae	boni
		Dat.	bono	bonae	bono
		Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
		Voc.	bone	bona	bonum
		Abl.	bono	bona	bono
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	boni	bonae	bona
		Gen.	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
		Dat.	bonis	bonis	bonis
		Acc.	bonos	bonas	bona
		Voc.	boni	bonae	bona
		Abl.	bonis	bonis	bonis

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singul.	Nom.	es	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	Facies	Genitivus singularis olim etiam in <i>es</i> , <i>ii</i> , & <i>e</i> , exhibat, & Dativus aliquando in <i>e</i> .
		Gen.	ei		Faciei	
		Dat.	ei		Faciei	
		Acc.	em		Faciem	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	e		Facie	
	Plural.	Nom.	es	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	Facies	Quædam nomina tertie declinationis juxta hanc flectebantur; ut, <i>plebs</i> , <i>plebei</i> . Hæc declinatio Genit. Dat. & Ablativum pluralem in nullis sortita est, præter <i>Res</i> , <i>species</i> , <i>facies</i> , <i>acies</i> , <i>dies</i> , & <i>meridies</i> .
		Gen.	erum		Facierum	
		Dat.	ebus		Faciebus	
		Acc.	es		Facies	
		Voc.	es		Facies	
		Abl.	ebus		Faciebus	

Cap. 16. De flexione Adjectivorum.

Adjectiva flectuntur tribus Terminationibus, Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur ad formam primæ & secundæ Declinationis, viz. *r*, sicut *Magister*; *us*, sicut *Dominus*; *a*, sicut *Musa*; *um*, sicut *Regnum*.
 vel tribus Articulis. s. Adjectiva trium Terminationum variantur sicut *Fons*.

Terminationes hujus Declinat.	Singulariter,	Nom.	Bonus	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	Bona	Bonum
		Gen.	Boni		Bone	
		Dat.	Bono		Bone	
		Acc.	Bonum		Bonam	
		Voc.	Bone		Bona	
		Abl.	Bono		Bona	
	Pluraliter,	Nom.	Boni	Ejus Exemplum five Typus est	Bone	Bona
		Gen.	Bonorum		Bonarum	
		Dat.	Bonis		Bonis	
		Acc.	Bonos		Bonas	
		Voc.	Boni		Bone	
		Abl.	Bonis		Bonis	

*unus, one; totus, whole; solus, alone; ullus, any; alter, another; uter, whether, and their compounds, make their Genitive in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*.*

So also doth *alius, alia, aliud*, Gen. *alius*, Dat. *Alii*, &c.

Ambo both, duo two, are irregular, and make their Neuter gender in *o*, and be thus declined.

Plu- ra- li- ter.	Nom.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambe</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Gen.	<i>Amborum</i>	<i>Ambarum</i>	<i>Amborum</i>
	Dat.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>
	Acc.	<i>Ambos</i>	<i>Ambas</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Voc.	<i>Ambo</i>	<i>Ambe</i>	<i>Ambo</i>
	Abl.	<i>Ambobus</i>	<i>Ambabus</i>	<i>Ambobus</i>

Of three
Articles
like *Felix*
or *Tristis*,

Adjectives of one or two Terminations follow the rule of the third declension, and are declined with three Articles.

Their Examples, or Types be	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, hac, & hoc, Felix</i>	Singularly,	N.	<i>Hic, & hac, Tristis,</i> <i>& hoc Triste</i>
		G.	<i>Hujus, Felicis</i>		G.	<i>Hujus, Tristis</i>
		D.	<i>Huic, Filici</i>		D.	<i>Huic, Tristi</i>
		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc, Felicē</i> <i>& hoc Felix</i>		A.	<i>Hunc, & hanc Tri-</i> <i>stem, & hoc Triste</i>
		V.	<i>Felix</i>		V.	<i>Tristis, & Triste</i>
		A.	<i>Hoc, hac, & hoc Feli-</i> <i>ce vel Felici.</i>		A.	<i>Hoc, hac, & hoc Tristi</i>
	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, & he, Felices,</i> <i>& hac, Felicia</i>	Plurally,	N.	<i>Hi, & he, Tristes, &</i> <i>hac Tristia</i>
		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &</i> <i>horum, Felicium</i>		G.	<i>Horum, harum, &</i> <i>horum, Tristium</i>
		D.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		D.	<i>His, Tristibus</i>
		A.	<i>Hos, & has, Feli-</i> <i>ces, & hac Felicia</i>		A.	<i>Hos, & has, Tristes,</i> <i>& hac, Tristia</i>
		V.	<i>Felices, & Felicia</i>		V.	<i>Tristes, Tristia</i>
		A.	<i>His, Felicibus</i>		A.	<i>Tristibus</i>

Nouns

unus, totus, solus, ullus, alter, uter, & eorum composita, formant Genitivum in ius, & Dativum in i.

Sic & alius, alia, aliud, Gen. alius, Dat. alii, &c.

Ambo & duo sunt anomala, & formant neutrum generis per o: sic autem variantur.

Pluraliter.	Nom.	Ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
	Gen.	Amborum	Ambarum	Amborum
	Dar.	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus
	Acc.	Ambos	Ambas	Ambo
	Voc.	Ambo	Ambæ	Ambo
	Abl.	Ambobus	Ambabus	Ambobus

Adjectiva
trium Ar-
ticulorum
variantur,
ut, *Felix* aut
Tristis.

Adjectiva unius vel duarum Terminationum sequuntur formam tertie Declinationis, & flexuntur tribus Articulis.

Singular.	N.	Hic, hac, & hoc, Felix	Singular.	N.	Hic, & hac, Tristis, & hoc, Triste.
	G.	Hujus, Felicis.		G.	Hujus, Tristis.
	D.	Huic, Felici.		D.	Huic, Tristi.
	A.	Hunc & hanc, Felicē, & hoc, Felix.		A.	Hunc, & hanc Tristem, & hoc Triste.
	V.	Felix.		V.	Tristis, & Triste.
	A.	Hoc, hac, & hoc Felice, vel Felici.		A.	Hoc, hac, & hoc Tristi

Plural.	N.	Hi, & hæ, Felices, & hæc Felicia.	Plural.	N.	Hi, & hæ, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.
	G.	Horum, harum, & horum, Felicium		G.	Horum, harum, & horum, Tristium.
	D.	His Felicibus.		D.	His, Tristibus.
	A.	Hos, & has, Felices, & hæc Felicia		A.	Hos, & has, Tristes, & hæc, Tristia.
	V.	Felices, & Felicia		V.	Tristes, & Tristia.
	A.	Felicibus.		A.	His, Tristibus.

Nomina

Nomina Composita à duobus rectis declinantur in utrisque; ut, *Res-pública, Rei-pública, Jus-jurandum, Juris-jurandi.*

Composita verò à recto & obliquo, declinantur tantum ex parte recti; ut, *Pater familiás, Patris-familiás.*

Cap. 17.

De Comparatione.

Comparantur nomina, quorum significatio augeri, minuive potest.

Comparatio est variatio dictionis per Gradus.

Gradus Comparationis sunt tres

{	<i>Positivus.</i>
	<i>Comparativus.</i>
	<i>Superlativus.</i>

Comparationis Gradus sunt tres.

Positivus Gradus est primo vox quæ rem simpliciter, & sine excessu significat; ut, *Tristis, durus.*

Positivus.

Comparativus, Positivi significationem per *magis* auget; ut, *Tristior, durior.*

Comparativus.

Superlativus supra Positivum cum Adverbio *valde* vel *maxime* significat; ut, *Tristissimus, durissimus.*

Superlativus.

{	Comparativus.	} fit regulariter	{	or, & us; ut, à <i>Tristi</i> fit <i>tristior</i> , & <i>tristius</i> ; à <i>Duri</i> , <i>durior</i> , & <i>durius</i> .
{	Superlativus.	} addendo	{	} <i>simus</i> .

Quorundam verò Comparatio est irregularis.

Positiva in *r*, formant Superlativum assumendo *rimus*; ut, *Pulcer, pulcerrimus.*

Exci.

But *dexter*, on the right hand, *dexterior*, more on the right hand, *dextimus*, most on the right hand; and *sinister*, on the left hand, *sinisterior*, more on the left hand, *sinistimus*, most on the left hand, as the Antients formed them, are excepted.

These six ending in *lis*, do make their Superlative by changing *lis* into *llimus*; viz. *Docilis*, *docillimus*, *docible*: *agilis*, *agillimus*, *nimble*: *gracilis*, *gracillimus*, *slender*: *humilis*, *humillimus*, *humble*: *similis*, *simillimus*, *like*: *facilis*, *facillimus*, *easy*.

Such as are derived of *dico*, *loquor*, *volo*, *facio*, are compared as Positives, in *ens*; as, *Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *curling*: *magniloquus*, *magniloquentior*, *magniloquentissimus*, *brag*: *benevolus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *kind*: *magnificus*, *magnificentior*, *magnificentissimus*, *stately*.

If a vowel come before *us* in the end, the Comparative degree is made by *magis*, and the Superlative by *maximè*; as, *Pius*, *godly*: *magis Pius*, *more godly*: *maximè Pius*, *most godly*.

These also are excepted from the General Rule aforegoing.

<i>Bonus</i> good, <i>melior</i> , better, <i>optimus</i> the best.	<i>Multus</i> much, <i>plus</i> more, <i>plurimus</i> the most.
<i>Malus</i> bad, <i>peior</i> worse, <i>pestimus</i> the worst.	<i>Vetus</i> old, <i>veterior</i> older, <i>veterrimus</i> oldest.
<i>Magnus</i> great, <i>major</i> greater, <i>maximus</i> the greatest.	<i>Maturus</i> ripe, <i>maturior</i> riper, <i>maturimus</i> , & <i>maturissimus</i> very ripe.
<i>Parvus</i> little, <i>minor</i> less, <i>minimus</i> , the least.	<i>Nequam</i> naught, <i>nequior</i> naughtier, <i>nequissimus</i> the naughtiest.

And many such like, whose Positives are derived of Adverbs and Prepositions; as, *Citer* hitherly, *citerior*, *citimus*, of *citra* on this side.

Exterius

Excipiuntur autem *Dexter, dexterior, dextimus; & sinister, sinisterior, sinistimus*, pro ut antiqui formabant.

Sex ista in *lis*, formant Superlativum mutando *lis* in *llimus*; viz. *Docilis, docillimus; agilis, agilissimus; gracilis, gracillimus; humilis, humillimus; similis, simillimus; facilis, facillimus.*

Quæ derivantur à *dico, loquor, volo, facio*, comparantur tanquam à Positivis in *ens*; ut,

Maledicus, Maledicentior, Maledicentissimus

Magniloquus, Magniloquentior, Magniloquentissimus

Benevolus, Benevolentior, Benevolentissimus.

Magnificus, Magnificentior, Magnificentissimus.

Si vocalis præcedit *us* finale, fit gradus Comparativus per *magis*, & Superlativus per *maximè*; ut, *Pius, magis Pius, maximè Pius.*

Hæc etiam à Regula Generali præcedente excipiuntur.

Bonus, melior, optimus. *Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum plus plurimum.*

Malus, pejor, pessimus. *Vetus, Veterior, veterrimus.*

Magnus, major, maximus. *Maturus, maturior, maturissimus, & maturissimus.*

Parus, minor, minimus *Nequam, nequior, nequissimus.*

Et istiusmodi multa, quorum Positivi ab Adverbis & Præpositionibus derivantur; ut, *Citer, citior, citimus, à citra.*

Externus

Exterus, outerly, *sextimus*, } of extra without
exterior; *extremus*, }

Inferus, netherly, inferior, *infimus*, of infra beneath

Posterus, afterly, posterior, *postremus*, of post after.

Superus, oberly, *supremus*, } of supra above.
superior; *summus*, }

To which are wont to be added, *ultra*, beyond, *ulterior*, further, *ultimus*, furthest; *Prope*, near, *propior*, nearer *proximus*, the next; *Pridem*, long ago, *prior*, former, *primus*, the first, and *Diu*, long, *diutius*, longer, *diutissimus*, very long.

Unusual,

These words are very seldom met withall in reading Authors, and therefore seldom to be used, viz. *Assiduior*, more daily: *Strenuior*, more stout: *Egregissimus*, very excellent: *Mirificissimus*, very wonderful: *Pientissimus*, vel *piissimus*, very goodly: *perpetuusissimus*, the very hee: *perpetuissimus*, most perpetual: *tritissimus*, most pours: *exiguissimus*, the least that may be: *multissimus*, the most: *proximior*, nearer than the nearest.

Some want the Positive; *Ocyor*, swifter: *ocyssimus*, very swift: *potior*, better able: *potissimus*, the best able: *deterior*, worse, *deterimus*, the worst: *penitior*, inner: *penitissimus*, most innerly.

Defective,

Some want the Comparative; *Novus*, new, *novissimus*, the newest: *inclutus*, famous, *inclitissimus*, most famous: *invitus*, unwilling, *invitissimus*, most unwilling: *meritus*, deserved, *meritissimus*, most deserved: *sacer*, holy, *sacerrimus*, most holy: *falsus*, false, *falsissimus*, very false: *fidus*, trusty, *fidissimus*, most trusty: *nuper*, nuperus, late, *nuperrimus*, very late: *diversus*, diverse, *diversissimus*, very diverse.

Some want the Superlative; as, *Opimus*, wealthy, *opimior*, more wealthy: *juvenis*, young, *junior*, younger: *senex*, old, *senior*, older: *declivis*, down-hill, *declivior*, more down-hill: *longinquus*, afar off, *longin-*

Externus, exterior, {extimus, } ab Extra.
 {extremus, }

Inferus, inferior, infimus, ab Infra,

Posterus, posterior, postremus, à Post.

Superus, superior {supremus, } à Supra.
 {summus, }

Quibus addi solent, ultra, ulterior, ultimus. Proprius, propior, proximus. Pridem, prior, prius, & Diu, diutior, diutissimus;

Hæc in legendis authoribus raro occurrunt, raro igitur sunt usurpanda, viz. Assiduus, Strenuus, Egredissimus, Mirificissimus, Pientissimus, vel piissimus, ipissimus, perpetuissimus, tenuissimus, exiguius, multissimus, Proximior.

Quædam carent Positivo; Ocyor, ocyssimus, Potior, potissimus, Deterior, deterrimus, Penitior, penitissimus. Defectiva.

Quædam carent Comparativo; Novus, novissimus; Inclytus, inclytissimus; Invitus, invitissimus; Meritissimus; Sacer, saceratissimus; Falsus, falsissimus; Fiduus, fidissimus; Nuper, nuperatissimus; Diverfus, diverfissimus.

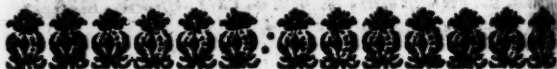
Quædam carent Superlativo; ut, Opimus, opimior, juvenior, junior; Senex, senior; Declivus, declivior, longinquus, longinquior.

longinquior, farther off: salutaris, wholesome: salutarior, more wholesome: supinus, careless: supinior, more careless: adolescens, youthful: adolescentior, more youthful: ingens, huge: ingentior, more huge: satur, full: saturior, fuller: antè, before: anterior, more before: infinitus, infinite: infinitior, more infinite: taciturnus, silent: taciturnior, more silent: communis, common: communior, more common.

Licentior, more licentious, is only the Comparative.

Improper

Sometimes also Comparison is made of Substantives, but abusively; as, Nero, Neronior, more cruel than Nero; Pæus, Pænior, more perfidious than a Carthaginian.



Quæ Genus.

OR,

ROB. ROBINSON'S Rules of Nouns
Heteroclites, or Irregular.

Chap. 18. Of varying Heteroclites.

Heteroclites
are,

Nouns which 1. vary or change their Gender or Declining. 2. Those which want of any new fashion. 3. And those which have too much, are Heteroclites.

These nouns change their Gender and Declining, which are,

Variant

1. Feminines in the singular number, and Neuters in the plural; as,

Page

longinquior; salutaris, salutarior; supinus, supinior;
adolescens, adolescentior; ingens, ingentior; satur, satur-
rior; autē, anterior; infinitus, infinitior; taciturnus,
taciturnior; communis, communior.

Licentior est solus Comparativus.

Interdum etiam à Substantivis fit Comparatio
sed abusive; ut, Nero, Neronior; Pænus, Pænior. Abusiva.



Que Genus :

SIVE,

ROB. ROBINSONI Regulæ de
Heteroclitis, seu Anomalis.

Cap. 18.

De Heteroclitis variantibus.

1. **Q**ue genus aut flexum variant, 2. quæcunq; no- Heteroclitæ
(vato) sunt.

Ritu deficiunt, 3. superant, Heteroclitæ sunt.

Variant.

Hæc genus ac partim flexum variantia cernis,

1 Pergamus, *mi*, the town Pergamus, makes Pergama, *morum* : Supellex, *lectilis*, household stuff, makes supellestilia, unless it want the plural.

2 Neuters in the singular, and masculines and neuters in the plural; as, Rastrum, *stri*, a rake, makes rastrum, & rastra, *strorum* : fræum, *ni*, a bydle, makes fræni, & fræna, *nerum* : filum, *li*, a thread, makes fili, & fila, *lorum*. Capistrum, *stri*, an halter, makes capistrum, & fra, *stroium*.

3 Neuters in the singular, and masculines only in the Plural; as, Argos, *gi*, the City of Argos, makes Argi, *gorum* : cælum, *li*, heaven, makes cæli, *lorum*.

4 Neuters in the singular, and feminines in the plural; as, Nundinum, *ni*, a fair, makes nundina, *narum* : epulum, *li*, a banquet, makes epula, *larum* : balneum, *nei*, a bath, makes balnea, *nearum*, though JUVENAL bath balnea in the plural number.

5 Masculines in the singular, and neuters in the plural; as, Moxalus, *li*, a hill in Arcadia, makes Moxala, *lorum* : Dindimus, *mi*, the top of Ida, makes Dindima, *morum* : Ismarus, *ri*, a hill in Thrace, makes Ismara, *rorum* : Tartarus, *ri*, Hell, makes Tartara, *rorum* : Taygetus, *ti*, a hill in Lacedæmonia, makes Taygeta, *torum* : Tanarus, *ri*, a hill in Laconia, makes Tanera, *rorum* : Massicus, *ci*, a hill in Italy, makes Massica, *corum* : Gargarus, *ri*, a top of Ida, makes Gargara, *rorum*.

6 Masculines singular, and masculine and Neuters in the plural; as, Sibilus, *li*, an hissing, makes sibili, & sibila, *lorum* : jocus, *ci*, a jest, makes joci, & joca, *corum* : locus, *ci*, a place, makes loci, & loca, *corum* : Avernus, *ni*, a lake in Campania, makes Avernus, & Avena, *nerum*.

1 Pergamus infelix urbs Troum Pergama gignit ;

Quod nisi plurali careat facit iſſa ſupellex ;

Singula ſæmineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.

2 Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumq̃,

Raſtrum, cum fræno, filum, ſimul atque caſiſtrum.

3 Argos item & cœlum, ſunt ſingula neutra; ſed audi,

Maſcula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis & Argos.

4 Nundinum, & hinc epulum, quibus addito balne-

(um, & hæc ſunt

Neutra quidem primo, muliebria ritè ſecundo.

Balnea plurali Juvenalem conſtat habere.

5 Hæc maribus dantur ſingularia, plurima neutris ;

Mænalus, atq̃ ſacer mons Dindimus, Iſmarus, atq̃

Tartara, Táygërus, ſic Tænera, Maſſica, & altus

Gargarus. 6. At numerus genus his dabit alter utrumq̃,

Sibilus, atq̃ jocus, locus, & Campanus Averſus.

Chap. 19.

Of Heteroclites that want Case.

T Those Heteroclites which follow are defective in Case, or Number.

²
Defective in
Case,

¹ Aptotes are such as vary no Case; as, *Fas* right: *nil, nothing*: *nihil, nothing*: *instar, like*: such as end in *u* and *i*; as, *cornu*, a horn: *genu*, a knee: *gummi*, gum: *frugi*, thrifty: Likewise, *Tempe*, a pleasant field: *tot*, so many: *quot*, how many: and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

² A Monoprote is a noun of one only Case; as, *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *jussu*, by bidding: *injussu*, without bidding: *astu*, by craft: *promptu*, in readiness: *permissu*, by sufferance: but we read *astus* in the Accusative case plural, and *inficiat*, a denial, which word is only found.

³ Those are Diptotes which have two Cases only; as, Nom. *fortis*, Abl. *forte*, hap; Gen. *spantis*, Abl. *sponte*, of ones own accord: Nom. *plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more: Gen. *repetundarum*, of bribery: Abl. *repetundis*: Gen. *jugerus*, of an acre: Abl. *jugere*: Gen. *verberis*, of a stroke, Abl. *verbere*: Nom. *suppetiae*, aid, Acc. *suppetias*: Nom. *tantundem*, so much, Gen. *tantidem*: Gen. *impetis*, violence, Abl. *impete*: Acc. *vicem*, a turn, Abl. *vice*: whereof *verberis*, *vicem*, plus, and *jugerus*, have all their cases in the plural number.

⁴ Those are Triptotes which have three cases only; as, Gen. *precis*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*, prayer: Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*, help.

Vis, force, wanteth no case except the Dative. And these have all their cases in the plural number.

⁵ Relatives; as, *qui*, which: Interrogatives; as, *ecquis*, who: Distributives; as, *nullus*, none: neuter, neither, and *omnis*, all.

Inde.

Cap. 19.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Casu.

² **Q**uae sequitur manca est Numero, Casusque pro-
(pago. Defectiva
Casu.

¹ Quae nullum variant casum; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar;
Multa & in u singulis, ut sunt haec cornuque, genuque;
Sic gummi, frugi; sic Tempe, tot, quot, & omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros Aperta vocabis.

² Estque Monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una;
Ceu noctu, natu, iussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permissu, plurali legimus astus,
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.

³ Sunt Diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit,
ut, fors, fore dabit sexto; spontis, quoque sponte;
sic plus, pluris habet; repeundarum, repetundis;
Jugeri. & sexto dat jugere; verberis autem
Verbere; suppetix quarto quoque suppetias dant.
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul imperis hoc dat
Impete; jungo vicem sexto vice; nec lego plura.
Verberis, atque vicem, sic plus cum jugere, cunctos
Quatuor haec numero casus tenere secundo.

⁴ Tres quibus, inflectis casus Triptota vocantur,
ut, precis atque precem, petit & prece blandus amicum
Sic opis est nostrae, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus.
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit forte Dativus;
Omnibus his mutilus numerus prior, integer alter.

⁵ Quae referunt, ut, qui; quae percontantur, ut, coquis:
Et quae distribunt; ut, nullus, neuter, & omnis.

Indefinites; as, *quilibet*, any one : *alter*, another : want the Vocative case, and all Pronouns, except *Noster*, ours : *nostras*, on our side : *meus*, mine : *tu*, thou.

Chap. 20.

Of Heteroclites that want Number.

Defective in the Singular Number.

ALL Proper Names, having a restraining nature, do want the plural number; as, *Mars*, *ti*, Mars : *Caro*, *tonis*, Caro : *Gallia*, *lie*, France : *Roma*, *me*, Rome : *Ida*, *da*, a hill near Troy : *Tagus*, *gi*, the River Taio in Spain : *Lelaps*, *pis*, Tempest, a dogs name : *arnassus*, *si*, a hill in Phocis : *Bucephalus*, *li*, Alexanders horse. Add to these the names of Corn; as, *tritium*, wheat. Things sold by weight; as, *Lana*, wool : Of Herbs; as, *salvia*, sage : Of Liquors; as, *Cervisa*, beer : Of Metals; as, *aurum*, gold ; wherein observe the opinion of Authors, for sometimes they keep, sometimes they reject the plural number.

2 *Hordeum*, *dei*, barley : *far*, *vis*, bread-corn : *forum*, *vi*, a market : *mel*, *li*, hony : *mu* *sum*, *si*, wine mingled with hony : *defrutum*, *ti*, wine boiled to the half : and *thus*, *thuris*, frankincense, have only three like cases in the plural number.

3 These Masculines want the plural number ; *Spēr*, *vi*, the evening star : *vesper*, *vis*, the evening : *pontus*, *ti*, the sea : *limus*, *mi*, mud : *simus*, *mi*, dung : *penus*, *n*, vel *penis*, victuals : *sanguis*, *guinis*, blood : *aether*, *vis*, the sky : and *nemo*, no body : but *nemo* wants the genitive and vocative singular, as well as the plural number.

4 These Feminines have seldom the plural number : *Pubes*, *his*, ripeness of age : *salus*, *litis*, health : *salio*, *onis*, like for like : *indoles*, *lu*, towardliness : *vis*, *si*, the cough.

*Infinita solent his jungi, ut, quilibet, alter;
Quinto hæc sæpe carent casu; & Pronomina præter
Quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu.*

Cap. 20.

De Heteroclitis defectivis Numero.

1 **P**ropriæ cuncta notes, quibus est natura coërens, Defective
Plurima nè fuerint, ut, Mars, Cato, Gallia, Roma, Numero
Singulari.

Ida, Tagus, Lælaps, Parnassus, Bucephalusque.

His frumenta dabis, pensa, herbas, uda, metalla;

In quibus Autorum quæ sint placita ipse requiras;

Est ubi pluralem retinent hæc, est ubi spernunt.

2 Hordea, farra, forum, mel, mulsum, defruta,
(husque,
Tres tantùm similes voces pluralia servant.

3 Hesperus, & vespër, pontus, limusque, sinusque,

Sic penus, & sanguis, sic æther, nemo; sed ista.

Moscula sunt num-rum vix excedentia primum.)

Nemo caret genito, quinto, numerusque secundo.

4 Singula feminei generis pluralia raro;

Pubes atque salus, sic talio cum indole, ruffus,

Pix,

pix, cii, pitch : *humus, mi, the ground* : *lues, is, the murrain* : *sitis, is, thirst* : *fuga, gæ, flight* : *quies, etis rest* : *cholera, yæ, choler* : *fames, mis hunger* : *lilis, lis, choler* : *senectæ, tæ, old age* : *juventus, tæ, youth* : *But soboles, lis, an off-spring* : *labes, bis, a spot* : & all nouns of the fifth Declension will have three like cases in the plural number, except, *res, rei, a thing* : *species, ciæ, a kinde* : *facies, ciæ, a face* : *acies, ciæ, an edge* : and *dies, diæ, a day* : which words are whole in the plural number. To these they are wont to add many Feminines; as, *Stultitia, tiæ, foolishness* : *invidia, diæ, envy* : *sapientia, tiæ, wisdom* : *desidia, diæ, sloth* : and a many words of like sort, which reading affords; and these sometimes, but very seldom, have the plural number.

5 These Neuters have not the plural number; *Delicium, cii, ones delight* : *senium, nii, old age* : *letum, thi, death* : *cornum, ni, dirt* : *salum, li, the salt sea* : *barathrum, thri, hell* : *virus, posson* : *vitrum, tri, glass* : *viscum, sci, bird-line* : *pænum, ni, provision* : *instium, tii, vacation-time* : *nihilum, li, nothing* : *veris, the spring* : *lac, etis, milk* : *gluten, tins, glue* : *halec, lécis, an herrin* : *gelu, frost* : *solum, li, a thzone* : *jubar, baris, the sun-beam*. Here also you may put many such like, which you shall meet with as you read.

And Plural;

6 These Masculines have onely the plural number; *Mænes, nium spirits* : *maiores, rum, Ancestors* : *canceli, lorum, a lattice* : *liberi, rorum, children* : *antes, tium, the first rank of vines* : *mensæ, sium, wondrous flowers* : *leones, rum hobgoblins* : *fasti, storum, a Register-book* : *minores, rum, posterity* : *natales, sium, ones stock* : *penates, rum, household gods* and names of places; as, *Gabii, bio um, Locri, ciorum*; and whatsoever the like you read any where.

7 These are of the Feminine gender and plural Number;

Exuv. a,

Pis, humus, atque lues, sitis & fuga jungo, quietem,

Sic cholera, atque fames, bilisque, senecta, juvenus:

Sed tamen hac, soboles, labes, ut & omnia quinta,

Tres similes casus plurali saepe tenebunt:

Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque, diesque,

Quas voces numero totas licet esse secundo.

Isti multa solent muliebria nescere, ut hac sunt;

Smilitia, invidia, sapientia, desidia, atque

Id genus innumerae voces, quas lectio praebet.

Rarius his numerum, quandoque sed adde secundum;

5 Nec licet his Neutris numerum deferre secundum;

Delicium, senium, lechum, coenumque, salumque;

Sic barathrum, virus, vitrum, viscumque, penumque;

Institium, nihilum, ver, lac, gluten, simul haec;

Adde gelu, solium, jubar. Hic quoque talia ponas,

Quae tibi, si observes; occurrent multa legenti.

6 Mascula sunt numero tantum contenta secundo; Et Plurali.

Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, & antes;

Menses [pro fluvium] lemures, fasti, atque minores;

Cum genus assignant, natales: adde penates

Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,

Et quaecunque legas passim similis rationis.

7 Haec sunt Faminei generis, numerique secundi,

Exuviae,

Exubia, arum, an Adders slough: *phalera, rarum*, horse-trappings; *Nom. grates, Acc. grates*, thanks: *manubia, arum*, spoil: *Idus, iduū*, the Ides of month: *antia, arum*, soze-lochs: *inducia, arum*, truce: *insidia, arum*, lying in wait: *mine, arū*, threatnings: *excubia, arum*, watch and ward. *Nona, arum*, the Nones of a month: *nuga, arum*, trifles: *trica, arum*, gates: *Calende, arum*, the first day of the month: *quisquilia, arum*, sweepings: *therma, marum*, hot bathes: *cuna, narum*, a cradle: *dira, rarum*, cursing: *exequia, arum*, rites at funerals: *inferia, arum*, sacrifices to the infernal spirits: *serie, arum*, holidays: *primitia, arum*, the first fruits: *plaga, arum*, hunters nets: *valva, varum*, double, or two-leav'd door: *divitia, arum*, riches: *nuptia, arum*, a wedding: *lastia, etium*, the small guts. To these may be added *Thybe, barum*, *Thybes: Athena, narū*, *Athens* in Greece; of which sort you may find many names of places.

8 These Neuters have seldome the singular number; *Mainia, ium*, the walls of a Town: *tesqua, squorum*, rough places: *precordia, orum*, the midriff: *lustra, strorum*, dens of wilde beasts: *arma, morum*, weapons: *mapalia, liorum*, cottages: *bestaria, riorum*, juncates: *munia, niorū*, an office: *castra, strorum*, tents: *iusta, strorum*, Rites at funerals: *sponsalia, liorum*, betrothing: *rostra, strorum*, a pulpit: *crepundia, orum*, a rattle: *cunabula, lorum*, a cradle: *exta, torum*, the entrails of beasts: *effata, torum*, a Southsayers mutterings. To these may be added the Heathenish Festival names; as, *Bacchanalia, liorum*, a Feast to Bacchus; and if you shall read more, you may put them under this Rule.

Grammatica Latina.

85

Exuvix, phalox, gratexque, manubix, & idus,
Antix, & inducix, simul, insidixque, minxque,
Excubix, nonx, nugx, tricxque, calendx,
Quisquilix, thermx, cunx, dirx, exequixque,
Inferix, & ferix, sic primitixque, plagxque,
Rex signantes, & valx, divitixque,
Nuptix item & lactes. Addantur Thebæ & Athenæ;
Quod genus invenias & nomina plura locorum.

8 Rariùs hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur;

Mœnia, cum resquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
Arma, mapalia, sic bellaria, munia, castra,
Fusus iusta petit, petit & sponsalia virgo,
Rostra disertus amat, pueriq;, crepundia gestat;
Infantèsq;, colunt cunabula, consulit extra
Augur, & absolvens superis effata recantas.
Festa Deam poterunt, cum Bacchanalia, jungi.
Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoq;, classe reponas.

Cap.

Chap. 21.

Of redundant or abounding Heteroclites.

³
Redundant. **T**Hese nouns (as it were) have too much, following divers forms; for they vary both their gender, and termination; viz. *tonitrus*, & *tonitru*, *thunder*: *clypeus*, *pei*, & *clypeum* *pei*, a buckler: *baculus*, *li*, & *baculum*, *li*, & *bacillum*, *li*, a staff: *sensus*, *sis*, a fault & *sensum*, *si*, a conceit, of meaning: *tignus*, *ni*, & *tigna*, *ni*, a rafter: *tapetum*, *ti*, *tapete*, *ti*, & *tapes*, *peris*, *tapestry*: *punctus*, *ti*, & *punctum*, *ti*, a point: *sinapi*, & *sinapis*, *pis*, mustard: *sinus*, *ni*, & *sinum*, *ni*, a milk vessel: *menda*, *da*, & *mendum*, *di*, a fault: *viscus*, *sci*, & *viscum*, *sci*, bird-lime: *cornu*, & *cornum*, *ni*, an horn: and *cornu*, *nis*, the wing of an Army: (as Lucane saith) *eventus*, *tis*, & *eventum*, *ti*, an hap: and a thousand such, which reading will afford thee.

2 Some Greek words do make a new Latine word in their Accusative case: as, *Panther*, *theris*, makes *Panthera*, *ra*, a **Panther**: *crater*, *teris*, makes *cratera*, *ra*, a goblet: *cassis*, *fidis*, makes *cassida*, *da*, a **Helmet**: *ether*, *theris*, makes *etbera*, *ra*, the **skie**.

3 In these nouns the Nominative case is diverse, but the sense and gender are all one; viz. *Gibbus*, *bi*, a gibber, *beris*, a bunch, or swelling: *cucumis*, *mis*, & *cucumber*, *meris*, a cucumber: *stipis*, *pis*, & *stips*, *pis*, **wedges**: *cinis*, *neris*, & *ciner*, *neris*, **ashes**: *vomis*, *meris*, & *vomer*, *meris*, a **plowshare**: *scobis*, *bis*, & *scobs*, *bis*, **sawdust**: *pulvis*, *veris*, & *pulver*, *veris*, **dust**: *pubes*, *bis*, & *puber*, *beris*, **ripeness of age**. Add hereunto nouns ending in *or*, and *os*; as, *Honor*, *noris*, & *honor*, *noris*, **honor**: *labor*, *boris*, & *labos*, *boris*, **labor**: *arbor*, *boris*, & *arbos*, *boris*, a **tree**: *odor*, *doris*, & *odos*, *doris*, **savor**:
Also

Cap. 21.

De Heteroclitis Redundantibus.

Hæc quasi luxuriant varias imitantia formas :
 Nam genus & vocem variant, tonitrus, tonitrûque; Redundantia.

Sic clypeus, clypeum; baculus, baculum, atq; bacillum;

Sensus, & hoc sensum, tignus, tignûmq; rapetur,

Atque rapêre, rapes; punctus, punctumq; sinapi,

Quod genus immutans fertur scelerata sinapis;

Sinus, & hoc finum [vas lactis] mendâq; mendum;

Viscus & hoc viscum; sic cornu, & flexile cornum;

At Lucanus ait cornûs tibi curâ sinistra.

Eventus, simul eventum; Sed quid moror istis?

Talia doctorum tibi lectio mille ministrat.

2 Sed tibi præterea quedam sunt Græca notanda,

Quæ quarto casu factum peperere Latinum :

Nam panther, panthera creat, craterâq; crater;

Castida castis habet, sed & æther, æthera fundit.

Hinc cratera venit, venit æthera; sic caput ipsum

Castida magna tegit, nec vult panthera domari.

3 Vertitur his rectus, sensus manet & genus unum;

Gibbus, & hic gibber; cucumis, cucumer; stipis, &

(stips;

Sic cinis, atque ciner; vomis, vomer; scobis & scobs;

Pulvis, item pulver; pubes, puber; quibus addes

Quæ pariunt or & os; honor, & labor, arbor, odorque.

His

Also *apes*, *pis*, and *apis*, *pis* a *Bee*: *plebs*, *bis*: and *plebes*, *bei*, the common people. There be also many nouns coming from the Greeks, having this double manner; as, *Delphin*, *phinis*, and *Delphinus*, *phinus*: *Dolphin*: *Elephas*, *phantis*, and *Elephantus*, *ti*, an *Elephant*: *Congrus*, *gri*, and *Conger*, *gri*, a *Conger*: *Cel*: *Melegrus*, *gri*, and *Meleager*, *gri*; *Teucrus*, *cri*, and *Teucer*, *cri*. And hitherto you shall refer all such as these, which your reading affordeth.

These Nouns are both of the second and fourth Declension; viz. *Laurus*, *ri*, and *lūs*, a *Bay tree*: *quercus*, *ci*, and *cūs*, an *Oak*: *pinus*, *zi*, and *nūs*, a *Pinetree*: *ficus*, *ci*, and *cūs*, a *fig*, or a *fig tree*: *colus*, *li*, and *lūs*, a *distaff*: *penus*, *zi*, and *nūs*, *pp*: *bifion*: *cornus*, *zi*, and *nūs*, a *Dog tree*: *lacus*, *ti*, and *cūs*, a *lake*: and *domus*, *mi*, and *mūs*, an *house*, or *home*. Though these be not thus found in every case. You shall read also more than these, which you may leave to old Authors.

When you decline *Domus*, omit the cases ending in *me*, *mu*, in the singular; and *mi*, *mis*, in the plural number.

4. Many Adjectives also do abound, but especially such as come of these Substantives; *Arma*, *morum*, *Brms*: *jugum*, *gi*, a *yoke*: *nervus*, *vi*, a *sinew*: *somnus*, *zi*, *sleep*: *clivus*, *vi*, a *slope of an hill*: *animus*, *mi*, a *mind*: *limus*, *mi*, *mind*: *fenum*, *zi*, a *bundle*: *cera*, *re*, *war*: *bacillum*, *li*, a *staff*: of which Substantives you may make Adjectives in *us*, and *is*; as of *Arma*, is made *inermus* and *inermis*, *unweaponed*: *Hilarus*, *metry*, is seldom used, but *hilaris*, is well known to be used.

His & apes, & apis, plebs, plebis, Sane quoque multa

Accepta à Græcis geminam referentia formam;

ut, Delphin, delphinus, & hic Elephas, elephantus;

Sic Congrus, conger, Meleagrus, sic Meleager;

Teucrus, item Teucer. Dabis huc & cætera cuncta;

Quæ tibi par ratio dederint & lectio casta.

¶ Hac simul & quarti flexus simul atque secundi;

Laurus enim lauri facit, & laurus genitivo;

Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,

Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur;

Sic lacus atque domus; licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.

His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquant.

Tolle me, mi, mi, mis, si declinare domum vis.

¶ Et quæ luxuriant sunt, Adjectiva notanda

Multa, sed imprimis quot & hæc tibi nomina fundum

Arma, jugum, nervus, somnus, clivusque, animusque,

Et quot limus habet, quot frænum, & cera, bacillum;

A quibus us, simul is formes; ut, inermus, inermis:

Rarior est hilarus, vix est hilaris, bene nota.

Chap. 22. Of the kinds of Nouns.

Nouns,
are,

1
Primitive.

I. **T**Hese Nouns which follow, and such like, be *Primitives*, viz.

1 A noun *Collective*, which signifieth a multitude in the singular number; as, *Turba*, a rout: *grex*, a flock.

2 *Fictitious*, which is feigned of the sound; as, *Sibilus*, an hissing: *intinnabulum*, a tinkling.

3 *Interrogative*, which we use in asking; as, *Quot*, how many: *qualis*, what an one?

4 *Redditive*, which gives answer to the interrogative; as, *Tot*, so many: *talis*, such an one.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain thing.

And these two do sometimes turn into

Relatives, which are referred to the word aforegoing; as, *Talis erat, quem nunquam vidi*. He was such an one as I never saw.

5 *Numeral*, which signifies a number on any fashion, whole kinds are also many, viz.

1 *Cardinal*, from which numerals proceed; as, *unus*, one: *duo*, two.

2 *Ordinal*, which denotes an order; as, *Primus*, the first: *secundus*, the second.

3 *Distributive*, which divides the whole into parts; as, *Singuli*, several: *bini*, two and two.

4 *Partitive*, which signifieth either many severally; as, *Quisque*, every one: *uterque*, both: or one of many; as, *Alter*, one of the two: *aliquis*, some one.

5 *Universal*, which signifies a thing universally; as, *Omnis*, all: *nullus*, none.

6 *Particular*, which signifieth part of the universal; as, *Quidam*, one: *aliquis*, some body.

7 *Multi-*

Cap. 22. De Speciebus Nominum.

I. **N**omina *Primitiva* sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, & hujusmodi, viz.

1 *Collectivum*, quod singulari numero multitudinem significat; ut, *Turba, grex.*

2 *Fictitium*, quod à sono fingitur; ut, *Sibilus, tintinnabulum.*

3 *Interrogativum*, quo in interrogando utimur; ut, *Quos? qualis?*

4 *Redditivum*, quod Interrogativo responsum reddit; ut, *Tot, talis.*

Atque hæc duo
migrant ali-
quando in

Indefinita, quæ certam rem non designant.
Relativa, quæ ad vocem præcedentem referuntur: ut, *Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.*

5 *Numerale*, quod numerum aliquo modo significat, cujus etiam species multæ sunt, viz.

1 *Cardinale*, à quo alia numeralia dimanant; ut, *unus, duo.*

2 *Ordinale*, quod ordinem denotat; ut, *Primus, secundus.*

3 *Distributivum*, quod totum in partes distribuit; ut, *Singuli, bini.*

4 *Partitivum*, quod significat vel multa singulatim; ut, *Quisque, uterque*; vel unum è multis; ut, *Alter, aliquis.*

5 *Universale*, quod universaliter rem significat; ut, *Omnis, nullus.*

6 *Particulare*, quod partem universalis significat; ut, *Quidam, aliquis.*

7 *Multiplicative*, which signifies the multiplicity of a thing; as, *Simplex*, *single* : *duplex*, *double*.

8 *Proportional*, which signifieth proportion; as, *Simplum*, *a single part* : *duplum*, *a double part*.

9 *Temporal*, which signifieth time; as, *Binus*, *two years old* : *trinus*, *three years old* : and *biennis*, *of two years standing* : *triennis*, *of three years standing*, or *continuance*.

10 *Ponderal*, which signifieth the weight of a thing; as, *Binarius*, *of two pound weight* : *ternarius*, *three pound weight*.

11, *Derivatives*, are also of many sorts, whereof these be the chief.

1 *Verbal*, which is derived of a Verb; as, *Lectio*, *reading* : *flexilis*, *flexible*.

2 *Patrial*, which signifieth the Country; as, *Londonensis*, *a Londoner*.

3 *Gentile*, which betokeneth the Nation, Side, or Sect; as, *Græcus*, *a Greek* : *Ciceronianus*, *one of Ciceroes side* : *Christianus*, *a Christian*, or *follower of Christ*.

4 *Patronymic*, which is derived either from the Father, or some other person of the family; as, *Æacides*, *the son of Æacus*.

5 Patronymic nouns end in	des,	as,	<i>Latoïdes</i> , the son of	Masculines.
	ion,		<i>Latona</i> .	
	as,	as,	<i>Japerion</i> , the son of	Feminines.
	is,		<i>Japerus</i> .	
	ne,	as,	<i>Ilias</i> , the daughter of <i>Ilia</i> .	
			<i>Menelais</i> , the wife of <i>Menelaüs</i> .	
			<i>Nerine</i> , the daughter of <i>Nereus</i> .	

6 *Diminutive*, which lesseneth the signification of its Primitive; as, *Stultulus*, *a little fool* : *lapidulus*, *a little stone*.

7 *Multiplicativum*, quod multiplicatam rei significat; ut, *Simplex, duplex*.

8 *Proportionale*, quod proportionem significat; ut, *Simplum, duplum*.

9 *Temporale*, quod tempus significat; ut, *Binus, trinus, & Biennus, triennus*.

10 *Ponderale*, quod pondus significat; ut, *Ternarius, centenarius*.

II. *Derivativa*, etiam sunt multiplicia, horum hæ sunt præcipuæ species.

Derivativa.

1 *Verbale*, quod à verbo derivatur; ut, *Leſſio, flexilis*.

2 *Patrium*, quod patriam significat; ut, *Londinensis*,

3 *Gentile*, quod gentem, partes, aut sectam significat; ut, *Græcus, Ciceronianus, Chriſtianus*.

4 *Patronimicum*, quod vel à patre, vel ab alia quâpiam suæ familiæ personâ derivatur; ut, *Æacides*.

5 Desinant autem Patronymica vel in	{	des,	{	Latoïdes	} Mascula.
		ion,		Japétion	
	{	as	{	Iliás,	} Fœminina.
		is		Menelaïs,	
	{	ne	{	Norine.	

6 *Diminutivum*, quod significationem sui Primitivi minuit; ut, *Stultulus, lapillulus*.

The Latine Grammar.

7 *Possessive*, which signifieth owning, or Possession; as, *Regius*, the Kings, or, of the King: *pater-nus*, the fathers, or, of a Father.

8 *Denominative*, which hath its name from another, which differeth from it in Termination only; as, *Justitia*, justice, of *justus*, just.

9 *Material*, which signifieth matter; as, *Aureus*, golden.

10 *Local*, which denotes a place; as, *Hortensis*, of the garden: *agrestis*, of the field.

11 *Participial*, which is made of a participle; as, *Sapiens*, wise.

12 *Adverbial*, which is derived of an Adverb; as, *Crastinus*, of to morrow: And here we must diligently observe,

1 All words whose original is unknown or uncertain, may be accounted Primitives in the Latine tongue; yea, though they flow from another Language; as, *Ego*, *musca*.

2 Lest you be ridiculous in finding the beginnings of words, you may observe diligently the Terminations which come to the Primitives; as *Amo*, I love, is made *amator*, a lover: *amicus*, a friend: *amabilis*, lovely, &c.



Chap. 23. Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun is put for a Noun. There be fifteen Pronouns.

A Pronoun is a part of Speech put for a Noun, and supplying its stead.

There be fifteen Pronouns; *Ego*, I: *tu*, thou: *ui*, of himself: *ille*, he: *ipse*, himself: *iste*, pend: *hic*, this: *is*, it: *meus*, mine: *tuus*, thine: *suus*, his own: *noſter*, ours: *veſter*, yours: *noſtra*, our country: *ma*, To

7 *Possessivum*, quod possessionem significat; ut, *Regius, paternus*.

8 *Denominativum*, quod ab alio solâ Terminatione differt; ut, *Justitia, à justus*.

9 *Materialè*, quod materiam significat; ut, *Aureus*.

10 *Locale*, quod locum denotat; ut, *Hortensis, agrestis*.

11 *Participiale*, quod a Participio fit; ut, *Sapiens*.

12 *Adverbiale*, quod ab Adverbio derivatur; ut, *Crassinus, à cras*. Diligenter autem hic observandum, quod,

1 Omnes voces habeantur pro Primitivis in Latina linguâ, quarum origo, in eadem vel ignota vel incerta est; imò, licet ab alia linguâ dimanant; ut, *Ego, musa*.

2 Nè ridiculus sis in investigandis dictionum originibus, diligenter observes Terminaciones quæ Primitivis accedunt; ut, ab *Amo*, fit *amator, amicus, amabilis*, &c.



Cap. 23.

De Pronomine.

Pronomen est pars Orationis pro Nomine posita, Pronomen & vicem ejus supplens. pro nomine ponitur.

Pronomina sunt quindecim; *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras*. Sunt autem Pronomina quindecim.

The Latine Grammar.

To which may be added, *Qui*, which: *quis*, who: *cujus*, whose: *cujus*, whole country-man.

Whereof
some be

And some of these be called

Pronoun Substantives, viz. *Ego*, *tu*, *sui* which are referred to three genders, without varying their termination.

Pronoun Adjectives, viz. all the rest which be varied by three genders; as, *Meus*, *mea*, *meum*.

Primitives,

and some

Derivative.

According to their Species, Pronouns are called

1 *Primitives*, which are the first word; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*.

and these be call'd

Demonstratives, which are used in shewing a thing not spoken of before; as, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, *is*.

Relatives, which we use in rehearsing a thing that was spoken of before; as, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is*, and *qui*.

2 *Derivatives*, are such as are derived of their Primitives: as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*, *Noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujus*, *cujas*, are derived from the Genitive caſes of their Primitives, *Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *noſtri*, *veſtri*, *noſtrum*, *veſtrum*, and *quis* from the Nominative caſe *qui*.

Of these some are

Possessives, which signifie owning or Poſſeſſion, as, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

Gentiles, which ſignifie belonging to Countries, or Nations, to Sects, or Faſtions, as, *noſtras*, *veſtras*, and *cujas*, which were once uſed as Nouns in *atis*, and *ate*.

Finites, which define, or ſet out a certain perſon, as, *Ego*, *tu*.

Indefinites, which do not define a certain perſon, as, *Quis*, *cujus*.

Reciprocals, which betake themſelves to the ſame third perſon which went before it, as, *sui*, *suus*.

Peter intreateth thou wouldſt not forſake him,

Every man ſpareth his own Errours.

Every man is drawn of his own pleaſure.

There

Quibus addi possint. *Qui, quis, cujus & tuas.*

Horum autem alia dicuntur. *Substantiva*; viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, quæ ad tria genera referuntur hæc variatione.
Adjectiva, viz. omnia reliqua quæ per tria genera variantur, ut *Meus, mea, meum*.

1. *Primitiva*, quæ sunt primæ voces, viz. *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, & qui. Quorū alia Primitiva.

Arque hæc vocantur *Demonstrativa*, quæ in re aliquâ non prius dictâ demonstrandâ usurpantur, ut, *Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, hic, is*.

Relativa, quibus in repetenda re aliquâ prius dictâ utimur, ut, *Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is*, & qui.

2. *Derivativa*, quæ derivantur à suis Primitivis, ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, cujus & tuas*. Et alia Derivativa.

Ex his etiam alia sunt.

Possessiva, quæ possessionem significant, ut, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*.

Gentilia, quæ gentem aut nationem, vel partes & sectas significant, ut, *Nostras, vestras & tuas*, quæ proferebantur olim ut nomina in *âis, & âte*.

Finita, quæ definiunt certam personam, ut, *Ego, tu*.

Indefinita, quæ certam personam non definiunt, ut, *Quis, cujus*.

Reciproca, quæ recipiunt se ad eandem tertiam personam quæ præcessit, ut, *Sui, suus*.

Petrus rogat ut se deserat.

Parcit quisque erroribus suis.

Trahit sua quemque voluptas, i. e. Quisque trahitur à voluptate sua.

Decl-

There be four Declensions of Pronouns.

Pronouns
have four
Declensions.

The Genitive case singular of the first Declension endeth in *i*: of the Second in *me*, or *mi*: of the Third in *i*, *e*, *i*: of the Fourth in *atis*.

Of the first
are, *Ego*, *tu*,
sui.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, be of the first Declension, and are thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Ego</i> , I	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Nos</i> , we
	G.	<i>Mei</i> , of me		G.	<i>Nostram</i> , <i>nostris</i> , of us
	D.	<i>Mibi</i> , to me		D.	<i>Nobis</i> , to us
	A.	<i>Me</i> , me		A.	<i>Nos</i> , us
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>à Me</i> , from me		A.	<i>à Nobis</i> , from us

Singul.	N.	<i>Tu</i> , thou	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Vos</i> , ye
	G.	<i>Tui</i> , of thee		G.	<i>Vestram</i> , <i>vestris</i> , of you
	D.	<i>Tibi</i> , to thee		D.	<i>Vobis</i> , to you
	A.	<i>Te</i> , thee		A.	<i>Vos</i> , you
	V.	<i>ô Tu</i> , ô thou		V.	<i>ô Vos</i> , ô ye
	A.	<i>à Te</i> , from thee		A.	<i>à Vobis</i> , from you

Sing. } G. *Sui*, of himself, or
and } D. *Sibi*, themselves.
Plur. } A. *Se*
 } A. *à Se* } But it wants the
 } Nominat. and Vocative cases in both
 } Numbers.

Of the second,
Ille,
ipse, *iste*.

Ille, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*, and *quis* be of the second Declension, and be thus declined.

Singulariter,	N.	<i>Ille</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i>	Pluraliter,	N.	<i>Illi</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>ista</i> ,
	G.	<i>Istius</i>		G.	<i>Istorum</i> , <i>istarum</i> , <i>istorum</i>
	D.	<i>Isti</i>		D.	<i>Istis</i>
	A.	<i>Istis</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos</i> , <i>istas</i> , <i>ista</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto</i> , <i>ista</i> , <i>isto</i>		A.	<i>Istis</i>

Ille, and *ipse* are Declined like *iste*, saving that *ipse* in the Neuter gender, in the Nominative and the Accusative case singular maketh *ipsum*.

Grammatica Latina.

99

Declinationes Pronominum sunt quatuor.

Pronomina quatuor habent Declinationes.

Genitivus Singularis Primæ Declinationis exi in *ius*; Secundæ in *ius*, vel *ius*: Tertiæ in *i*, *a*, *i*: Quartæ in *at is*.

Ego, tu, sui, Primæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Primæ sunt *Ego, tu, sui*.

Singulari,	N.	<i>Ego</i>	Plurali er,	N.	<i>Nos</i>
	G.	<i>Mei</i>		G.	<i>Nostrum, vel Noſtri</i>
	D.	<i>Mihi</i>		D.	<i>Nobis</i>
	A.	<i>Me</i>		A.	<i>Nos</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>à Me</i>		A.	<i>à Nobis</i>

Singulari.	N.	<i>Tu</i>	Plural.	N.	<i>Vos</i>
	G.	<i>Tui</i>		G.	<i>Vestrum, vel Veſtri</i>
	D.	<i>Tibi</i>		D.	<i>Vobis</i>
	A.	<i>Te</i>		A.	<i>Vos</i>
	V.	<i>ô Tu</i>		V.	<i>ô Vos</i>
	A.	<i>à Te</i>		A.	<i>à Vobis</i>

Sing. & Plur.	Gen.	<i>Sui</i>	Caret autem Nominativo & Vocativo utriusque Numeri.
	Dat.	<i>Sibi</i>	
	Acc.	<i>Se</i>	
	Abl.	<i>à Se</i>	

Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, qui, & quis, Secundæ sunt Declinationis, & sic variantur.

Secundæ, *Ille, ipse, iste*.

Singulari.	N.	<i>Iste, ista, istud</i>	Plural.	N.	<i>Isti, ista, ista</i>
	G.	<i>istius</i>		G.	<i>Istorum, istarum, istorum,</i>
	D.	<i>isti</i>		D.	<i>istis</i>
	A.	<i>Istū, istā, istud</i>		A.	<i>Istos, istas, ista</i>
	V.			V.	
	A.	<i>Isto, ista, isto</i>		A.	<i>Istis</i>

Ille, & ipse variantur sicut *iste*, nisi quod *ipse* in Neutro genere in Nominativo & Accusativo singulari facit *ipsum*.

Hic

Hic, is

Hic is declined as is aforesaid in the Articles,
page 24.

Singular.	{	N.	Is, ea, id,	{	Plural.	N.	Ii, ea, ea
		G.	Ejus			G.	Eorū, earū, eorū
		D.	Ei			D.	Iis vel eis
		A.	Eum, eam, id			A.	Eos, eas, ea
		V.				V.	
		A.	EO, eā, eo			A.	Iis vei eis

So also is the
Compound of *is*
and *demum* de-
clined.

Singular.	{	N.	Idem, eadem, idem.
		G.	Eiusdem
		D.	Eidem
		A.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singular.	{	N.	Qui, quæ, quod,	{	Plural.	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
		G.	Cuius			G.	Quorum, quarum, quorum
		D.	Cui			D.	Quibus vel quæis
		A.	Quem, quā, quod			A.	Quos, quas, quæ
		V.				V.	
		A.	Quo } quā, quo,			A.	Quibus } Quæis

After this manner also is declined *Quis, quæ, qui,*But its compound thus, *Quisquis, quicquid,*
Quicquid

Of the third

*Meus, tuus,**suns, noster,**vester, cuius.**Meus, tuus, suns, noster, vester* and *cuius*, be of the
third Declension, and are declined like Adjectives of
three Terminations on this manner.

Nominative	{	<i>Meus, mea, meum</i>	{	Genitivo	{	<i>Mei, mea, mei</i>	{	And so in the other cases.
		<i>Tuus, tua, tuum</i>				<i>Tui, tue, tui</i>		
		<i>Suus, sua, suum</i>				<i>Sui, sue, sui</i>		
		<i>Noster, nostra, nostrum</i>				<i>Nostri, nostra, nostri</i>		
		<i>Vester, vestra, vestrum</i>				<i>Vestri, vestra, vestri</i>		
		<i>Cuius, cuja, cuium</i>						

But *Meus* hath *Mi, mea, meum*, in the vocative case
singular.

No.

Hic declinatur ut prius in Articulis dictum est, Hic, is

Singulariter,	N.	Is, ea, id	Pluraliter,	N.	Ii, ea, ea
	G.	Ejus		G.	Eorū, earū, eorum
	D.	Ei		D.	Iis vel eis
	A.	Eum, eam, id		A.	Eos, eas, ea
	V.			V.	
	A.	Eo, eā, eo		A.	Iis vel eis.

hic variatur etiam compositum ab is, & demum :

Sing.	N.	Idem, eadem, idem
	G.	Ejusdem
	D.	Eidem
	A.	Eundem, eandem, idem.

Singulariter,	N.	Qui, quæ, quod	Plural.	N.	Qui, quæ, quæ
	G.	Cujus		G.	Quorum, quarum, quorum
	D.	Cui		D.	Quibus vel quæ
	A.	Quem, quam, quod		A.	Quos quas quæ
	V.			V.	
	A.	{ Quo } quā, { Qui } quo.		A.	{ Quibus Quæ }

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur Quis, quæ, quid, &c.

Ejus compositum sic:

N.	Quisquis, quicquid
	Quicquid
	Quoquo, quaquā, quoquo.

Tertiz

Meus, tuus,

suus, noster,

vester, &

cujus.

Declinationis & variatur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Terminationum in hunc modum.

Nominativo	Meus mea meum	Genitivo	Mei meæ mei	Et sic in reliquis casibus
	Tuus tua tuum		Tui tuæ tui	
	Suus sua suum		Sui suæ sui	
	Noster nostra nostrum		Nostri nostræ nostri	
	Vester vestra vestrum		Vestri vestræ vestri	
	Cujus cuja ejus			

Sed Meus habet Mi, meæ, Meum, in Vocativo singulari.

No-

Of the Fourth, *Noftras, veftras* and *cujas*, be of the fourth Declenſion, and are declined like Adjectives of three Articles.

As, Nom. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noftras,} \\ \text{Veftras,} \\ \text{Cujas,} \end{array} \right\}$ Gen. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Noſtratis,} \\ \text{Veſtratis,} \\ \text{Cujatis,} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

Pronouns are compounded,

1 Among themſelves; as, *Ego ipſe, mei ipſius, milii ipſi, iſtic & illic.*

Of the Compoſition of Pronouns.

Iſtic and *illic* be thus declined, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iſtic, iſtæc, iſtoc vel iſtuc.} \\ \text{Acc. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iſtinc, iſtanc, iſtock, vel iſtut.} \\ \text{Abl. } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iſtoc, iſtac, iſtæc.} \end{array} \right. \\ \text{Plur. Nom. \& Acc. } \text{iſtæc.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

2 With Nouns; as, *Aliquis, huiusmodi.*

3 With Verbs; as, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4 With Adverbs; as, *Nequis.*

So $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eccum, eccam,} \end{array} \right\}$ of *ecce* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellum, ellam,} \end{array} \right\}$ of *ecce* alſo $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eccos, eccas,} \end{array} \right\}$ and *is.* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellos, ellas,} \end{array} \right\}$ & *ille.*

5 With a Conjunction; as, *Quiſquam, ſiquis.*

6 With a Prepoſition; as, *Mecum, nobiſcum.*

7 With Syllabical additions; *met, te, pre, ce, cine*, of which *met*, is added to the firſt and ſecond perſon; as, *Egom et, tuimet*: alſo we ſay *ſcimet* and *femet*, but we do not ſay *tumet*, leſt it ſhould ſeem a Verb of *tumeo* to ſwell.

Te is added only to *tu* and *te*; as, *Tute, tete.*

Pre is added to theſe Ablatives Feminine; *Med, tuâ, ſuâ, noſtrâ, veſtrâ*; as, *Meâpre, tuâpre, ſuâpre, noſtrâpre, veſtrâpre*; and ſometimes to their Maſculines and Neuters; as, *Meopte labore, ſuopte jumento.*

Ce is added to all caſes of theſe Pronouns, *Hic, ille, iſte*, as oft as they end in *s*; as, *Huiusce, boſce, hiſce*: we ſay alſo, *hiſce, huiusce*, and *ejuſce*; and ſometimes *hiſce* is read.

Nostras, vestras, & suas, quatuor sunt Declinationis, Quartæ, & variantur ad formam Adjectivorum trium Artium *Nostras, vestras, suas*, colorum.

ut, Nom. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostras,} \\ \text{Vestras,} \\ \text{Suas,} \end{array} \right\}$ Gen. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nostrarum,} \\ \text{Vestrarum,} \\ \text{Suarum,} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

Pronomina Componuntur,

1 Inter se; ut, *Ego-ipse, me-ipsus, mihi-ipsi, Istic, & illic.*

Istic & illic sic variantur, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nom.} \\ \text{Acc.} \\ \text{Abl.} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Istic, istæ, istoc, vel istuc.} \\ \text{Istinc, istanc, istoc, vel istuc.} \\ \text{Istoc, istac, istoc.} \end{array} \right.$
Plur. Nom & Acc. *istæ.*

2 Cum Nominibus; ut, *Aliquis, hujusmodi.*

3 Cum Verbis; ut, *Quivis, quilibet.*

4 Cum Adverbiis; ut, *Nequis.*

Sic $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ecce,} \\ \text{Eccam,} \end{array} \right\}$ ab ecce $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellum,} \\ \text{ellâ,} \end{array} \right\}$ ab ecce
etiam $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Eccos,} \\ \text{eccas,} \end{array} \right\}$ & is, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ellos,} \\ \text{ellas,} \end{array} \right\}$ & ille

5 Cum Conjunctione; ut, *Quisnam, siquis.*

6 Cum Præpositione; ut, *Mecum, nobiscum.*

7 Cum syllabicis adjectionibus, *met, te, pte, ce, cine;* quarum *met* adjicitur primæ & secundæ personæ; ut, *Ego met, tu met, sibimet,* etiam & semet dicimus. Sed *tumet* non dicimus, nè videatur esse Verbum à *tumco*.

Te adjicitur tantum *tu* & *te*; ut, *Tate, tete.*

Pte apponitur istis Ablativis femininis, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, veſtâ;* ut, *Mâ apte, tuâ pte, suâ pte, nostrâ pte, veſtrâ pte,* & interdum eorundem masculinis & neutris; ut, *Mâ pte labore, suâ pte jumento.*

Ce adjicitur obliquis horum Pronominum, *Hic, ille, iste,* quoties in s desinunt; ut, *Hujusce, hujusce, hujusce.*

Dicimus etiam *hicce, huncce, & ejusce,* & interdum *bice* legitur

cine

Cine is put to the Nominative and Accusative of *Hic*; as, *Hiccine, haccine, hoccine; Huncine, hancine; hoccine*, &c.

Quis and *qui* are compounded on this manner,
Quis in composition is set after these particles,
 viz.

<i>Et,</i>	} as	<i>Ecquis,</i> what one.
<i>Ne,</i>		<i>Nequis,</i> no one.
<i>Alius,</i>		<i>Aliquis,</i> some one.
<i>Num,</i>		<i>Nunquid,</i> whether any one.
<i>Si,</i>		<i>Siquis,</i> if any one.

And these in the Feminine gender singular, and in the Neuter plural make *qua*, not *quæ*; as, *Siqua mulier, If any woman. Nequa flagitia, Not any villainy.* But *Ecquis* makes *ecqua* and *ecquæ* in the Feminine gender.

Quis in composition is set before these particles;
 viz.

<i>Nam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quisnam,</i>
<i>Piam,</i>		<i>Quispiam,</i>
<i>Putas,</i>		<i>Quisputas,</i>
<i>Quam,</i>		<i>Quisquam,</i>
<i>Que,</i>		<i>Quisque,</i>

Qui in composition is set before these particles;
 viz.

<i>Dam,</i>	} as,	<i>Quidam,</i> a certain one.
<i>Vis,</i>		<i>Quivis,</i> who you will.
<i>Libet,</i>		<i>Quilibet,</i> who that will.
<i>Cunque,</i>		<i>Quicumque,</i> whosoever.

And these every where keep *quæ*; as, *Quænam doctrina, what learning: quæcunque negotia, whatsoever business.*

Cine apponitur casibus in c desinentibus; ut, *Hic* cine *hec* cine, *hoc* cine; *hunc* cine, *hanc* cine, *hæc* cine, &c.

Quis & *qui* in hunc modum componuntur.

Quis in compositione hisce particulis postponitur, viz.

Et	} ur,	Ecquis
Ne		Nequis
Alius		Aliquis
Num		Nunquid
Si		Siquis

Et hæc tam in fœminino singulari, quàm in neutro plurali *qua* habent, non *quæ*; ut, *Siqua* mulier, *Nequa* flagitia. Sed *Ecquis* habet *etqua* & *ecqua* in fœminino.

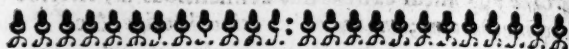
His autem particulis præponitur *Quis* in compositione, viz.

Nam	} ur,	<i>Quis</i> nam
Piam		<i>Quis</i> piam
Putas		<i>Quis</i> putas
Quam		<i>Quis</i> quam
Que		<i>Quis</i> que

Qui in compositione præponitur his particulis, viz.

Dam	} ur,	<i>Quidam</i>
Vis		<i>Quivis</i>
Libet		<i>Quilibet</i>
Cunque		<i>Quicumque</i>

Et hæc ubique *quæ* retinent; ut, *Quanam* doctrina; *quæcunque* negotia.



Chap. 24. Of a Verb and its Kindes.

III.

A Verb signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer, It is Personal,

or,

Impersonal.

A Verb is a part of Speech which signifieth to be, to do, or to suffer; as *Sum, I am, Amo, I love, Amor, I am loved.*

Personal, which is distinguished by three Persons in both Numbers; as, Singul. *Amo, I love: Amas, thou lovest, Amat, he loveth, Plur. Amamus, we love, Amatis, ye love, Amant, they love,*

Impersonal, which hath no certain signification of Person or Number, unless it be by means of an oblique case; as, *Oportet me, It becometh me, oportet te, it becometh thee, statui me, it is stood of me, or I stand, statui te, it is stood of thee, or thou standest.*

There belong to a Verb, I. Kinde. II. Mood.

III. Tense. IV. Conjugation.

I. There be five Kindes of Verbs.

1 **Active**, which signifieth to do, and endeth in *s*, as, *Amo, I love*; and by taking to it *r*, may be made a **Passive**, as, *Amor, I am loved.*

2 **Passive**, which signifieth to suffer, and endeth in *or*; and by taking away *r*, it may be an **Active**, as, *Amo, I love.*

3 A **Neuter**, endeth in *o* or *m*, and cannot take *r* to make it a **Passive**; as, *Cur, o, to run, Sum, I am.*

There be three kinds of **Neuters**, according to their signification.

Substantive, which signifieth the Being of a thing, as, *Sum, I am.*

Absolute, which by it self maketh up the sense; as, *Dormio, I sleep.*

Transitive, whose action passeth into a thing of near signification; as, *Curro stadium, I run a race.*

Cap. 24. De Verbo, & ejus Accidentibus.

VERBUM est pars Orationis, quæ esse ali-
quid agere *ve*; aut, pati significat, ut, *Sum, Amo,*
Amor.

III.
Verbum esse
agere, aut
pati signifi-
cat, Estque
Personale;

Verbum dividitur in
primis in

r **Personale**, quod tribus personis in utroq; nu-
mero distinguitur; ut, Singul. *Amo, Amas,*
Amat. Plur. *Amamus, Amatis, Amant.*

vel, =

Impersonale, quod nullius personæ aut numeri
certam significationem, nisi ex adjuncto
casu obliquo, sortitur; ut, *Oportet me, oportet te; Statut à me, statut à te.*

Impersonale

Verbo quidem accidunt, I. **Genus.** II. **Modus.** Accidunt
III. **Tempus.** IV. **Conjugatio.** Verbo quin-
que genera.

I. Quinque sunt Genera Verborum.

1 **Activum**, quod agere significat, & in *o* finitur;
ut, *Amo*, assumendo verò *r* **Passivum** formare potest; Activum,
ut, *Amor.*

2 **Passivum**, quod pati significat, & in *or* finitur, Passivum,
deproptèr verò *r*, **Activi** formam resumere potest; ut, *A-*
mo.

3 **Neutrum**, quod in *o* vel *m* finitur, nec admittit
r, ut fiat **Passivum**; ut, *Curro, Sum.* Neutrum.

Neutrorum tria sunt genera secundum eorum signi-
ficationem.

Substantivum, quod substantiam rei significat; ut,
Sum.

Absolutum, quod ipsum per se sensum absolvit; ut,
Dormio.

Transitivum, cujus actio in rem cognatæ signifi-
cationis transit; ut, *Curro Stadium.*

Deponent. 4. A *Deponent* endeth in *or*, and hath either the Active signification; as, *Loquor verbum*, I speak a word: or the Neuter; as, *Glorior*, I boast.

Commune. 5 A *Commune* endeth in *or*, and hath both the Active and Passive signification; as, *Ofsculor*, **I** kiss, or **am** kissed.

11. There be four *Moods*.

Four Moods: 11. There be four *moods*.
Indicative 1 The *Indicative* simply sheweth a thing, or asketh
a question; as, *Ego amo*, I love: *Amas tu?* lovest
thou?

Imperative 2 The *Imperative* biddeth or intreateth; as, *Ama tu, do thou love : Da mihi, give me :*

Subjunctive. 3. The *Subjunctive* is joyned with another Verb in the same sentence; as, *Cum amarem, eram miser, when I loved, I was a wretch.*

And this mood is called the *Optative*, when it is used in *wishing*; and the *Potential*, when it is construed by *may, can, would, should, or ought*.

4 The *Infinitive* doth not define a certain person, or number; as, *Amare, to love*. And to this Mood belong three *Gerunds*, which have their case or ending of a Noun, and their signification of a Verb.

Three Ge-
runds,
Di, do, dum.

G.	<i>Di</i>	} as,	{	<i>Amandi</i> , of loving, or being loved
D. Ab.	<i>Do</i>			<i>Amando</i> , in loving or being loved
N. Ac.	<i>Dum</i>			<i>Amandum</i> , to love, or to be loved.

Two *Supines* *um* and *u*. Two *Supines*, whereof

The first endeth in *um*, and signifieth Actively; as, *Amatum*, to love.

The latter endeth in *u*, and signifieth Passively; as, *Amatu*, to be loved.

III. Verbs have five *Tenses*.

Three only distinct; *Present, Preterperfect, Future.*
 Five Tenses, 1 The *Present tense* which speaketh of the time
 Present. present, and signifies now to do, or to be done; as, *Amo, I love.*

2 The

4 *Deponens*, quod in *or* finitum, vel activi significationem habet; ut, *Loquor verbum*; vel neutrius, ut, *Gloriar.* Deponens

5 *Commune*, quod in *or* finitum, tam Activam, quam Passivam significationem habet; ut *Osculor.* Commune.

II. *Modi Verborum* sunt quatuor:

1 *Indicativus* simpliciter aliquid indicat, aut interrogat; ut, *Ego amo, amas tu?* Indicativus.

2 *Imperativus* imperat aut rogat; ut, *Amatu, Da mihi.* Imperativus

3 *Subjunctivus* subjungitur alteri Verbo in eadem sententiâ; ut, *Cum amarem, eram miser.* Subjunctivus

Atque hic Modus dicitur *Optativus*, quando in optando usurpatur, *Potentialis* vero quando per *Possu*, *velo*, aut *debeo* exponitur.

4 *Infinitivus* certam personam aut numerum non definit; ut, *Amare.* Et ad hunc Modum pertinent *Tria Gerundia* quæ a nomine casum, & a Verbo significationem accipiunt. Infinitivus
Ad quæ
pertinent.

G. <i>Di</i>	} ut,	{ <i>Amandi</i>	{ <i>Gerundia,</i>		
D. Ab. <i>Do</i>				{ <i>Amando</i>	{ <i>Di, do, dum,</i>
N. A. <i>Dum</i>					

Duo <i>Supina</i> , quorum	}	Primus exit in <i>um</i> , & Activè significat ut, <i>Amatum.</i>	Supina duo <i>um & u.</i>
		Posterius exit in <i>u</i> , & Passivè significat; ut, <i>Amatu.</i>	

III. *Tempore Verborum* sunt quinque, *Tria* tantum distincta; *Præsens*, *Præterperfectum*, *Futurum*. Tempora
quinque.
Præsent.

1 *Præsens*, quod de tempore præsentis loquitur, & aliquid nunc agere vel fieri significat; ut, *amo.*

Imperfect.

2 The *Preterimperfect tense* speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past; and signifieth a thing to be done, but not yet finished; as, *Amabam, I loved, or I did love.*

Preterperfect.

3 The *Preterperfect tense* speaketh of the time perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be now finished, as, *Amavi, I have loved.*

Preterpluperfect.

4 The *Preterpluperfect tense* speaketh of the time more than perfectly past, and signifieth a thing to be long since finished, as, *Amaveram, I had loved.*

Future.

5 The *Future tense* speaketh of the time to come, and signifieth something to be done for the future; as, *Amabo, I will love.*

The *Future tense* of the *Subjunctive Mood* is called *Exatt*; because it hath the signification both of the *Preter tense*, and *Future tense* together; as, *Cum Amavero, when I shall have loved.*

Four Conjugations.

IV. *Conjugation* is the Varying of a Verb by Moods and Tenses.

Verbs have four *Conjugations*, which are known one from another by certain tokens, or characteristic letters.

Whereof the first hath a long.

1 The first Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Amare, amaris.*

Second long.

2 The second Conjugation hath e long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Docere, doceris.*

Third short.

3 The third Conjugation hath e short before *re* and *ris*; as, *Legere, leggeris.*

Fourth hath i long before re and ris.

4 The fourth Conjugation hath i long before *re* and *ris*; as, *Audire, audiris.*

in the Infinitive Mood Present tense of Verbs in a, and in the second person singular of the Indicative Mood Present tense of verbs in or.

Grammatica Latina.

III

2 *Præteritum imperfectum*, de tempore nondum Imperfectum. perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid fieri, sed nondum absolvi significat; ut, *Amabam*.

3 *Præteritum Perfectum* de tempore perfectè præterito loquitur, & aliquid jam perfici significat; ut, *Amavi*.

4 *Præteritum plusquam perfectum* de tempore plusquam perfectò loquitur, & aliquid jamdiu perfectum perfectum, significat; ut, *Amaveram*.

5 *Futurum* loquitur de tempore futuro, & aliquid Futurum. futuro significat; ut, *Amabo*.

Subjunctivi Futurum dicitur *Exaktum*, quod præteriti simul & futuri significationem habeat; ut, *Cum Amavero*.

IV. *Conjugatio* est variatio Verbi per Modos & Tempora.

Verborum quatuor sunt Conjugationes, quæ à se invicem certis indicibus, sive literis caracteristicis distinguuntur.

1 Prima Conjugatio habet a productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Amare, Amaris*.

Prima habet longum.

2 Secunda Conjugatio habet e productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Dosere, Doceris*.

in Infinitivo præsentis Verborum in o, & in secunda

Secunda e longum.

3 Tertia Conjugatio habet e corruptum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Legere, Legeris*.

in o, & in secunda

personæ singulari Indicativi præsentis Verborum in er.

Tertia e brevis.

4 Quarta Conjugatio habet i productum ante *re* & *ris*; ut, *Audire, Audiris*.

Quarta i longum ante *re* & *ris*.

Chap. 25. Of the form of the first Conjugation.

Verba in (o) prima Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Amo.</i>	Verbs in (o) of the first Conjugation be varied like <i>Amo, &c.</i>	Verba in (or) prima Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>A-</i>	Verbs in (or) of the first Conjugation be varied like <i>Amor.</i>
--------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Amo, amas amavi, amare, amatum, A- amor, amaris, amare, tus, sum, fui, amari.

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense	Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amo</i> I love	2 <i>Amas</i> thou lovest	3 <i>Amat</i> he loveth.	1 <i>Amor</i> I am	2 <i>Amaris</i> thou art	3 <i>Amare</i> he is
Plur.	I Sing.	1 <i>Amamus</i> we	2 <i>Amatis</i> ye	3 <i>Amant</i> they	1 <i>Amatur</i> we are	2 <i>Amamur</i> ye are	3 <i>Amantur</i> they are

Imperfect.	Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amabam</i> I did	2 <i>Amabas</i> thou didst	3 <i>Amabat</i> he did	1 <i>Amabar</i> I was	2 <i>Amabaris</i> thou wast	3 <i>Amabare</i> he was
Plur.	I Sing.	1 <i>Amabamus</i> we did	2 <i>Amabatis</i> ye did	3 <i>Amabant</i> they did	1 <i>Amabatur</i> we were	2 <i>Amabamur</i> ye were	3 <i>Amabamini</i> they were

Preterperfect.	Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amavi</i> I have	2 <i>Amavisti</i> thou hast	3 <i>Amavit</i> he hath	1 <i>Amatus</i> I have	2 <i>Amatus</i> thou hast	3 <i>Amatus</i> he hath
Plur.	I Sing.	1 <i>Amavimus</i> we have	2 <i>Amavistis</i> ye have	3 <i>Amaverunt</i> they have	1 <i>Amatus</i> I have	2 <i>Amatus</i> thou hast	3 <i>Amatus</i> he hath

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amaveram</i> I had	love	<i>Amatus</i>	{ <i>eram</i> I had	been loved
	2 <i>Amaveras</i> thou hadst			{ <i>fueram</i> thou hadst	
	3 <i>Amaverat</i> he had			{ <i>eras</i> he had	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amaveramus</i> we had	love	<i>Amati</i>	{ <i>fueras</i> we had	been loved
	2 <i>Amaveratis</i> ye had			{ <i>erat</i> ye had	
	3 <i>Amaverant</i> they had			{ <i>fuerat</i> they had	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amabo</i> I shall	love	<i>Amabor</i>	{ <i>Amaberis</i> thou shalt be	loved
	2 <i>Amabis</i> thou shalt			{ <i>Amabere</i> thou shalt be	
	3 <i>Amabit</i> he shall			<i>Amabitur</i> he shall be	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Amabimus</i> we shall	love	<i>Amabimur</i>	{ <i>Amabimini</i> ye shall be	loved
	2 <i>Amabitis</i> ye shall			<i>Amabimini</i> ye shall be	
	3 <i>Amabunt</i> they shall			<i>Amabuntur</i> they shall be	

The Imperative Mood hath one only Tense,
viz. the Present Tense.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	2 { <i>Ama</i> Love thou	<i>Amare</i>	<i>Amare</i> Be thou
	2 { <i>Amet</i> let him love		
	1 <i>Amemus</i> let us love		
Present tense Plur. I Sing.	2 { <i>Amate</i> love ye	<i>Amari</i>	<i>Amari</i> let us be
	2 { <i>Ament</i> let them love		
	3 { <i>Amentur</i> let them love		

The

The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amens I may 2 Ames thou maist 3 Amet he may 	Iobe	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amer I may 2 Ameris thou maist 3 Amere he may 4 Ametur we may 5 Amemur ye may 6 Amemini they may 	he Iobe
Imperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amarem I might (est) 2 Amares thou might- 3 Amare: he might 	Iobe	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amarer I might 2 Amareris thou might- 3 Amarere (est) he Iobe 4 Amaretur we might 5 Amaremur ye might 6 Amaremini they might 	he Iobe
Preterperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amaverim I might 2 Amaveris thou might- 3 Amaverit he might 	have Iobe	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amatus I might 2 Amatus fuerim thou might- 3 Amatus fueris (est) he Iobe 4 Amatus fuerit we might 5 Amatus fuimus ye might 6 Amatus fueritis they might 	have been Iobe
Preterpluperfect. Plur. 1 Sing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amavissem I might 2 Amavisses thou might- 3 Amavisset he might 	had Iobe	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Amatus I might 2 Amatus fuisset thou might- 3 Amatus fuisset (est) he Iobe 4 Amatus fuisset we might 5 Amatus fuissetis ye might 6 Amatus fuissent they might 	had been Iobe

Future

Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Amvero I may	love hereafter	Amatus	ero I may	be loved hereafter
	2 Amaveris thou maist			fucro thou maist	
	3 Amaveris he may			eris te may	
	1 Amaverimus we may			fueris we may	
	2 Amaveritis ye may			erimus ye may	
	3 Amaverint they may			fueritis they may	

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	Amare	to love	Amari	to be loved.
Præterperf. and Præterplup.	Amavisse	to have or had loved	Amatum esse vel fuisse	to have or had been loved
Future	Amaturum esse	to love hereafter	Amatum iri, vel Amandum esse	to be loved hereafter.

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving, or of being loved.
 Amando, in loving, or of being loved.
 Amandum, to love, or to be loved.

Supines.

Amatum to love, Amatu, to be beloved.

Participles.

Of the Present tense	Amans, loving.
Future in rus.	Amaturus, to love.
Of the Preter tense	Amatus, loved.
Future in dus,	Amandus, to be loved.

Preterplurif. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Docueram	I had	taught	Doctus	eram	I have	been taught
	2 Docueras	thou hadst			fueram	thou hadst	
	3 Docuerat	he had			erat	he had	
	1 Docueramus	we had			fueras	we had	
	2 Docueratis	ye had			erat	ye had	
	3 Docuerant	they had			fuerat	they had	
				Docti	eram	we had	
					fueramus	ye had	
					eratis	they had	
					fueratis		
					erant		
					fuerant		

Future Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Docebo	I will	teach		Docebor	I will be taught	
	2 Docebis	thou wilt			Doceberis	thou wilt be taught	
	3 Docebit	he will			Docebere		
	1 Docebitur	we will			Docebitur	he will be taught	
	2 Docebitis	ye will			Docehimur	we will be taught	
	3 Docebunt	they will			Docebunt	ye will be taught	
					Docebuntur	they will be taught	

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense. Plur. 1 Sing.	2	{ Doce Teach thou	teach		{ Docere Be thou	be taught
		{ Docete			{ Docetor	
	3	{ Doceat let him teach			{ Doceatur let him be	
		{ Doceta			{ Docetor	
	1	{ Doceamus Let us teach			{ Doceamur Let us be	
		{ Docete reach ye			{ Locemini be ye	
	2	{ Docetote			{ Docemini	
		{ Doceant let them teach			{ Doceantur let them	
	3	{ Docento			{ Docentor (be	

The Potential Mood.

Present tense. Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Doceam	I may	teach		Doceor	I may	be taught
	2 Doceas	thou mayst			Docearis	thou mayst	
	3 Doceat	he may			Doceare		
	1 Doceamus	we may			Doceatur	he may	
	2 Doceatis	ye may			Doceamur	we may	
	3 Doceant	they may			Doceamini	ye may	
					Doceantur	they may	

Future. Plur. I Sing.	{	1 Docuero	I may	{	Doctus	1	ero	I may	{	be taught hereafter	
		2 Docueris	thou mayest			2	fuero	thou mayest			
		3 Docueris	he may			3	eris	he may			
		1 Docuerimus	we may			1	fueris	we may			
		2 Docueritis	ye may			2	erit	ye may			
		3 Docuerint	they may			3	fuerit	they may			
		{		{		{		{		{	
		teach hereafter		Docti		erimus		we may		be taught hereafter	
						fuerimus					
						eritis		ye may			
						fueritis					
						erint		they may			
						fuerint					

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	{	Docere	{ to teach }	Doceri	{ to be taught. }
Preterp. and Preterpl.	{	Docuisse	{ to have or had taught }	Doctum esse vel fuisse	{ to have or had been taught. }
Future	{	Dociturum esse	{ to teach hereafter }	Doctum ire, vel Docendum esse	{ to be taught hereafter. }

Gerunds.

Docendi, of teaching, or of being taught.
Do endo, in teaching, or of being taught.
Docendum, to teach, or to be taught.

Supines.

Doctum, to teach, Doctus, to be taught.

Participles.

Of the Pre- sent tense	{	Docens	{ teaching }	Of the Preter tense	{	Doctus	{ taught. }
Of the Fu- ture in rus	{	Dociturus	{ about to teach }	Of the Future in dus	{	Docendus	{ to be taught. }

Chap. 27. Of the form of the Third Conjugation.

Verba in (o) tertiz Conjugationis formantur sicut *Lego*.

Verbs in (o) of the third Conjugation be formed like *Lego*.

Verba in (or) tertiz Conjugationis formantur sicut *Legor*.

Verbs in (or) of the third Conjugation be formed like *Legor*.

Lego, legis, legi, legere, lectum.

Legor { legoris } lectus { sum } legi, { legere } { fui } { legi. }

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense
Plur. I Sing. {
1 *Lego* I read
2 *Legis* thou readest
3 *Legit* he readeth
Plur. {
1 *Legimus* we read
2 *Legitis* ye read
3 *Legunt* they read

Legor I am
Legoris thou art
Legere he is
Legitur we are
Legimur ye are
Legimini they are
Leguntur they are

Imperfect.
Plur. I Sing. {
1 *Legebam* I did read
2 *Legebatis* thou readest
3 *Legebat* he did read
Plur. {
1 *Legebamus* we did read
2 *Legebatis* ye did read
3 *Legebant* they did read

Legebat I was
Legebatis thou wast
Legebare he was
Legebatur we were
Legebamur ye were
Legebamini they were
Legebantur they were

Preterperfect.
Plur. I Sing. {
1 *Legi* I have
2 *Legisti* thou hast
3 *Legit* he hath
Plur. {
1 *Legimus* we have
2 *Legistis* ye have
3 *Legerunt* they have
Legere

Lectus {
sum
fui
es
fuisti
est
fuit
sumus
fuimus
estis
fuistis
sunt
fuerunt
fuere

Preter

Preterpluperf. Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legeram	I had	read	Lectus	eram	I had	been read
	2	Legeras	thou hadst			fueram	thou hadst	
	3	Legerat	he had			eras	he had	
	1	Legeramus	we had			fueras	we had	
	2	Legeratis	ye had			erat	ye had	
	3	Legerant	they had			fuerat	they had	
	1	Legeramus	we had	read	Lecti	eramus	we had	
	2	Legeratis	ye had			fueramus	ye had	
	3	Legerant	they had			eratis	they had	
	1	Legeramus	we had			fueratis	we had	
	2	Legeratis	ye had			erant	ye had	
	3	Legerant	they had			fuerant	they had	

Future Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legam	I will	read	Legar	I shall	be read
	2	Leges	thou wilt			Legeris	thou shalt
	3	Leget	he will			Legere	he shall
	1	Legemus	we will			Legetur	we shall
	2	Legetis	ye will			Legemini	ye shall
	3	Legent	they will			Legentur	they shall
	1	Legemus	we will	read	Legar	I shall	be read
	2	Legetis	ye will			Legeris	thou shalt
	3	Legent	they will			Legere	he shall
	1	Legemus	we will			Legetur	we shall
	2	Legetis	ye will			Legemini	ye shall
	3	Legent	they will			Legentur	they shall

The Imperative Mood.

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	2	Lege	Read thou	read	Legere	Be thou	be read
	3	Legito	let him read			Legitor	let him be
	1	Legamus	let us read			Legator	let us be
	2	Legite	read ye			Legitor	let us be
	3	Legant	let them read			Legamur	Be ye
	1	Legamus	let us read			Legimini	let them be
	2	Legite	read ye	read	Legere	Be thou	be read
	3	Legant	let them read			Legitor	let him be
	1	Legamus	let us read			Legator	let him be
	2	Legite	read ye			Legitor	let him be
	3	Legant	let them read			Legamur	let us be
	1	Legamus	let us read			Legimini	Be ye

The Potential Mood.

Present tense Plur. 1 Sing.	1	Legam	I may	read	Legar	I may	be read
	2	Legas	thou mayst			Legaris	thou mayst
	3	Legat	he may			Legare	he may
	1	Legamus	we may			Legatur	we may
	2	Legatis	ye may			Legamur	we may
	3	Legant	they may			Legamini	ye may
	1	Legamus	we may	read	Legar	I may	be read
	2	Legatis	ye may			Legaris	thou mayst
	3	Legant	they may			Legare	he may
	1	Legamus	we may			Legatur	we may
	2	Legatis	ye may			Legamur	we may
	3	Legant	they may			Legamini	ye may

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legerem</i> I might 2 <i>Legeres</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legeret</i> he might	read	1 <i>Legeremus</i> we might 2 <i>Legeretis</i> ye might 3 <i>Legerent</i> they might	1 <i>Legerer</i> I might 2 <i>Legereris</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legereret</i> he might 4 <i>Legeretur</i> he might 5 <i>Legeremur</i> we might 6 <i>Legeremini</i> ye might 7 <i>Legerentur</i> they might	be read
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legerim</i> I might 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerit</i> he might 4 <i>Legerimus</i> we might 5 <i>Legeritis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerint</i> they might	have read	1 <i>Legerissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legerisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerisset</i> he might 4 <i>Legerissemus</i> we might 5 <i>Legerissetis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerissent</i> they might	1 <i>Legerissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legerisisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerisisset</i> he might 4 <i>Legerissemus</i> we might 5 <i>Legerisissetis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerisissent</i> they might	have been read
Preterpluperf. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legerissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legerisisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerisisset</i> he might 4 <i>Legerissemus</i> we might 5 <i>Legerisissetis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerisissent</i> they might	have had read	1 <i>Legerissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legerisisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerisisset</i> he might 4 <i>Legerissemus</i> we might 5 <i>Legerisissetis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerisissent</i> they might	1 <i>Legerissem</i> I might 2 <i>Legerisisses</i> thou mightest 3 <i>Legerisisset</i> he might 4 <i>Legerissemus</i> we might 5 <i>Legerisissetis</i> ye might 6 <i>Legerisissent</i> they might	have had been read
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Legero</i> I may 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou maist 3 <i>Legerit</i> he may 4 <i>Legerimus</i> we may 5 <i>Legeritis</i> ye may 6 <i>Legerint</i> they may	read hereafter	1 <i>Legero</i> I may 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou maist 3 <i>Legerit</i> he may 4 <i>Legerimus</i> we may 5 <i>Legeritis</i> ye may 6 <i>Legerint</i> they may	1 <i>Legero</i> I may 2 <i>Legeris</i> thou maist 3 <i>Legerit</i> he may 4 <i>Legerimus</i> we may 5 <i>Legeritis</i> ye may 6 <i>Legerint</i> they may	be read hereafter

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense } *Legere* { to read } *Legi* { to be read.

Præterp. and Præterpl. } *Legisse* { to have or had read } *Lectum esse* vel *fuisse* { to have or had been read.

Future } *Lecturum esse* { to read hereafter } { *Lectum ire*, vel *Legendum esse* } to be read hereafter.

Gerunds.

Legendi, of reading, or of being read.
Legendo, in reading, or of being read.
Legendum, to read, or to be read.

Supines.

Lectum, to read, *Lectu*, to be read.

Participles.

Of the Present tense } *Legens* { reading } Of the Præter tense } *Lectus* { read.

Of the Future tense in *rus* } *Lecturus* { to read } Of the Future in *rus* } *Legendus* { to be read.

Chap. 28. Of the form of the Fourth Conjugation.

Verba in (o) of quarta Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Audio</i> .	Verbs in (o) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like <i>Audio</i> .	Verba in (or) of quarta Conjugationis variantur sicut <i>Audior</i> .	Verbs in (or) of the fourth Conjugation be varied like <i>Audior</i> .
------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Audio, audis, audit, audire, auditum.

*Au- { audiri { audi- { sum { audi-
dior, { audire { tus { fui { ri.*

The Indicative Mood.

Present tense Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audis</i>	I hear	}	<i>Audior</i>	I am	}
	2 <i>Audis</i>	thou hearest		<i>Audiris</i>	thou art	
	3 <i>Audit</i>	he heareth		<i>Audire</i>		
				<i>Auditur</i>	he is	
	1 <i>Audimus</i>	we		<i>Audimur</i>	we are	
	2 <i>Auditis</i>	ye		<i>Audimini</i>	ye are	
	3 <i>Audiunt</i>	they		<i>Audiuntur</i>	they are	

Preterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audiebam</i>	I did	}	<i>Audiebar</i>	I was	}
	2 <i>Audiebas</i>	thou didst		<i>Audiebaris</i>	thou wast	
	3 <i>Audiebat</i>	he did		<i>Audiebare</i>		
				<i>Audiebatur</i>	he was	
	1 <i>Audiebamus</i>	we did		<i>Audiebamur</i>	we were	
	2 <i>Audiebatis</i>	ye did		<i>Audiebamini</i>	ye were	
	3 <i>Audiebant</i>	they did		<i>Audiebantur</i>	they were	

Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Audivi</i>	I have	}	<i>Auditus</i>	<i>sum</i>	I have	}
	2 <i>Audivisti</i>	thou hast		<i>fui</i>	thou hast		
	3 <i>Audivit</i>	he hath		<i>es</i>			
				<i>fuisse</i>	he hath		
	1 <i>Audivimus</i>	we have		<i>fuit</i>			
	2 <i>Audivistis</i>	ye have		<i>sumus</i>	we have		
	3 <i>Audiverunt</i>	they	<i>fuerunt</i>	they have			
	<i>Audivero</i>	have	<i>fuerint</i>				

Preter

Præteritū perf. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiveram I had	heard	Auditus	eram I had	been heard
	2 Audiveras thou hadst			fueram thou hadst	
	3 Audiverat he had			eras he had	
	1 Audiverimus we had	heard	Auditis	erat we had	
	2 Audiveratis ye had			fuerat ye had	
	3 Audiverant they had			eratis they had	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiam I shall	hear	Audiat	I shall be	heard
	2 Audies thou shalt			thou shalt be	
	3 Audiet he shall			he shall be	
	1 Audiemus we shall	hear	Audiant	we shall be	heard
	2 Audietis ye shall			ye shall be	
	3 Audient they shall			they shall be	

The Imperative Mood.

Præsent tense Plur. I Sing.	2 Audi Hear thou	Audire	Be thou	heard
	Audito			
	3 Audiat let him hear		let him be	
	Audito	Audiamur	let us be	heard
	1 Audiamus let us hear		be ye	
	Audite hear ye			
	2 Auditote	Audiantur	let them be	
	Audiant let them hear			
	3 Audiunto			

The Potential Mood.

Præsent tense Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiam I may	Audiar	I may	be heard
	2 Audias thou maist		thou maist	
	3 Audiat he may		he may	
	1 Audiamus we may	Audiamur	we may	be heard
	2 Audiaris ye may		ye may	
	3 Audiant they may		they may	

Imperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audirem I might 2 Audires thou mightest 3 Audiret he might 1 Audiremus we might 2 Audiretis ye might 3 Audirent they might	hear	Audiret I might Audireris thou mightest Audirere Audiretur he might Audiremur we might Audiremini ye might Audirentur they might	he heard
Preterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiverim I might 2 Audiveris thou mightest 3 Audiverit he might 1 Audiverimus we might 2 Audiveritis ye might 3 Audiverint they might	have heard	Audivi I might Audiveris thou mightest Audiverit he might Audivimus we might Audiveritis ye might Audiverint they might	have been heard
Preterpluperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Audivissem I might 2 Audivisses thou mightest 3 Audivisset he might 1 Audivissemus we might 2 Audivissetis ye might 3 Audivissent they might	have had heard	Audivi I might Audivisses thou mightest Audivisset he might Audivissemus we might Audivissetis ye might Audivissent they might	have had been heard
Future Plur. I Sing.	1 Audiero I may 2 Audieris thou mayest 3 Audierit he may 1 Audierimus we may 2 Audieritis ye may 3 Audierint they may	shall hear	Audiero I may Audieris thou mayest Audierit he may Audierimus we may Audieritis ye may Audierint they may	shall hear hereafter

The Infinitive Mood.

Present and Imperfect tense	} Audire	{ to hear	} Audiri	{ to be heard.
Præterperf. and Præterplup.	} Audivisse	{ to have heard	} Auditum esse vel fuisse	{ to have or had been heard.
Future	{ Auditurum esse	{ to hear hereafter	{ Auditum iri, vel Audiendum esse	{ to be heard hereafter.

Gerunds.

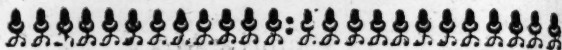
Audiendi, of hearing, or of being heard.
 Audiendo, in hearing, or of being heard.
 Audiendum, to hear, or to be heard.

Supines.

Auditum, to hear, Auditu, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Present tense	}	Audiens, hearing.
Future in <i>rus</i> .		Auditurus, to hear.
Of the Preter tense		Auditus, heard.
Future in <i>rus</i> ,		Audiendus, to be heard.

As in *Præfenti*.

OR,

WILLIAM LILIES Rules of the
Preterperfect tenses and Su-
pines of Verbs.

Chap. 29.

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Simple Verbs.

As in *præfenti* con-
tains Rules
of the
Preter ten-
ses of Sim-
ple Verbs.

I.
In the first
Conjugati-
on As ma-
keth *avi*.

I. **A**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterper-
fect tense in *avi*; as, *No nas*, to swim, *navi*;
vocito vocitas, to call often, *vocitavi*. Except 1, *Lavo*
lavi, to wash : *juvo juvi*, to help : *nexo nexui*, to
knit : *seco secui*, to cut : *neco necui*, to kill : *mico mi-*
cui, to shine : *placo placui*, to fold : *frico fricui*, to rub :
domo domui, to tame : *tono tonui*, to thunder : *sono*
sonui, to sound : *crepo crepui*, to crack : *veto vetui* to
forbid : *cubo cubui*, to lye down : which seldome
makes *avi* : 2. *Do das*, to give, will make *dedi* : and
sto, stas to stand, *steti*.

2.
In the se-
cond Es
makes *ui*.

II. **E**S in the Present tense, makes the Preterper-
fect tense in *ui*; as, *nigreo nigres nigrui*, to wax
black. Except 1 *Jubeo jubes jussi*, to bid : *sorbeo sorbes*
sorbui & *sorps*, to sup : *mulceo mulci*, to allwage : *luceo*
luxi, to shine : *sedeo sedi*, to sit : *video vidi*, to see : *pran-*
deo prandi, to dine : *strideo stridi*, to make a noise : *sua-*
dco suasi, to perswade : *rideo risi*, to laugh : and *ardeo*
arxi, to burn.

2 The first syllable is doubled in these four fol-
lowing, viz. *Pendeo pependi*, to hang : *mordeo mo-*
mordi, to bite.

Spondeo



As in Præsenti.

SIVE,

GULIELMI LILII Regulæ
de Præteritis & Supinis
Verborum.

Cap. 29.

De Præteritis Verborum Simplicium.

I. **A** Sin Præsenti perfectum format in avi;

ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi;

1 Deme lavo lavi, juvo, juvi, nexoque nexui;

Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mieo verbum

Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat :

Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum

Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat :

Atque cubo cubui : raro hæc formantur in avi.

2 Do das rite dedi, sto stas, formare steri vult.

Regulæ de
Præteritis
Verborum
Simplicium.

1.
In prima
Conjugatione
as
format avi.

II. **E** Sin præsenti perfectum format ui dans,

ut nigreo nigres nigrui 1 Jubeo excipe jussi,

Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulci;

Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videoque

Vult vidi : sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,

Suado suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.

2 Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima;

Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi.

2.
In Secunda
es format
ui.

Spondeo

Spondeo, spondi, to promise : condeo, contendi, to clip or shear.

3 If *l* or *r* stand next before *geo*, *geo* is turned into *fi*, as, *Urgeo, urfi, to urge : mulgeo, mulfi, & mulxi, to milk : frigeo, frixi, to be cold : lugeo, luxi, to lament, augeo & auxi, to encrease.*

4 *Fleo, fles, to weep, makes flevi : leo, les, to be smear, levi, and its compound deleo, makes delevi, to blot out : pleo, ples, to fill, makes plevi.* 5. *Neo, nes, to spin, nevi : maneo, to tarry, makes mansi.* 6 *Torqueo, to twist, torxi.* 7 And *hæreo, to stick, hæsi.*

8 *Veo* is made *vi* ; as, *Ferveo, ferui, to be hot : bur viuis, to wink, and its compound conniveo, to close and open the eyes, makes nivi, and nixi : cieo, to trouble, makes civi : and vico, to bind, vievi.*

In the third,
Eo makes bi.

III. **T**He third Conjugation will form the Preterperfect tense, as is plain here. *Eo* is made *bi*, as, *Lambo, lambi, to lick, Except i Scribe, scripsi, to write : nubo, nupsi, to be married to a man : and cubo, cubui, to lye down.*

Eo, ci.

Co is made *ci*, as, *Vinco, vici, to overcome. But i Parco makes peperci and parsi, to spare : dico dixi, to say, and ducō, duxi, to lead.*

Do, di.

Do is made *di*, as, *mando mandi, to eat : but sciudo, to cut, makes scidi : findo, fidi, to cleave : fundo, fudi, to pour out : tundo, tucudi, to knock : pendo, pependi, to weigh : tendo, terendi, to stretch : pedito pepedi, to fart : cado, cecidi, to fall : cedo, cecidi, to beat : cedo, cessi, to give place : vado, to go away : rado, to shave : Ludo, to hurt : ludo, to play : divido, to divide : trudo, to thrust : claudio, to shut : plaudo, to clap hands : rodo, to gnaw : change alwayes do into fi.*

Go, xi.

Go is made *xi*, as, *jungo, to join junxi : but i before go makes fi ; as, spargo, sparsi, to sprinkle : lego, to read, makes legi : and ago, to do, egi : tango, tetigi,*

Spondeo, habere spospondi; condeo; vultque rorondi.

3. **L** uel r ante geo, si stet, geo venit in si
Urgeo, ut urfi; mulgeo, mulsi, dat quoque mulxi;
Frigeo, frixi; lugeo, luxi; habet augeo, & auxi.

4. **D**at Fleo, fles, fleui; lco, les, leui; indeq. haecum
Deleo, deleui; pleo, ples, pleui. 5. **N**eo, neui;
Amanco, mansi, formatur. 6. **T**orquco, torxi.

7. **H**æreo vult hæsi. 8. **V**eo fit vi; ut Ferueo, ferui;
Niveo, & inde satum poscit conniveo, nivi;
Et nixi; eieo, civi; vieoque vicui.

Tertia Præteritum formabit, ut hic manifestum.
Bo fit bi; ut Lambos, lambi. Scribo, excipe scrip-
Et nubo, nupsi; antiquum cumbo, cubui, dat.

In Tertia,
Bo fit bi.

Cofit ei; ut Vinco, vici; vult pa; co, pepteci;
Et parsi; dico, dixi; duco quoque duxi.

Co, ei.

Do fit di; ut Mando, mandi; sed scindo, scidi, dat;
Findo, fidi; fundo, fudi; secundo, tutudique;
Pendo, pependi; tendo, retendi; pedo, pepedi;
Junge cado, cecidi; pro verbera cado, cecidi;
Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare cessi.
Vado, rado, ludo, divido, trudo,
Claudo, plando, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si.

Do, di.

Go fit xi; ut jungo, junxi; sed r ante go vult si;
Hi: spargo, sparsi; lego, legi; & ago facit egi;

Go, xi.

Dat

terege, to touch: *pungo*, to prick, makes *puxi* and *pupugi*: *frango fregi*, to break: *pango pepigi*, to make a bargain: *pango pegi*, to join: *pango parxi*, to sing.

Ho, xi.

Ho is made *xi*; as, *Traho*, *traxi*, to draw: and *veho vexi*, to carry.

Lo, ui

Lo is made *ui*; as, *Colo colui*, to till: but *Psallo*, to sing: and *sallo*, to salt, make *salli*: *vello*, to pluck up, makes *velli* and *vulsi*: *fallo*, to deceive, makes *fiselli*: *cello*, to break, *ceculi*: and *pello*, to drive away, *pepuli*.

Mo, vi.

Mo is made *ui*, as, *Vomo vomui*, to vomit: but *emo*, makes *emi*, to buy: *como compsi*, to comb: *promo prompsi*, to draw: *demo dempsi*, to take away: *sumo sumpsi*, to take: *premo pressi*, to press.

No, ui.

No is made *vi*; as, *sino sivi* to suffer. Except *Temo tempsi*, to despise: *sterno stravi*, to stress: *sperno spreui*, to despise: *lino levi*, *lini* and *livi*, to damb: *cerno crevi*, to discern: *Gigno* makes *genui*, to bring: *pono posui*, to put: *cano cecini*, to sing.

Po, psi.

Po is made *psi*; as, *scalpo*, *scalpsi*, to scratch: *rumpo rupi*, to break: *strepo strepui*, to make a noise: *crepo crepui*, to crack.

Quo, qui.

Quo is made *qui*; as, *linquo liqui*, to leave. Except *coquo coxi*, to boil.

Ro, vi.

Ro is made *vi*, as, *sero*, to plant or sow, makes *serui*, which changing the signification, rather maketh *serui*: *verro*, to brush, *verri* and *vergi*: *uro* *ussi*, to burn: *gero gessi*, to act, or bear: *quero quesiui*, to seek: *terro triui*, to wear: *curro cucurvi*, to run.

So, sivi.

So will make *sivi*, as, *accesso*, to go to call, *arcesso*, to go to call: *incesso*, to rebile: and *locesso sivi*, to provoke. Except *capesso*, to offer to take, which makes *capessi* and *capessiui*, *facecco*, to go about to do: and *viso*, to visit, makes *visi*: but *pizo*, to bake, will have *pinisui*.

Sco, vi.

Sco is made *vi*; as, *pasco pavi*, to feed: but *posco*, will have *poposci*, to require.

Disco,

Dat rango tetigi, pango punxi pupugique;
Dat frango fregi, cum signat pango paci/sci
Vult pepigi, pro jungo, pegi, pro cano panxi.

Ho fit xi, traho ceu traxi, docet & vecho vexi.

Ho, xi.

Lo fit ui, colo ceu colui: psallo excipe cum p
Et fallo fini p, nam falli format utrunque;
Dat vello velli vulsi quoque, fallo fefelli,
Cello pro frango ceculi; pello pepulique.

Lo, ui.

Mo fit ui, vomo ceu vomui: sed emo facit emi;
Como petit compsi, promo prompsi, adfice demo
Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi, premo pressi.

Mo, ui.

No fit vi, sino ceu sivi, tempo excipe tempfi,
Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,
Interdum lini & livi, cerno quoque crevi:
Gigno, pono, cano, genui, posui, cecini. dant.

No, vi.

Po fit psi, ut scalpo scalpfi, rumpo excipe rupi,
Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui dat.

Po, psi.

Qo fit qui, ut linquo liqui, coquo demito coxi.

Qo, qui.

Ro fit vi, sero ceu proplauto & semino sevi,
Quod serui melius dat mutans significatum,
Vult verro verri & versi, uro ussi, gero gessi,
Quo quæsi, tero trivi, curro cucurri,

Ro, vi.

So, velut accerso, arcesso, incesso, atque lacecco,
Formabit livi; sed tolle capesso capessi,
Quodque capessivi facit, atque facecco facecchi,
Sic viso visi, sed. pinsu pinsui habebit.

So, stvi.

Sco fit vi, ut pasco pavi, vult posco poposci;

Sco, vi.

Vult

Disco, didici, to learn; and quæisco, quæxi, to nod with the head.

Te, ti.

To is made ti; as, verto, verti, to turn: Sisto, stiti, to make to stand: but mitto makes misi, to send: peto will sonit perivi, to ask: sterto, stertui, to snort: meto messui, to mow.

Ecto, exi.

Ecto is made exi; as, flecto, flexi, to bend: but pecto, to comb, makes pexi, and pexui: andnecto, to knit: nexi and nexui.

No, vi.

Xo, xui.

Vo is made ui; as, volvo, volvi, to rotol ober: Except vivo, vixi, to live. Nexo, makes nexui, to knit: and texo, texui, to weave.

Cio, ci.

Cio is made ci; as, facio, feci, to make: jacio, jeci, to cast: but lacio, to allure, makes lexi: and specio, to behold, spexi.

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

Pio, pi.

Dio is made di; as, fodio, to dig, makes fodi.

Gio is made gi; as, fugio, fugi, to avoid.

Pio is made pi; as, capio, cepi, to take. Except, cupio, cupiui, to desire: and rapio, rapui, to snatch: and sapio, sapiui, or sapiui, to be wise.

Rio, ri.

Tio, ti.

Rio is made ri; as, pario, peperui, to bring forth.

Tio is made ti; as, quatuo, quassui, to shake: which preterperfect tense is seldom used.

Uo, ui.

Uo is made ui; as, statuo, statui, to appoint: but pluo, to rain, makes pluui and pluui: struo, struxi, to build: fluo, fluxi, to flow.

The fourth
makes iui.

IV. **T**HE fourth Conjugation makes *is* in the present tense, & *iui* in the preterperfect tense; as, scio, scis, scivi, to know. Except venio, veni, to come: cambio, campsi, to exchange: raucio, rauxi, to be hoarse: sarcio, sarxi, to patch: sepio, sepsi, to hedge: sentio, sensi, to perceive: fulcio, fulxi, to undress: haurio, hauxi, to draw: sancio, sanxi, to embellish: vincio, vinxi, to bind: salio, salui, to leap: and amicio, amicui, to clothe. We seldom use, Cam-
bivi, hauiui, amicui, &c.

Chap.

Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.

*To fit ti; ut verro verti, sed hsto notetur
Profacio stare Activum, nam jure stiri dat.
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.
Sterto stertui habet, meto messi. Ab eâ fit exi;
ut, flecto, flexi: pecto dat pexui, habetque:
Pexi; etiam necto dat nexui, habet quoque nexi.*

To, ti.

Esto, exi.

*Vo fit vi; ut, volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.
Nexo ut nexui habet, sic texo texui habebit.*

Vo, vi.

Xo, Xui.

*Fit cio, ci; ut, facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.*

Cio, ci.

Dio, di.

Gio, gi.

Fit dio, di; ut fodio, fodi. Gio, een fugio, gi.

*Fit pio, pi; ut, capio, cepi, cupio excipe pivi:
Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui, atque sapivi.*

Pio, pi.

*Fit tio, ri; ut, pario, peperit. Tio ssi Geminans f:
ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.*

Rio, ri.

Tio, ssi.

*Denique uo fit ui; ut, statuo statui: pluo pluvi
Format sivi plui: struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

Uo, ui.

IV **Q**uarta dat is, ivi, ut monstrat scio scistibi scivi In quarta
Excipias venio dans veni, cambia campsi, u format, v

Raucio rausi, farcio farfi, sarcio sarfi,
Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio tulsi:
Haurio item hausii, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi:
Pro salto salio salui, & amicio amiceui dat.
Parcius utemur cambivi, haurivi, amic. vi,
Sepivi, sanxivi, sarcivi, atque salivi.

Chap. 30.

Of the Preterperfect tense of Compound Verbs.

The simple and Compound verbs have the same preterperfect tense.

Except, I. Words that double the first syllable.

2 *Plico*.

3 *Oleo*.

4 *Pungo*.

5 *Do*, & *Sto*.

6 Verbs changing the first vowel into *e*.

THe Simple and the Compound Verb have the same Preterperfect tense; as, *Docui*, **I have taught**: *edocui*, **I have fully taught**, but

1 The Syllable, which the simple verb doubleth, is not alwayes doubled in the Compound, except in these three, *praeurro*, **to run befoze**: *excurro*, **to run out**: and *repungo*, **to prick again**: and in the Compounds of *Do*, **to give**: *disco*, **to learn**: *sto*, **to stand**: and *posco*, **to require**.

2 *Plico* compounded with *sub* or a Noun, will have *plicavi*; as, *supplico*, **to supply**: *multiplico*, **to multiply**: but *aplico*, **to apply**, *complico*, **to fould up**: *replico*, **to reply**: and *explico*, **to unfold**, will end in *ui*, or *avi*.

3 Though *Oleo*, **to smell**, makes *olevi*, yet its compounds make rather *olevi*: but *Redoleo*, **to smell strong**, and *suboleo*, **to smell a little**, are formed like the simple Verb.

4 All the compounds of *Pungo*, **to prick**, make *punxi*: but *repungo*, **to prick again**, makes *repunxi* and *repunxi*.

5 The Compounds of *Do*, when they are of the third Conjugation, make *did*; as, *Credo*, **to beleive**: *edo*, **to set forth**: *dedo*, **to petid**: *reddo*, **to restore**: *perdo*, **to destroy**: *abdo*, **to hide**: *obdo*, **to set against**: *condo*, **to build**: *indo*, **to put in**: *trado*, **to deliver**: *prodo*, **to betray**: *vendo*, **to sell**: But *Abscendo*, **to hide**, makes *Abscondi*.

The Compounds of *Sto*, **to stand**, make *stiti*.

6 These Simple Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel of the Present tense, and Preterperfect tense, and so of all other tenses into *e*, viz.

Damno

Cap. 30.

De Compositorum Verborum Præteritis.

Præteritum dat idem Simplex & Compositivum ;
ut docui, edocui monstrat. 1 Sed syllaba semper

Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur ;

Præterquam tribus hi, præcurro, excurro, repungo :

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, rite creatis.

2 A plico compositum cum sub, vel nomine, ut ista
Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi :
Applico, complico, replico & explico ui, vel in avi.

3 Quamvis vult oleo, simplex olui, tamen inde
Quodvis compositum melius formabit olevi :
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur suboletque.

4 Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi,
Vult unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.

5 Natum à do, quando est inflectio tertia, ut addo,
Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi : at unum
Abscondo abscondi. Natum à sto, stas, stiti, habebit.

6 Verbi hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique ;
Si componantur vocalem primam in c mutant ;

K

Danno

Simplex &
Compositum
idem habent
Præteritum.
Excipe,
1 Geminan-
tia primam
syllabam.

2 Plico;

3 Oleo;

4 Pungo;

5 Do & Sm

6 Mutant
primam vo-
calem in c

Damno, to condemn: *lazzo*, to gibe lack: *sacro*, to dedicate: *fallo*, to deceive: *arceo*, to drive away: *traffo*, to handle: *fatiscor*, to be weary: *partio*, to divide: *carpo*, to crop: *patro*, to commit: *scando*, to climb: *spargo*, to sprinkle: and *pario*, to bring forth young: whereof two Compounds, *Comperio*, to find out by search: and *reperio*, to find by chance: do make *peri*, and all the rest *perui*: as, *aperio*, to open: *operio*, to cover.

7 *Pasco*.

7 These two compounds of *Pasco*, viz. *Compesco*, to pasture together: and *disposco*, to drive from pasture, will have *pescui*, the rest will have *pavi*: as, *epasco*, to eat up.

8 Verbs that change the first Vowel into *i*.

8 These Verbs being compounded do change the first vowel every where into *i*, viz. *habeo*, to have: *lateo*, to lye hid: *salio*, to leap: *statuo*, to appoint: *cado*, to fall: *lædo*, to hurt: *pango*, *pergi*, to joyn: *cano*, to sing: *quæro*, to seek: *cado*, *ecido*, to beat: *tango*, to touch: *ægeo*, to want: *teneo*, to hold: *taceo*, to keep silence: *sapio*, to be wise: and *rapio*, to snatch: as *rapio*, *rapui*, makes *eripio*, *eripui*: but the Compounds of *Cano*, make the preterperfect tense in *ui*; as, *conciuo*, to agree in one tune, *conciui*.

9 *Placeo*.

9. So of *Placeo*, cometh *displiceo*, to displease: but *complaceo*, to like well: and *perplaceo*, to please thoroughly, do follow the simple Verb.

10 *Pango*.

10 These four Compounds of *pango*, to joyn, do keep *a*, viz. *Depango*, to fasten down: *oppango*, to fasten to: *circumpango*, to fasten about: and *repango*, to dis-joyn.

11 *Maneo*.

11 These four Compounds of *Maneo* mans, to tarry, do make *minui*, viz. *Praminso*, to excell others: *emineo*, to appear before others: *pramineo* to hang out in sight; and *immineo*, to hang over: but the rest follow the simple Verb.

12 *Scalpo*,

calco, *salto*, to tread: *salto*, to dance: change *a* into *u*; as, *excul-*

Damnos, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor;

Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, parióque,

Cujus nata peri duo, comperit & reperit dant;

Cetera sed perui, velut hæc aperire, operire.

7 *A* Pasto, pavi tantum composita notentur

7 *Pasco.*

Hæc duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere:

Cetera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.

8 *Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,*

8 *Mutancia
primâ voca-
lem in i.*

Pango dant pegi, cano, quæro, cedo, cecidi,

Tango, egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapióque,

Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant,

ut rapio rapui; eripio eripui: à Cano natum,

Præteritum per ui, teu concino, concinui dat.

9 *A* placeo, sic displiceo; sed simplicis usum

9 *Placui.*

Hæc duo complaceo, cum perplaceo, bene servant.

10 *Composita à pango retinent, a quatuor ista;*

10 *Pango.*

Depango; oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

11 *A* maneo mansi, minui dant quatuor ista;

11 *Maneo.*

Præminco; emineo, cum prominco, immineóque;

Simplicis at verbi servabunt cetera formam.

12 *Composita à scalpo, calco, salto, a per u mutant;*

12 *Scalpo;
calco, salto.*

po, to carve : *inculco*, to inculcate ; and *resulto*, to rebound.

13 *Claudo*,
quatio, *lavo*.

13 The Compounds of *Claudo*, to shut: *quatio*, to shake : *lavo* to wash, do cast away a; as, *occludo*, to shut fast : *excludo* to shut out, of *claudo*. *Percutio*, to smite, and *excutio*, to shake off, of *quatio*. *Proluo*, is, *lui* to wash much : *diluo*, is, *lui*, to purge with washing, of *lavo*.

14 Verbs
that change
the first
vowel of the
present tense
into *i*, but
not of the
Preter tense.

14 These Verbs being compounded, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *i*; but not of the Preterperfect tense ; viz. *Ago*, to do, *emo*, to buy, *jedio*, to sit, *rego*, to rule, *frango*, to break, *capiō*, to take, *jacio*, to cast, *lacio*, to allure, *specio*, to behold, *premo*, to press, as of *frango*, is made *refringo*, *refrigi*, to break open : of *capiō*, *incipio*, *incepi*, to begin : but *perago*, to finish : *satago*, to be busie about a thing, *coëmo*, to buy together, do follow their simple Verb. And of *ago*, *dego*, to live, makes *degi*, and *cogo*, to compel, *coëgi*, as also of *rego*, *pego* to go forward, makes *perrexi*; and *surgō*, to arise, *surrexi*; the middle syllable of the Present tense being taken away.

15 *Facio*,

15 *Facio* changeth nothing, unless it have a Preposition before it, as, *Olfacio*, to smell, *calfacio*, to make hot, and *inficio* to infect.

16 *Lego*.

16 The Compounds of *Lego*, with *re*, *se*, *per*, *pre*, *sub*, *trans*; keep the vowel of the Present tense, the rest change it into *i*: of which *intelligo*, to understand, *diligō*, to love, *negligo*, to neglect, make *lexi*, and all the rest make *legi*.

Id tibi demonstrant exculpo, inculco, resulto.

13 *Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a;*

Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo; à quatioque

Percutio, excutio; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.

13 *Claudio,
quatio, lavo.*

14 *Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,*

Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, semper

Vocalem primam presentis in i, sibi mutant,

Præteriti numquam, ceu frango, refringo, refrégi :

A capio, incipio, incepti. Sed pauca notentur.

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagòque :

Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo cœgi;

A rego sic pergo, perrexī, vult quoque surgo

Surrexi, mediâ presentis syllabâ ademptâ.

14 *Mutantia
primam
vocalem
presentis in
i, sed non
præteriti.*

15 *Nil variat facio nisi præpositio præeunte :*

Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficioque.

15 *Facio,*

16 *A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præeunte, 16 Lega.*

Presentis servant vocalem, in i, cætera mutant ;

De quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Præteritum lexi faciunt; reliqua omnia legi.

Chap. 31.

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

The Supine
is formed of
the Preter
tense.

Bi, makes
tum.

Ci, *ctum*

Di, *sum*

The syllable
is not dou-
bled in the
Supines.

Gi, *ctum*

Li, *sum*

Mi,
Ni,
Pi,
Qui, } *tum*,

Ri, *sum*

Si, *sum*

NOW learn to form the Supine from the Preter-
perfect tense thus: *Bi* makes *tum*; as, *Bibi*, *bibi-*
tum, to drink.

Ci is made *ctum*; as, *vici* *vic-tum*, to overcome: *ici*
ictum, to smite: *seci*, *factum*, to do: *jeci*, *ja-ctum*, to cast.

Di is made *sum*, as, *vidi*, *visum*, to see: but some do
double *ss*; as, *pandi*, *passum*, to lay open: *sed*, *sessum*, to
sit: *scidi*, *scissum*, to cut: *fid*, *fissum*, to cleave: *fodi*, *fos-*
sum, to dig.

And here also you may observe, that the syllable
which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense, is not
doubled in the Supines; as, *totondi*, to clasp, makes *con-*
sum: *cecidi*, to beat, *casum*: *cecidi*, to fall, *casum*: *te-*
tendi, to stretch, *tensum* and *tentum*: *tutudi*, to knock,
tunsum: *pepedi*, to fart, *peditum*: to which add *dati*,
which makes *datum*.

Gi is made *ctum*; as, *legi*, to read, *lectum*; *pegi*, to
joyn, and *pepigi*, to make a bargain, *pa-ctum*; *fregi*, to
break, *fra-ctum*; *tetigi*, to touch, *ta-ctum*; *egi*, to do, *ac-tum*;
pupugi, to pitch, *pun-ctum*; and *fugi*, to avoid, *fugi-tum*.

Li is made *sum*; as, *falli*, to season with salt, *sal-sum*;
pepuli, to dribe away, makes *pul-sum*; *ceculi*, to break,
cul-sum, *sefelli*, to deceive, *falsum*; *velli*, to pluck up,
un-sum, and *tuli*, to suffer, *latum*.

Mi, *ni*, *pi*, *qui*, are made *tum*; as, *emi*, *emptum* to buy,
veni, *ventum*, to come; *cecini*, *cantum*, to sing; *cepi*, *cap-*
tum to take, *cepio*, *captum*, to begin; *rupi*, *ruptum*, to
break; *liqui*, *li-ctum*, to leave.

Ri is made *sum*; as, *verri*, *ver-sum*, to brush: except
peperi, *partum*, to bring forth

Si is made *sum*; as, *visi*, *visum*, to visit; yet *miss* maketh

Cap. 31.

De Simplicium Verborum Supinis.

Nunc ex Præterito discas formare Supinum.
 Si sibi tum format : sic namque bibi bibitum fit.

Supinū for-
 matur ex
 Præterito.
 Bi, format
 rum

Ci fit etum, ut, vici, victum, testatur & ici
 Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Ci, etum

Di fit sum, ut vidi visum : quædam geminant ss,
 ut pandi passum, sedi, sessum, adde scidi quod
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossam.

Di, sum

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima Supinis, Syllaba non
 quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur : geminatur
 Idque torondi dans tñsum docet, atque cecidi Supinis.
 Quod cæsum, & cecidi, quod dat, casum, atque torondi
 Quod tñsum & tentum, tñedi tñtum, atque pepedi
 Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure datum vult.

Gi fit etum, ut legi lectum, pegi pepigique
 Dat pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum;
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Gi, etum

Li fit sum, ut falli stans pro sale condio falsum;
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque fefelli
 Falsum, dat velli vulsum, tuli habet quoque larum.

Li, sum

Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum sunt, velut hic manifestum;
 Emi emprum, veni ventum, cecini à cano, cantum;
 A capio cepi dans caprum, à cœpio cœptum,
 A runpo rupi ruptum, liqui quoque lictum :

Mi, }
 Ni, } rum
 Pi, }
 Qui, }

Ri fit sum, ut verri versum; peperer excipe partum.

Ri, sum

Si fit sum, ut visi, visum; tamen s̄ geminato,

Si, sum.

ket̃ missum, to send, with a double s̃: except fals̃, fultum, to underprop, hausĩ haustum, to dr̃aw, fars̃i factum, to patch; fars̃i factum, to stuff; ussĩ ustum, to burn; gessĩ gestum, to bear; tor̃si tortum, or tor̃sum, to sw̃ell; indulsĩ indultum or indulsum, to pamper.

Pf, tum,

Pf̃ is made tum, as, scripsĩ scriptum, to w̃rite, except camps̃i campsum, to exchange.

Ti, tum,

Tĩ is made tum, as, stetĩ, to stand, and stitĩ, to make to stand: makes statum, except vertĩ versum, to turn.

Vi, tum,

Vĩ is made tum, as, flavĩ flatum, to blow; except pavĩ, pastum, to feed, lavĩ lotum, laatum or lavatum, to wash, potavĩ potum & potatum, to dr̃ink, favĩ fantum, to favoꝝ, cavĩ cantum, to beware, sevĩ satum, to sow, livĩ or linĩ litum, to dawb, solvĩ solutum, to loose, volvĩ volutum, to rowl, singultivĩ singultum, to sob, venivĩ venum to be sold, sepelivĩ sepultum, to bury.

Ui, itum,
utum,

Uĩ makes itum, as, domuĩ domitum, to tame: except every verb in uo; because uĩ will alwayes make utum, as, exuĩ exutum, to put off: but ruĩ makes ruitum, to rush, so secuĩ sectum, to cut, necuĩ nectum, to kiss, fricuĩ frictum, to rub, miscuĩ mistum, to mingle, amicuĩ amictum, to clothe, torruĩ tostum, to roast, docuĩ doctum, to teach, tenuĩ tentum, to hold, consuluĩ consultum to consult, aluĩ altum or alitum, to nourish, saluĩ saltum, to leap, coluĩ cultum, to wor- ship, oculuĩ occultum, to hide, pinsuĩ pistum, to bake, rapuĩ, raptum, to snatch, servĩ sertum, to put to, texuĩ textum, to weave. But these change uĩ into sum; for censeo, to think, maketh censũ, celluĩ celsum, to break, messuĩ messum, to mow, nexuĩ nexum, to knit, pexuĩ pexum, to comb; patuĩ passum, to lie open, caruĩ cassum and carium, to want.

[sum

Xi, et m.

Xĩ is made etum, as, vinxĩ vinetum, to binde: but five lose n, viz. finxĩ fistum, to feign, mixĩ mictum, to piss, pinxĩ pictum, to paint, strinxĩ strictum, to tie, rinxĩ rictum, to grin.

And

Misi *formabit* missum, fulsi *excipe* fultum;
 Haulsi haustum, sarsi sartum, sarsi *quoque* sartum,
 Ulsi ustum, gessi gestum, torli *duo* tortum
 Et torsum, indulsi indultum indulsūque *requirit*.

Pli *fit* tum, ut scripsi scriptum; campsi *excipe* camp- Pli, tum,
 (sum.

Ti *fit* tum, à sto namque steti, à sistóque stiti fit, Ti, tum,
Præterito, commune statum; verti *excipe* versum.

Vi *fit* tum, ut flavi flatum; pavi *excipe* pastum; Vi, tum,
 Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum atque lavatum,
 Potavi potum, interdum facit & potatum:
 Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum, à sero sevi,
 Formes ritè sarum, livi linique litum dat:
 Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum;
 Vult singultivi singultum, venco venis
 Venivi venum, sepelivi ritè sepultum.

(quodvis
 Quod dat ui dat itum, ut domui domitum, *excipe* Ui, itum,
 Verbum in uo, quia semper ui formabit in utum;
 Exui ut exutum, à ruo deme rui ruitum datus:
 Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricoique
 Frictum, miscui item mistum, ac amicui dat amictum: &
 Torruui habet tostum, docuique doctum, tenuique
 Tentum. consului consultum, alui alrum alitūque,
 Sic salui salrum, colui ocului quoque cultum:
 Pisui habet pistum, rapui raptum, seruique
 A sero vult sertum; sic texui habet quoque textum.

Hæc sed ui mutant in sum; nam censeo censum, -sum
 Cellui habet celsum, meto messui habet quoque messū;
 Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum;
 Dat parui passum, carui cassum caritūque.

Xi *fit* etum, ut vinxi vinctum, quinque abjiciunt n, Xi, etum,
 N: m finxi fictum, minxi mictum, inque Supino,
 Dat pinxi pictum, strinxi, rinxi quoque rictum.

Xum

And these *xi* into *xum*, *Flexi flexum*, to bend, *plexi plexum*, to punish, *fixi fixum*, to fasten, *fluxi fluxum*, to flow.

Chap. 32.

Of the Supines of Compound Verbs, and of the Preterperfect tense of Verbs in *or*.

The Compound Supine is formed like the Simple.

E Very Compound Supine is formed as the Simple, though there remain not always the same syllable in both.

The Compound of *tusum*, to knock, *u*, being taken away, makes *tusum*; and of *rutum*, to rush, *u* made *rutum*, *i* being taken away, and so of *satum*, to leap, is made *satum*.

When *fero* maketh *satum*, its Compounds make *fitum*.

These Supines *captum*, to take, *factum*, to do, *jactum*, to cast, *raptum*, to snatch, *cantum*, to sing, *partum*, to bring forth, *sparsum*, to sprinkle, *carptum*, to crop, and *factum*, to fluff, change *a* into *e*,

The Verb *edo*, to eat, when it is compounded maketh not *estum*, but *esum*, only *comedo*, to eat up, maketh both.

Of *nosco*, to know, *cognitum*, to know, and *agnitum*, to acknowledge, are only used, the rest of its compounds make *notum*, for *noscitum* is not in use.

Verbs in *or*, make their Preterperfect tense of the latter Supine by putting *to*, and *sum* vel *fui*.

II. V Erbs in *or* take their Preterperfect tense from the latter Supine, by changing *u* into *us*, adding *sum* vel *fui*; as of *lectu* is made *lectus sum* vel *fui*. But of these Verbs, sometimes a Deponent, sometimes a Commune is to be noted; for *labor*, to slide, makes *lapsus sum*, *patior*, to suffer, makes *passus sum*, and its compounds *compatior*, to suffer together, *compassus sum*.

Per-

Xum flexi,plexi,fixi dant & fluo fluxum.

Cap. 32.

De Compositorum Verborum Supinis, & De Præteritis Verborum in or.

I. **C**ompositum ut Simplex formatur quodque Supinum, Compositum
Supinum for-
matur ut
Simplex.
Quamvis non eadem fiet semper syllaba utrique.

Composita à tuncsum, dempta n, tuncsum, à ruitum fit

I media dempta rutum, & à saltum quoque sultum,

A sero quando satum format, composita situm dant.

Hec caprum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant,

Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque farrum,

Verbum edo compositum non estum sed facit esum;

Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.

A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,

Cætera dant notum, nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

II. **V**erba in or admittunt ex Posteriori Supino Verba in or,
admittunt
Præteritum
ex posteriore
supino, ad-
dendo s, &
sum vel fui.
Præteritum, verso u per us, & sum consociato
Vel fui; ut, à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum.

Nunc est Deponens, nunc est Commune notandum:

Nam labor lapsus, patior dat passus & ejus

Nata, ut comparior compassus, perpetiorque.

Formans

perpetior, to suffer thronghly, *perpeffus sum*, *fateor* to confess, makes *faffus sum*, and its compounds, as, *confiteor*, to confess, *confeffus sum*, *diffiteor*, to deny, *diffeffus sum*; *gradior*, to go by steps, makes *greflus sum*, and so its compounds, as, *digredior*, to digrels, *digreflus sum*; *fatifcor*, to be weary, makes *feffus sum*; *metior*, to meafure, *menfus sum*; *utor*, to use, *ufus sum*, *ordior*, to weave, makes *orditus*; *ordior*, to begin, *orfus*, *nitor*, to endeavor, *nifus*, or *nixus sum*; *uicifcor*, to revenge, *ultus sum*; *irafcor*, to be angry, makes *iratus sum*; *reor*, to fuppofe, *ratus sum*; *oblivifcor*, to forget, *oblitus sum*; *fruor*, to enjoy, *fructus*, or *fruitus sum*; *mifereor*, to pity, *miferus sum*; *tuor*, to fee, and *tueor*, to defend, makes *notutus*, but *tuitus sum*, though both have *tutum* and *tuitum* in the Supine; *loquor*, to fpeak makes *locutus sum*; *fequor*, to folloiw, *fecutus sum*; *experior*, to try, *experitus sum*, *pacifcor*, to make a bargain, *paftus sum*, *nancifcor*, to get, *nactus sum*; *apifcor*, to get, which is an old verb, makes *aptus sum*, to be apt, or fit, or to find out, whence *adipifcor*, to obtain, *adeptus*; *queror*, to complain, *queftus sum*; *proficifcor*, to go on a journey, *profeftus sum*; *expergifcor*, to awake, *experrectus sum*; *comminifcor*, to feign, *commentus sum*, *nafcor*, to be born, *natus sum*; *moriol*, to die, *mortuus sum*; *orior*, to arife, makes *ortus sum*.

Chap. 33.

Of certain Verbs irregular, or going out of the common rules of conjugating.

Verbs irregular are, I Redundant, having a preter tense of the Active and of the Passive voice

THEfe verbs have a Preterperfect tense both of the Active and Passive voice, as, *cæno*, to fup, makes *cænavi* and *cænatus sum*; *juro*, to fwear, *juravi* and *juratus*; *potō*, to drink, *potavi* and *potus*, *titubō* to fumble, *titubavi* or *titubatus*.

So

Formans perpeſſus : fateor quod faſſus, & inde
Nata, ut confiteor confeſſus, diffiteorque
Formans diſſeſſus : gradior dat greſſus, & inde
Nata, ut digredior digreſſus. Junge fatiſcor
Feſſus ſum, meſſus ſum metior, uxor & uſus,
Pro texto orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orſus,
Nitor niſus vel nixus ſum, ulciſcor & ultus.
Iraſcor ſimul iratus, reor atque ratus ſum,
Obliviſcor vult oblitus ſum; fruor optat
Fructus vel fruitus, miſereri junge miſerrus.
Vult tuor & tucor non tutus ſed tuitus ſum,
Quamvis & tutum & tuitam ſit utrique ſupinum,
A loquor adde loquutus, & a ſequor adde ſequutus,
Experior facit expertus, formare paciſcor
Gaudet pactus ſum, nanciſcor natus, apiſcor,
Quod vetus eſt verbum aptus ſum, unde adipiſcor a-
(deptus.)
Junge queror queſtus, proficiſcor junge profectus,
Expergiſcor ſum experrectus, & hæc quoque commi-
Niſcor commentus, naſcor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, atque orior quod Præteritum facit ortus.

Cap. 33.

De verbis quibusdam Anomalis.

P*ræteritum Activa & Paſſiva vocis habent hæc,*
Cœno cœnavi & cœnatus ſum tibi format,
Juro juravi & juratus, potogque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.

Verba Ano-
 mala ſunt
 1 Redun-
 dantia, Præ-
 teritum Acti-
 væ & Paſſivæ
 vocis habentia.

Sic

So also *careo*, to want, makes *carui* and *causus sum*,
prandeo, to dine, *prandi* and *pransus*; *pateo*, to lie open,
patui & *passus*; *placeo*, to please, *placui*, & *placitus sum*.
scio, to accustom, *suevi* and *suetus*; *veneo*, to be sold:
venivi and *venditus sum*; *nubo*, to be married to a
man, *nupsi* and *nupta sum*; *mereor*, to deserve, *merui*
and *meritus sum*: to these add, *libet*, it listeth, *libuit*
and *libitum est vel fuit*; *licet*, it is lawful, *licuit*, and *li-*
citum est vel fuit: *taedet*, it irketh, *taeduit*: and *per-*
tasum est vel fuit: *pudet*, it ashameth, *puduit*, and
puditum est vel fuit: and *piger*, it irketh, which makes
piguit and *pigitum est vel fuit*.

A Variant,
as Neuter-
passives,

and

Neuter-passives are thus formed: viz. like neu-
ters in the present tense, and Passives in the
preter tense: *Gandeo*, to rejoyce, *gavisus sum vel fui*:
fido, to trust, *fisus sum vel fui*: *andeo*, to be bold, *ausus*
sum vel fui: *fio*, to be made or done, *factus sum vel fui*:
soleo, to be wont, *solitus sum vel fui*, *maereo*, to be sad,
maestus sum vel fui. But *PHOCAS* taketh *maestus* for
a Noun Adjective.

Such as bor-
row their
Preterper-
fect tense.

Some verbs borrow their preterperfect tense from
another verb; as a verb Inceptive ending in *scio*,
standing for the primitive verb, will have the preter-
perfect tense of the primitive verb, thus; *tepesco*, to
begin to be warm, makes *tepui* of *tepeo*, to be warm,
fervesco, to begin to be hot, makes *ferui* of *ferveo*, to
be hot *cerno*, to see, will have *vidi* of *video*, to see, *qua-*
rio, to shake, *concussi* of *concutio*, to shake, *ferio*, to
smite, *perculsi* of *percutio* to smite, *meio*, to piss, will
have *minxi* of *mingo*, to piss, *sido*, to settle, *sedi* of *se-*
deo, to sit, *tollo*, to lift up, will have *sustuli*, of *suffero*
to bear, *sum*, I am, will have *fui*, of *fuo*, to be, *fero*, to
bear, *culi* of *tulo*, to bear, *fislo*, to make to stand, *feri*
of *sto*, to stand, *furo*, to be mad, *insanivi* of *insanio*, to
be mad.

Sic careo carui & cassus sum, prandeo prandi
 Et pransus, pareo parui & passus, placeoque
 Dat placui & placitus, suesco, suevi atque suetus.
 Venio pro vendor, venivi venditus & sum,
 Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum, mereor meritus sum
 Vel merui. Adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde
 Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit & dat
 Pertæsum; adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,
 Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.

Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format,
 Gaudeo gāvissus sum, fido fissus, & audeo
 Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum,
 Mereo sum mæstus; sed Phoca nomen habetur.

2 Variantia
 ut, I Neu-
 tro-passiva.

&

Quædam præteritum verba accipiunt aliunde,
 Inceptivum in sco, flans pro Primario, adoptat mutuania.

2 Præteritū
 mutuania.

Præteritum ejusdem verbi; vult ergo tepesco

A tepeo tepui, fervesco à serveo, servi,

A video cerno vult vidi, à concutio vult

Præteritum quatio concussi, à percutioque

Percussi ferio; à mingo vult meio minxi.

A sedeo fido vult sedi, à suffero tollo

Sustuli, & à fueo sum fui; à tulo vult fero tuli.

A sto sisto steti, tantum pro stare; furorūque

Infanivi à verbo ejusdem significari.

stt

So also *viscor*, to eat, will have its preterperfect tense from *pascor*, to be fed, *medeor*, to heal, from *medicor* to heal, *liquor*, to be melted, from *liquefio*, to be melted, *reminiscor*, to remember, from *recordor*, to call to mind

3 Defective
1 In the
Preter tense.

T Hese verbs want the preterperfect tense, *virgo*, to bend, or look towards, *ambigo*, to doubt, *gisco*, to grow, or encrease, *fatisco*, to chink, *polleo*, to be able, *video*, to shine: to these add *puerasco*, to begin to be a child: and passives whose actives want the Supines, as, *metuor*, to be feared, *timeor*, to be feared; and all Desideratives except *parturio*, to strive to bring forth, and *esurio*, to begin to be hungry, or to desire to eat (with a few others) which have the preterperfect tense.

2 In the Supine.

T Hese verbs seldome or never have the Supine: *lambo*, to lick, *mico*, to shine, *yudo*, to bray, *scabo* to claw, *parco*, to spare, *dispesco*, to dye from pasture, *posco*, to require, *disco*, to learn, *compesco*, to pasture together, *quiesco*, to nod, *dego*, to like, *ango*, to vex, *sugo*, to suck, *lingo*, to lick, *ningo*, to snow, *fatago* to be busy about a thing, *psallo*, to sing, *volo*, to will, *nolo*, to be unwilling, *malo*, to be more willing, *tremo* to tremble, *frideo*, to make a noise, *frido*, to make a noise, *flaveo*, to be yellow, *liveo*, to be black & black, *aveo*, to covet, *paveo*, to fear, *conniveo*, to wink, *ferveo*, to be hot. The Compounds of *nuo*, to nod, as, *renuo*, to refuse. The Compounds of *cado*, to fall, as, *incido*, to fall into: Except *occido*, to fall down, *occasum* and *recido* *reacasum*, to fall back: *respuo*, to refuse, *linquo*, to leave, *luo*, to be punish'd, *metuo*, to fear, *cluo*, to glister, *frigeo*, to be cold, *caluo*, to be bald, *sterto*, to snort, *timeo*, to fear, *luceo*, to shine, *arceo*, to dye as wax, whose compounds make *ercitum*: the compounds of *gruo*, to cry like a Crane, as *ingruo*, to invade.

And

Sic poscunt vescer, medeor, liquor, reminiscor :

Præteritum à pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.

P *Præteritum fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco, 2 Defectiva
1 Præterito,*

Polleo, nideo, ad hæc, Inceptiva, ut puerasco;

Et passiva, quibus caruere Activa supinis,

ut metuor, timeor. Meditativa omnia, præter

Parturio, esurio; quæ præteritum duo servant.

H *Ac raro, aut nunquã retinebunt verba Supinũ 2 Defectiva
Supinis,*

Lambo; mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperi;

Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,

Dego, angio, lugo, lingio, ningo, satagóque;

Pfallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido;

Flaveo, liveo, avert, paveo, conniveo, fervet;

A nuo compositum, ut renuo; à cado, ut incido; præter

Occido, quod facit occasum, recidóque recasum;

Respuo, linquo, luo, metuo, cluo, frigeo, calvo,

Et sterro, timeo, sic luceo, & arceo, cujus

composita ercitur habent, sic à gruo, ut ingruo natum.

L

E

And all Verbs Neuters of the second Conjugation that end in *ui*; except *oleo* to smell, *doleo* to grieve, *placeo* to please, *taceo* to hold ones peace, *pareo* to obey, *careo* to want, *noceo* to hurt, *pateo* to lye open, *lateo* to lye hid, *valeo* to be able, *caleo* to be warm, which will have the Supines.

Chap. 34. Of Verbs that want certain Moods and Tenses.

3 Incertain
Moods and
Tenses as,
Aio.

THese Verbs (more usually) are called Defectives which want certain Moods and Tenses, viz.

Indicative Mood } *Aio* I say, or quoth I, *Ais* thou
present tense } saidst, *Ait* he saith, or quoth
Imperfect. } *Aiebam* I did say, hath all persons in
both numbers.

Præterperfect. *Aissi* thou hast said.

Imperativus, *Ai* say thou.

Subjunct. } *Aias* thou mayst say, *Aiat* he may
present } say, plur. *Aiamus* we may say,
Aiant they may say.

Participium Presens, *Aiens* saying.

Ausim.

Subjunct. } *Ausim* I dare, *Ausis* thou darest, *Ausit*
present } he dare, plur. *Ausint* they dare.

Duim.

So also *Duim* I give, *Duis* thou givest, *Duit* he giveth, plur. *Duint* they give.

Salve.

For the Antients express the Subjunctive Mood in *im*, hence we read *creduim* for *credam*.

Indicat. Futur. *Salvebis* thou shalt greet, or bid
God speed.

Imperat. *Salve salveto* greet you well, plur. *Salvete salvetote* greet ye well.

Infinitive, *Salvere* to greet well.

Impe-

Et quæcunque in uiformantur neutra secunda;
 Exceptis, oleo, doleo, placeo, taceo que,
 Pareo, item & careo, noceo, pateo, lareo que,
 Et valeo, calco; gaudent hæc namque supino.

Chap. 34.

De Verbis quæ deficiunt certis Modis
 & Temporibus.

Verba (magis usitatè) Defectiva vocantur, quæ certis Modis & Temporibus deficiunt, viz. 3 Certis Modis & Temporibus, ut, Aio.

Indicativus { Aio, ais, ait. Plur. Aiunt.
 Præsens {

Imperfect. Aiebam, habet omnes personas utriusque numeri.

Perfect. Aissi.

Imperativus, Ai.

Subjunctivus { Aias, aiat. Plur. Aiamus, aiant.
 Præsens {

Participium præsens, Aiens.

Subjunctivus { Ausim, ausis, ausit. Plur. Ausint. Ausim.
 Præsens {

Sic Duim, duis, duit, Plur. Duint. Duim.

Veteres enim Subjunctiva per im efferebant; unde credaim pro credam legimus.

Indicat. Futur. Salvebis.

Salve.

Imperat. Salve, salveto. Plur. Salvete, salvetote.

Infinitivus, Salvete.

*Ave.*Imperative, *Ave, avert*, hail thou. Plur. *Aven*
avertote.Infinit. *Avere*, to bid one hail.*Cedo,*Imperat. *Cedo, reach me*. Plur. *Cedite*, antiently
Cette, reach ye.*Faxo,*Indic. & Subjunct. Futur. *Faxo vel Faxim* I will
bring to pass, *Faxis* thou wilt make, *Faxit* he will
make. Plur. *Faxint* they will make.*Forem.*Subjunct. *Forem* I should, or might be, *Fores*
thou shouldest, or might be, *Foret* he should, or
might be. Plur. *Forent* they might be.Infinit. Futur. *Fore* to be.*Quæso.*Indic. præsens, *Quæso* I pray, Plur. *Quæsumus*
we pray.*Infit.*Indic. præsens, *Infit* he saith, Plur. *Infiunt* they*Desit.*say. And *Desit* it is wanting, *Desiet* it will be
wanting, *Desiat* let it be wanting: as also *desiri*
to be wanting, *Conferi* to be done at once.*Conferi.**Inquam.*Indic. præsens, *Inquo vel inquam* I say, *Inquis*
thou saist, *Inquit* he saith. Plur. *Inquiunt* they say.Perfectum, *Inquisti* thou hast said, *Inquit* he hath
said. Plur. *Inquistis* ye have said.Futurum, *Inquies* thou shalt say, *Inquiet* he shall
say. Plur. *Inquietis* ye shall say, *Inquiet* they shall
say.Imperat. *Inque, Inquito* say thou. Plur. *Inquite* say
ye.Subjunct. præsens, *Inqui* it hee may say.Particip. præsens, *Inquiens* saying*Odi.**Coepi.**Mementi.*O *li* I hate, *coepi* I begin, *mementi* I remember,
have only those tenses, which are formed of the Pre-
ter tense, viz. those that end in *ram, rim, ssem, ro, and*
sse, save that *mementi* hath in the Imperative mood sin-
gular, *Memento* remember thou, *mementote* remem-
ber ye.*Dor,**Ior,*These simple Verbs : *For, dor, fer, der*, are not
found

Imperativus, *Ave, avelo.* Plur. *Aveite, aveitote.* *Ave.*

Infinitivus, *Avère.*

Imperativus, *Cedo.* Plur. *Cedite,* & apud Antiquos *Cedo.*
Cette.

Indicat. & Subjunct. Fut. *Faxi n* vel *faxo, faxis, Faxo.*
faxit. Plur. *Faxint.*

Subjunct. *Forem, foret.* Plur. *forent.* *Forem.*

Infinit. Futur. *Fore.*

Indicat. præsens, *Quæso.* Plur. *Quæsumus.* *Quæso.*

Indic. præsens, *Infit.* Plur. *Infiunt.* Et *Defit, defiet,* *Infit,*
defiat, ut item defieri & confieri. *Defit,*
Confieri.

Indic. præsens, *Inquo vel inquam, inquis, inquit.* *Inquam.*
Plur. *Inquiunt.*

Perfectum, *Inquisti, inquit.* Plur. *Inquistis.*

Futurum, *Inquies, inquiet.*

Imperat. *Inque, inquito.* Plur. *Inquite.*

Subjunct. præsens, *Inquiat.*

Participium, *Inquiens.*

Odi, cæpi, memini, habent ea solum tempora quæ à *Odi,*
præterito formantur; viz. in *ram, rim, ssem, ro, & sse* *Cæpi,*
definentia. Sed *memini* habet in imperativo singula- *Memini.*
ri, *memento.* Plur. *mementote.*

Dor, for, der, ser, simplicia, non reperiuntur in *Dor,*
prima *For,*

found in the first person singular of the Present tense, but (almost) in all the rest.

Dic, duc, fer, fac, are cut off by *Apocope*.

Sci

Sci of *scio* to know, is not in use, nor *solebo* of *soleo* to be wont, nor *suo* to be, an old verb.

Orior.

Orio overis to arise, hath *oriri* in the Infinitive Mood, and *mori* maketh *mori* and *moriri*.

Morior.

Volo.

Nolo.

Malo.

Fero.

Feror.

Edo.

Volo I will, *nolo* I will not, *malo* I had rather, *fero* I bear, *feror* I am born, and *edo* I eat, have commonly a Syncope in many tenses; as, *Volo, vis, vult, Vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult, Nolumus. Malo, mavis, mavult, Malumus. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, ferris, vel ferre, fertur. Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c.* of which *volo* and *malo* want the Imperative mood. *Nolo* makes the Imperative mood *noli nolito* do not thou. Plur. *Nolite nolitote* do not ye.

Es & quoo.

Es I go, and *queo* I am able, make their Preter-imperfect tense *ibam* and *quibam*, and their Future *ibo* and *quibo*; and their Gerunds *eundi, eundo, eundum, Queundi, queundo, quennum*.

Sum.

Sum with its Compounds wants the Gerunds, Supines, and Participles of the Present tense, save that *absens, praesens*, come of *absum, praesum*, for *futurus* is of *fui*, which was once the preter tense of the obsolete Verb *fuo*. *Possum* wants the Imperative Mood.

primâ personâ singulari præsentis, sed in cæteris (ferè) omnibus.

Dic,duc,fer,fac, per Apocopen concisæ sunt.

Sci à scio non reperitur, nec *solebo à soleo*, nec *fuo Sci*, antiquum.

Orior,oreris,&oriris, habet Infinitum *oriri*, sic & *Orior*.
morior,mori, & moriri. *Morior*.

Volo,nolo,malo,fero,feror,edo, Syncopen ferè ad- *Volo*.
miciunt in plerisque temporibus; ut, *Volo, vis, vult, Nolo*.
vultis. Nolo, non vis, non vult, nolumus. Malo, ma- Malo.
vi, mavult, malumus. Fero, fers, fert. Feror, feror, ero.
vel *ferre fertur. Edo,edis vel es, edit vel est, &c. ex Feror*.
quibus *volo & malo* carent Imperativo. *Nolo* facit Im-
perativum. *Noli, nolito. Plur. Nolite, nolitote. Edo*.

Eo & queo habent imperfectum *ibam & quibam*, *Eo & queo*.
& futurum *ibo & quibo*, & Gerundia, *eundi, eundo, eun-*
dum. Queundi, queundo, queundum.

Sum cum compositis carent Gerundiis, Supinis, & *Sum*.
Participio præsentis, nisi quod ab *absens, præsens, veni-*
unt absum, præsum; nam *futurus* est à *fui*, quod præ-
teritum olim obsoleti verbi *fuo*. *Possum* caret Impera-
tivo.

Cap. 35. Of the Forming of certain Verbs irregular.

Volo.

||

Indicativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Volo	I am	} willing
	2 Vis	thou art	
	3 Vult	he is	
	1 Volumus	we are	
	2 Vultis	ye are	
	3 Volunt	they are	

Imperfect. — Volebam, I was willing: &c. ut, Legebam.

Præterperfect. — Volui, I have been willing, &c. ut, Legi.

Plusquamperfect. — Volueram, I had been willing, &c. ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Volam, I shall be willing, &c. ut, Legam.

Imperativo caret, cujus loco utimur præfenti Potentialis, Velis, &c.

Potentialis.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Velim	I may	} be willing.
	2 Velis	thou mayst	
	3 Velit	he may	
	1 Velimus	we may	
	2 Velitis	ye may	
	3 Velint	they may	
Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Vellem	I might	} be willing
	2 Velles	thou mightst	
	3 Vellent	he might	
	1 Vellemus	we might	
	2 Velleis	ye might	
	3 Vellent	they might	

Præterperf. — Voleverim, I might have been willing, &c. ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Voluisssem, I might had been willing, &c. ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Voluero, I may be willing hereafter, &c. ut, Legero.

Infinitivs.

Præfens & Imperf. — Velle, To be willing.

Perfectum & Plusquam. — Voluisse, To have or had been willing.

Participium præfens — Volens, willing.

Nolo.

||

Indicativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolo	I am	} unwilling
	2 Non vis	thou art	
	3 Non vult	he is	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolumus	we are	} unwilling
	2 Non vultis	ye are	
	3 Nolunt	they are	

Imperfect — Nolebam, I was unwilling : &c. ut, *Legebam.*Præterperfect. — Noluisti, I have been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legisti.*Plusquamperfect. — Noluieram, I had been unwilling : &c. ut, *Legeram.*Futurum — Nolum, I shall be unwilling : &c. ut, *Legam.*

Imperativus.

Præf. { Noli	Be thou un-	{ Nolite	Be ye unwilling.
Sing. { Nolito	willing. }	{ Nolito	

Potentialis.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolim	I may	} be unwilling
	2 Nolis	thou mayst	
	3 Nolit	he may	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nolumus	we may	} be unwilling
	2 Nolit	ye may	
	3 Nolint	they may	

Præterperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Nollem	I might	} be unwilling
	2 Nolles	thou mightst	
	3 Nollet	he might	
Plur. I Sing.	1 Nollemus	we might	} be unwilling
	2 Nolletis	ye might	
	3 Nolent	they might	

Perfectum. — Noluierim, I might have been unwilling : ut, *Legerim.*Plusquamperf. — Noluisset, I might have been unwilling : ut, *Legisset.*Futurum. — Noluero, I may be unwilling hereafter : ut, *Legero.*

Infinitivus.

Præfens & Imperf. — Nolle, To be unwilling.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. — Noluisse, To have or had been unwilling.

Participium Præfens. — Nolens, unwilling.

Malo.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Malo</i>	I am	} more willing
	2 <i>Mavis</i>	thou art	
	3 <i>Mavult</i>	he is	
Plur.	1 <i>Malumus</i>	We are	} more willing
	2 <i>Mavultis</i>	ye are	
	3 <i>Malunt</i>	they are	

Imperfect — *Malebam*, I was more willing : ut, *Legebam*.Præterperfect. — *Malui*, I have been more willing : ut, *Legi*.Plusquamperfect. — *Malueram*, I had been more willing : ut, *Legeram*.Futurum — *Malam*, I shall be more willing : ut, *Legam*.Imperativo caret, cujus loco nimirum *Malu*, &c.

Potentialis.

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Malim</i>	I may	} be more willing.
	2 <i>Malis</i>	thou maist	
	3 <i>Malit</i>	he may	
Plur.	1 <i>Malimus</i>	We may	} be more willing.
	2 <i>Malitis</i>	ye may	
	3 <i>Malint</i>	they may	
Præterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 <i>Mallēm</i>	I might	} be more willing
	2 <i>Mallēs</i>	thou mightest	
	3 <i>Mallet</i>	he might	
Plur.	1 <i>Mallēmus</i>	We might	} be more willing
	2 <i>Mallētis</i>	ye might	
	3 <i>Mallent</i>	they might	

Perfectum. — *Maluerim*, I might have been more willing : ut, *Legerim*.Plusquamperf. — *Maluissē*, I might have had been more willing : ut, *Legissē*.Futurum. — *Maluero*, I may be more willing hereafter, ut, *Legero*.

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperf. — *Malle*, To be more willing.Perfectum & Plusquamperf. — *Maluisse*, To have or had been more willing
Sæpe leguntur, *Mavolo*, *Mavelam*, *Mavelim*, & *Mavellem*.

Fero.

Fero. || Indicativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	1 Fero	I bear
	2 Fers	thou bearest
	3 Fert	he beareth
	1 Ferimus	we } bear
	2 Fertis	ye }
	3 Ferunt	they }

Imperfectum — Ferebam, I did bear : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Tuli, I have born : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. — Tuleram, I had born : ut, Legetam.

Futurum — Feram, I will bear : ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Sing.	Fer, } Bear thou	Plur.	Feramur } Bear we
	Ferto }		Ferte } Bear ye
Præf.	Ferat } Let him bear		Fertote }
	Ferto }		Ferant } Let them bear
			Ferunto }

Potentialis.

Præfens — Feram, I may bear : ut, Legam.

Imperfectum — Ferrem, I might bear : ut, Legerem.

Perfectum — Tulerim, I might have born : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Tulissem, I might have born : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Tulero, I might bear hereafter : ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præfens & Imperf. — Ferre, To bear.

Perfectum & Plusquam. — Tulisse, To have or had born.

Futurum — Laturum esse — To bear hereafter.

Gerundia { Ferendi Of bearing.
 Ferendo In bearing.
 Ferendum To bear.

Supina { Latum To bear.

Latu To be born.

Parti- { Ferens Bearing.

cipia { Laturus About to bear.

Fero

Feror.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens Plur. I Sing.	1 Feror	I am born
	2 Ferris	thou art born
	Ferre	
	3 Fertur	he is born
	1 Ferimur	we
	2 Ferimini	ye
	3 Feruntur	they

Imperfectum--- Fererbar, I was born : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum Latius sum vel fui, I have been born : ut, Lectus sum vel fui.

Plusquamperf.--Latus eram vel fueram, I had been born : ut, Lectus eram vel fueram.

Futurum---Ferar, I shall be born : ut, Legar.

Imperativus.

Præsens	Sing.	Ferre,	} Be thou born	Plur.	Feramur	Be we born	
		Fertor.			Ferimini		
					Feriminor	Be ye born	
		Feratur	} be he born		Ferantur		
		Fertor			Feruntor.	Let them be born	

Potentialis.

Præsens---Ferax, I may be born : ut, Legax.

Imperfect.---Ferrer, I might be born : ut, Legerer.

Perfectum---Latus {sim} I might have been born : ut, Lectus {sim, vel fuerim,

Plusquamper- {Latus {essem} I might had been born : ut, Lectus {essem vel fuisset.

fectum {Latus {fuisset,

Futurum---Latus {ero} I may be born hereafter : ut, Lectus {ero, vel fuero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperfect.---Ferri, To be born.

Perf. & Plusq. Latum esse vel fuisse, To have or had been born.

Futurum--Latum ire, vel Ferendum esse, To be born hereafter.

1 aicipia {Latus Born
{Ferendus To be born.

Edo. || Indicativus.

Sing.	Edo	I eat	}	Edimus	we eat	}	
	Edus	thou eatest		Editis	ye eat		
	Es	he eateth		Plur.	Edunt		they eat
	Edit						
Præf.	Est						

Imperfectum — Edebam, I ate : ut, Legebam.

Perfectum — Edi, I have eaten : ut, Legi.

Plusquamperf. — Ederam, I had eaten : ut, Legeram.

Futurum — Edam, I will eat : ut, Legam.

Imperativus.

Præf. Sing.	Es	} Eat thou	} Plur.	Edamus	} Eat we	
	Esse			Editis		
	Est			Este		} Eat ye
	Edito			Eſto		
	dat			Editote		
	Esse	} Let him eat		Edant	} Eat they	
	Edito			Edunt		
				Edunt		

Potentialis.

Præfens — Edam, I may eat : ut, Legam.

Imperfect. — Ederem, I might eat : ut, Legerem,

Perfectum — Ederim, I might have eaten : ut, Legerim.

Plusquamperf. — Edissem, I might have eaten : ut, Legissem.

Futurum — Edero, I may eat hereafter : ut, Legero.

Infinitivus.

Præfens & Imperf. — Edere vel esse, To eat.

Perf. & Plusq. — Edisse, To have or had eaten.

Futur. — Edurum esse, To eat hereafter.

Gerundia — Edendi, Of eating.

Edendo, In eating.

Edendum, To eat.

Supina — Edsum, To eat.

Edisus, To be eaten.

Participia — Edens, Eating.

Edurus, About to eat.

Fio.

||

Indicativus.

Præsens — Fio, I am made : ut, Audio.

Imperfectum — Fiebam, I was made : ut, Audiebam.

Perfectum Factus sum, I have been made : ut, Lectus sum,

Plusquamperf. — Factus eram, I had been made : ut, Lectus eram,

Futurum — Fiam, I shall be made : ut, Audiam.

Imperativus.

Præsens Sing.	{	<i>Fi,</i>	{	Be thou made	{	Plur.	{	<i>Fiamus</i> ---	Be we made
		<i>Fito,</i>						<i>Fite,</i>	Be ye made
		<i>Fiat,</i>		Let him be made				<i>Fiant,</i>	Let them be made
		<i>Fito,</i>						<i>Fiunto,</i>	

Potentialis.

Præsens — Fiam, I may be made : ut, Audiam.

Imperfect. — Fierem, I might be made : ut, Audirem.

Perfectum — Factus sim, I might have been made : ut, Lectus fuero,

Plusquamperfectum — Factus essem, I might had been made : ut, Lectus fuisset,

Futurum — Factus ero, I may be made hereafter : ut, Lectus fuero.

Infinitivus.

Præsens, & Imperfect. — Fieri, To be made.

Perfectum & Plusquamperfect. — Factum esse, To have or had been made.

Futurum — Factum iri, To be made hereafter.

Participia — Factus, Made
Faciendum, To be made.

Eo. II

Indicativus.

Praesens Plur. I Sing.	1 Eo	I go	
	2 Is	thou goest	
	3 It	he goeth	
	1 Imus	we	} go
	2 Iritis	ye	
	3 Eunt	they	

Praeterimperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibam	I did	} go
	2 Ibas	thou didst	
	3 Ibat	he did	
	1 Ibamus	we did	}
	2 Ibatis	ye did	
	3 Ibant	they did	

Perfectum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ivi	I have	} gone
	2 Ivisi	thou hast	
	3 Ivit	he hath	
	1 Ivimus	we have	}
	2 Ivistis	ye have	
	3 {Iverunt Ivère	they have	

Plusquamperfect. Plur. I Sing.	1 Iveram	I had	} gone
	2 Iveras	thou hadst	
	3 Iverat	he had	
	1 Iveramus	we had	}
	2 Iveratis	ye had	
	3 Iverant	they had	

Futurum Plur. I Sing.	1 Ibo	I will	} go
	2 Ibis	thou wilt	
	3 Ibit	he will	
	1 Ibimus	we will	}
	2 Ibitis	ye will	
	3 Ibunt	they will	

Imperativus

Eo. ¶

Imperativus.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	{	I,	{	Go thou
		Ito,		{
		Eat,		
	{	Ito,	{	Let him go
		Eamus		{
		Ite,		
	{	Itoie,	{	Go we
		Eant,		{
		Eunto		
				Go ye
				Go they

Potentialis.

Præfens Plur. I Sing.	{	1 Eam	{	I may
		2 Eas		thou maist
		3 Eat		he may
	{	1 Eamus	{	} may go
		2 Eatia		
		3 Eant		

Imperfectum Plur. I Sing.	{	1 Irem	{	I might
		2 Ires		thou mightest
		3 Iret		he might
	{	1 Iremus	{	} go
		2 Iretis		
		3 Irent		

Perfectum Plur. I Sing.	{	1 Iverim	{	I might
		2 Iveris		thou mightest
		3 Iverit		he might
	{	1 Iverimus	{	} have gone
		2 Iveritis		
		3 Iverint		

Plusquamperf.

Es.

Plusquamperfect.	Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Ivissem	I might	} have had gone
		2 Ivisset	thou mightest	
		3 Ivisset	he might	
Plur.	1 Sing.	1 Ivissemus	We might	}
		2 Ivissetis	ye might	
		3 Ivissetent	they might	

Futurum	Plur. 1 Sing.	1 Iverem	I may	} go hereafter.
		2 Iveris	thou mayest	
		3 Iverit	he may	
Plur.	1 Sing.	1 Iverimus	We may	}
		2 Iveritis	ye may	
		3 Iverint	they may	

Infinitivus.

Præsens & Imperfect. } *ire* 3. } to go.

Perfectum & Plusquamperf. -Ivisse, } To have or had gone.

Futurum -Iverum esse } To go hereafter.

Gerundia } *Eundi* Of going
Eundo In going
Eundum To go

Supina } *Itum* } To go
Itu } To be gone

Participia } Gen. *Euntis* &c. Going.
Iturus About to go.

Ad hunc modum etiam variatur *Quo*, *Quo* impera. *Quo*.
 nro careat,

Chap. 36.

Of forming the Verb Sum.

The Verb *Sum* hath a manner of declining which belongs only to its self.

Verbum *Sum* peculiarem Conjugandi rationem sibi posulat.

Sum, es, sum, esse, futurus.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus.

The Indicative Mood | The Potential Mood.

Present tense
Plur. 1 Sing. *I Am, Possum I am*
2 *Es* thou art
3 *Est* he is
Plur. 1 *Sumus* we are
2 *Estis* ye are
3 *Sunt* they are

Sim, possim I may
Sis thou maist
Sit he may
Simus we may
Sitis ye may
Sint they may

Preterimperfect.
Plur. 1 Sing. *Eram, Poteram I was*
2 *Eras* thou wast
3 *Erat* he was
Plur. 1 *Eramus* we were
2 *Eratu* ye were
3 *Erant* they were

Essem, Possem I might
Esses thou mightest
Esset he might
Essemus we might
Essetu ye might
Essent they might

Preter tense
Plur. 1 Sing. *Fui, Potui I have*
2 *Fuisti* thou hast
3 *Fuit* he hath
Plur. 1 *Fuimus* we have
2 *Fuistis* ye have
3 *Fuerunt* they have
Fuere

Fuerim, Potuerim I might
Fueris thou mightest
Fuerit he might
Fuerimus we might
Fueritu ye might
Fuerint they might

Preter-

Preterplap. tense Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>Fueram, potueram</i>	I had	} been	}	<i>Fuisse, potuisse</i>	I might	} have had been
		<i>Fueras</i>	thou hadst			<i>Fuisses</i>	thou mightst	
		<i>Fuerat</i>	He had			<i>Fuisset</i>	He might	
	1	<i>Fueramus</i>	We had	}	}	<i>Fuissemus</i>	We might	}
		<i>Fueratis</i>	ye had			<i>Fuissetis</i>	ye might	
		<i>Fuerant</i>	they had			<i>Fuissent</i>	they might	
Future Plur. I Sing.	1	<i>Ero, Futuro</i>	I shall	} be	}	<i>Fuero, potuero</i>	I may	} be hereafter
		<i>Eris</i>	thou shalt			<i>Fueris</i>	thou shalt	
		<i>Erit</i>	he shall			<i>Fuerit</i>	he may	
	1	<i>Erimus</i>	We shall	}	}	<i>Fuerimus</i>	We may	}
		<i>Eritis</i>	ye shall			<i>Fueritis</i>	ye may	
		<i>Erunt</i>	they shall			<i>Fuerint</i>	they may	

The Imperative Mood || The Infinitive Mood.

Present tense. Plur. I Sing.	{	2 <i>Sis, es esto</i>	Be thou	{	Present and Imperfect.	{ <i>Esse</i> to be.	{	
		3 <i>Sit, esto</i>	be he					
		1 <i>Simini</i>	Be we		Perfect and Preterplu.	{ <i>Fuisse</i> to have <i>Esse</i> to have been		
		2 <i>Sitis, esto</i>	be ye					
		3 <i>Sint, sunt</i>	be they					
					Future {	{ <i>Futurum</i> to be here <i>esse</i> after.	}	

So likewise are its compounds declined. *Absum*, to be absent, *Desum*, to be wanting, *Prasum*, to be before, *Obsum*, to be against, but *Prosum*, to profit, takes *d* between two vowels, and *Possum*, to be able, (of *potis* able, and *sum* to be) before a vowel, and instead of *f* keeps *r*, but changeth it into *f* before *s*.

Sic variantur & ejus composita, *Absum*, *desum*, *prasum*, *obsum*, *prosum* recipit *d* inter duas vocales, & *Possum* (a *potis* & *sum*) ante vocalem & *prof* retinet *r*, mutat autem in *s* ante *f*.

Chap. 37.

Of Verbs Impersonals and Derivatives.

Impersonals be Declined throughout all Moods and Tenses in the voice of the third person singular in the third far only.

person only.

1 Of the Active voice, which end in *t*; as, *deceat* it becometh, *decebat*, *decevit*, *deceverat*, *decebit*. *Deceat*, *deceret*, *deceverit*, *decere*.

2 Of the Passive voice, which end in *tur*; as, *Studetur* it is studied, *studebatur*, *studium est* vel *fuit*, *studitum erat* vel *fuerat*, *studebitur*, *studeatur*, *studereitur*. *studium sit* vel *fuerit*, *studitum esset* vel *fuisset*, *studium erit* vel *fuerit*, *studeri*.

Impersonals want (for the most part) Gerunds,

Supines, and Participles.

And they be of the Active voice.

The Participles by which we express the Preter tense, are put Substantively in the Neuter gender.

Impersonals of the active voice are these eleven,

which (almost) alwayes remain Impersonals, viz. *Deceat* it becometh, *libet* it liketh, *licet* it is lawful, *liquet* it is clear (whose Preter tense is not extant) *Lubet* it liketh, *misereat* it pitieth, *oportet* it behoveth, *poenitet* it repenteth, *piget* it irketh, *pudet* it is ashamed, *et*, and *valet* it is able, which are also sometimes

found in the third person plural; as, *deceant*, *oporteat*, *pudent*.

To these are reckoned some personals (which are found absolutely in the third person without a nominative case, having an Infinitive mood presently after them) Such are:

in the first Conjugation, *delectat* it delighteth, *juvat* it helpeth, *prostat* it is better, *restat* it remaineth, *stat* it is resolved on, *constat* it is manifest, *vacat* I am at leisure.

Cap. 37.

De Impersonalibus & Derivativis.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes modos & tempora.

Impersonalia conjugantur in tertiâ singulari.

Sunt autem duplicia

- 1 Activæ vocis, quæ in *it* desinunt; ut, *decebat, decuit, decuerat, decebit, deceat, deceret, desuerit, decuisset, decuerit, dece-e.*
- 2 Passivæ vocis, quæ in *nt* desinunt; ut, *studetur, studebatur, studitum est vel fuit, studitum erat vel fuerat, studebitur, studeatur, studeretur, studitum sit vel fuerit, studitum esset vel fuisset, studitum erit vel fuerit, stude-i.*

Impersonalia Gerundiis, & Supinis, & Participiis plerumque carent.

Sunt autem
1 Activæ
2 Passivæ
vocis.

Participia, per quæ Præterita circumloquimur, Substantivè ponuntur in neutro genere.

Impersonalia Activæ vocis sunt hæc undecim, Conjugationis secundæ, quæ semper (ferè) manent impersonalia, viz. *Deset, libet, licet, liquet* (cujus non exstat præteritum) *lubet, miseret, oportet, pœnitet, piget, pudet, tædet*, quæ interdum etiam inveniuntur in tertiâ plurali, ut, *decent, oportent, pudent.*

His accensentur quædam Impersonalia (quæ absolute inveniuntur in tertiâ personâ absque nominativo, sequente mox Infinitivo) Cujusmodi sunt,

In prima Conjugatione, *delectat, juvat, præstat, restat, stat, constat, vacat.*

In the Second, *apparet*, it appeareth, *attinet*, it belongeth, *debet*, it ought, *patet*, it is evident, *placet*, it pleaseth, *solet*, it is wont.

In the Third, *Accidit*, it befalleth, *capit*, it beginneth, *conducit*, it belongeth to, *coatingit*, it hapneth, *desinit*, it ceaseth, *incipit*, it beginneth, *sufficit*, it sufficeth.

In the Fourth, *Convenit*, it agreeth, *evenit*, it falls out, *expedit*, it is expedient.

Among the irregular verbs, *est*, it is, *interest*, it concerneth, *prodest*, it doth profit, *potes*, it may, *fit*, it is done, *refert*, it concerneth.

Likewise verbs of an exempt power (i. e. that signifie an action not of any humane power) come near the nature of Impersonals; as, *Fulgurat*, it lightneth, *pluit*, it raineth, *lucescit*, it waxeth light.

Or
The Passive voice.

2 Impersonals of the Passive voice have no certain number, because they come of all verbs, actives, and some neuters; as, *Legitur*, it is read, *curritur*, it is run.

Lastly, no verb (almost) is so far a personal, as that it cannot take upon it the form of an Impersonal; and some Impersonals turn again sometimes into Personals.

A verb impersonal may indifferently be taken to be of any person in both numbers, viz by reason of an oblique case adjoynd; as, *me oportet*, I must, *te oportet*, thou must, *illium oportet*, he must. *Oportet nos*, we must, *oportet vos*, ye must, *oportet illos*, they must. *Statur à me*, I stand, *statur à te*, thou standest, *statur ab illo*, he standeth, *statur à nobis*, we stand, *statur à vobis*, ye stand, *statur ab illis*, they stand.

Verbs Derivatives are

Derivative Verbs are very often used for their Primitives; as, *Timeſco* for *timeo*, to fear, *hiſco* for *bio*, to gape.

1 Inchoatives.

There be five kinds of Derivative Verbs.

1 Inchoatives, or Augmentatives, which signifie begin-

In Secunda, *Apparet, attinet, debet, pater, placet, solet.*

In Tertia, *Accidit, capit, conducit, conringit, desinit, incipit, sufficit.*

In Quarta, *Convenit, evenit, expedit.*

Inter anomala, *est, interest, prodest, potest, fit, refert.*

Ad Impersonalium etiam naturam quodammodo accedunt verba exemptæ potestatis, viz. actionem significantia non humanæ potestatis, ut, *Fulgrat, pluit, lucescit, &c.*

2 Impersonalia Passivæ vocis certum numerum non habent, quia sunt ab omnibus verbis Activis, & quibusdam neutris, ut *Legitur, curritur.* Vel
2 Passivæ
vocis.

Denique nullum ferè verbum est tam personale, ut non idem impersonalis formam possit induere; atque nonnulla Impersonalia remigrant aliquando in Personalia.

Verbum Impersonale, pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, viz. ex vi adjuncti obliqui, ut,

Oportet	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} me \\ te \\ illum \end{array} \right.$	Oportet	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} nos \\ vos \\ illos \end{array} \right.$
Statur	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} à me \\ à te \\ ab illo \end{array} \right.$	Statur	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} à nobis \\ à vobis \\ ab illis. \end{array} \right.$

Derivativa sæpissime pro ipsis primitivis usurpantur, ut, *Timeſco* pro *timeo*, *hiſco* pro *bio*. Derivativa
ſunt,

Derivatorum quinque ſunt genera.

1 Inchoativa ſive Augmentativa, quæ inchoationem 1 Inchoativa.

- beginning or augmentation, and end in *sc*; as, *Lucesco* to begin to be light, *ardesco* to be hotter & hotter.
- 2 **Frequentatives**, which signifie a certain assiduity or endeavour; and end in *to*, *so*, *xo*, or *tor*; as, *Visito* to visit often, *viso* to go to see, *nexo* to type often, *sector* to endeavour to follow.
- 3 **Desideratives**, or *Meditatives*, which signifie a certain desire or strife, and end in *urio*; as, *Lecturio* to strive to read, *canaturio* to desire a supper.
- 4 **Diminutives**, which signifie the lessening of its Primitive, and end in *to* or *ss*; as, *Sorbillo* to sup often, *pitisso* to supple, or sup a little.
- 5 **Imitatives**, which signifie imitation, and end in *isso*, and in *or*; as, *Patriss* to resemble a father, *vulpinor* to play the fox.
- 6 **Apparatives**, which signifie a preparation to, and end in *co*; as, *Vullico* to pluck, *fadico*, to dig.
- 7 **Denominatives**, which come from Nouns, and have no proper appellation; as, *Lignor* to purvey wood, *russicor* to live in the Country.

Chap. 38. Of a Participle.

A Participle taketh part of a Noun and part of a Verb.



PARTICIPLE is a part of Speech derived of a Verb, which taketh part of a Noun as well as of a Verb; as, *Amans* loving.

There be four kinds of Participles.

1 Of the Present tense,

A Participle hath from a Noun, gender, case, and declension; from a Verb, tense and signification; from both these number and figure.

According to tense there be four kinds of Participles

1 A Participle of the present tense hath the signification of the present tense, and endeth in *ans*, *ens*, and *iens*; as, *Amans*, *docens*, *legens*, and *adiens*.

nem aut augmentationem significant, & in *seo* desinunt; ut, *Luceſco*, *ardeſco*.

2 *Frequentativa*, quæ assiduitatem quandam, vel 3 *Frequentativam* conatum significant, & in *to*, *ſo*, *xo*, aut *tor* desinunt; ut, *Viſito*, *viſo*, *nexo*, *ſector*.

3 *Deſiderativa* ſive *Meditativa*, quæ appetentiam 3 *Deſiderativam* quandam, aut ſtudium ſignificant, & desinunt in *urio*; ut, *Leſturio*, *cœnatio*.

4 *Diminutiva*, quæ diminutionem ſui Primitivi 4 *Diminutivam* ſignificant, & desinunt in *lo* vel *ſſo*; ut, *Sorbillo*, *piſſo*.

5 *Imitativa*, quæ imitationem ſignificant, & desinunt in *iſſo* & *or*; ut, *Patriſſo*, *vinipinor*.

6 Huc pertinent & *Apparativa*, quæ apparatus 6 *Apparativam* ſignificant, & in *co* desinunt; ut, *Vullico*, *ſodico*.

7 Item *Denominativa*, quæ à nominibus veniunt, 7 *Denominativam* & propriam appellationem non habent; ut, *lignor*, *nativa ruſſior*.

Cap. 38. De Participio.



PARTICIPIIUM eſt pars Orationis à Verbo derivata, tam à Nomine quam à Verbo partem capiens; ut, *Amans*. Participium partem capit à Nomine, & Verbo

Participium habet genera, casus, & declinationem à nomine; tempora & ſignificationem à Verbo; numerum & figuram ab utroque.

Secundùm tempus, ſpecies Participiorum ſunt quatuor.

1 *Participium Preſentis*, habet ſignificationem præſentis, & desinit in *as*, *ens*, & *iens*; ut, *Amans*, *docens*, *legens*, *audiens*.

Cæterum

Species participiorum ſunt quatuor
1 *Præſentis*.

But *iens* of *eo* is seldome read in the Nominative case, but *euntis*, &c. in the oblique cases. But its compounds have the Nominative case in *iens*, and the Genitive in *euntis*, except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*.

1 Of the
Preter tense

2 A Participle of the Preter tense signifieth the time past, and endeth in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, as, *Amatus*, *loved*, *visus*, *seen*, *nexus*, *knit*; and one in *uus*, as, *mortuus*, *Dead*.

3 Of the
Future in
rus.

3 A participle of the Future in *Rus* hath the signification of the Future tense of its Infinitive Mood Active; as, *Amaturus*, *about to love*, *Docturus*, *about to teach*.

4 Of the
Future in
dus.

4 A Participle of the Future in *Dus* hath the signification of the Future tense of the Infinitive Passive; as, *Amandus*, *to be loved hereafter*.

How Parti-
cles are
formed.

The Participle of the Present tense is formed of the Preter imperfect tense by changing the last syllable into *as*; as of *Amabam*, *amans*.

The Participle of the Preter tense is formed of the later Supine, by putting to *s3* as of *Amatu*, *amatus*.

The Participle of the Future in *rus*, is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to *rus*; as of *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

The Participle of the Future in *dus* is formed of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Present tense by changing *tis* into *dus*; as of *Amantis* *amandus*.

These participles are derived of their verbs, besides the common rule; *Pariturus*, *about to bring forth*, *nasciturus*, *to be born*, *soniturus*, *to sound*, *arguiturus*, *to reprove*, *moriturus*, *to dye*, *luciturus*, *that shall pay or suffer punishment*, *nosciturus*, *to know*, *osurus*, *to hate*, *futurus*, *to be*, *oriturus*, *to arise*.

These be like participles, but are derived of Nouns *Tunicatus*, *coated*, *togatus*, *gowned*, *personatus*, *personated*, *larvatus*, *masked*, &c.

From

Ceterum *iens* ab eo ratio legitur in Nominativo, sed *euntis*, &c. in obliquis. Composita vero Nominativum habent in *iens*, & Genitivum in *antis*, præter *Ambiens*, *Ambientis*.

2 Participium *Præteriti*, significat tempus præteritum, & desinit in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, ut, *Amatus*, *visus*, *actus*, & unicum in *uus*, ut, *mortuus*.

3 Participium *Futuri in Rus*, habet significationem Futuri in presentis Infinitivi sui Activi; ut, *Amaturus*, *docturus*.

4 Participium *Futuri in Dus*, significationem habet Infinitivi sui Passivi; ut, *Amandus*.

Participium Præsentis formatur ab imperfecto mutando ultimam syllabam in *ns*; ut, ab *Amabam*, *amans*. De modo Participia formandi.

Participium præteriti formatur à posteriori Supino addendo *s*; ut ab *Amatu*, *amatus*.

Participium Futuri in *rus* formatur à posteriori Supino, addendo *rus*; ut, ab *Amatu*, *amaturus*.

Participium Futuri in *Dus*, formatur à Genitivo participii præsentis mutando *tis* in *dus*; ut, ab *Aman-tis*, *amandus*.

Hæc participia præter Analogiam à verbis suis deducuntur; *Pariturus*, *nasciturus*, *soniturus*, *arguturus*, *moriturus*, *luiturus*, *nosciturus*, *ositurus*, *sciturus*, *otiturus*.

Tunicatus, *togatus*, *personatus*, *laryvatus*, &c. similia participiis sunt, à nominibus vero deducuntur.

Ab

And of what
Verbs they
come,

From Actives and Neuters, which have the Supines, come two Participles; one of the Present tense, and another of the Future in *rus*; as of *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*, of *Curo*, *currens*, *cursurus*.

But of some Neuters are found also Participles in *dus*; as, *Dubitandus* to be doubted, *vigilandus* to be watched, *carendus* to be wanted, *dolendus* to be grieved. And of those which make their Preterperfect tense in manner of Passives, is made also a Participle of the Preter tense; as, *gaudeo gavisus* glad, *iuro juratus* sworn; so likewise from Impersonals in *itur*; as of *Aratur*, *aratus* plowed.

Of Verbs Passives come two Participles, one of the Preter tense, the other of the Future in *dus*; as of *Amor* cometh *Amatus*, *amandus*.

Of Verbs Deponents come three Participles, viz. of the Present tense, of the Preter tense, and of the Future in *rus*; as of *Auxilio* to aid, cometh *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

To many also belongeth a Participle in *dus*, especially to such as govern an Accusative case, as of *Loquor* to speak, cometh *loquens*, *loquutus*, *loquutus loquendus*.

Of Verbs Commune come four Participles, as of *Largo* to bestow, or be bestowed, cometh *largiens*, *largitus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

There be no Participles extant from Verbs Impersonals, except *Poenitens* repenting, *decens* becoming, *libens* & *lubens* willing, *periturus*, *iratus*, *penitendus* to be repented, *pudens* shaming, *pudendus* to be ashamed, *iratus* to be irked.

Nouns Par-
ticiples.

Participles are turned into Nouns Participials.

1 When they govern another case than their Verb doth govern; as, *Amans pecunia* loving of money.

2 When they are compounded with words, which

Grammatica Latina

181

Ab Activis & Neutris quæ habent Supina, veniunt duo participia, unam Præsentis, alteram Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Amo*, *amans*, *amaturus*; à *Cirro*, *carrens*, *cursurus*. Et à quibus verbis derivantur.

A quibusdam vero neutris reperiuntur etiam participia in *us*; ut, *Dubitandus*, *vigilandus*, *cavendus*, *dolescendus*. Et ab iis, quæ præteritum faciunt more passivorum, formatur etiam participium præteriti; ut, *Gaudeo*, *gaussus*, *juro*, *juratus*: sic ab Imperfonalibus in *tur*; ut ab *Aratur*, *aratus*.

A Passivis veniunt duo participia Præteriti & Futuri in *us*; ut ab *Amor*, *amatus*, *amendus*.

A Deponentibus veniunt tria participia, Præsentis, Præteriti, & Futuri in *rus*; ut ab *Auxilior*, *auxilians*, *auxiliatus*, *auxiliaturus*.

Multis accidit etiam participium in *us*, præcipue Accusativum regentibus; ut à *Loquor*, *loquens*, *loquuturus*, *loquutus*, *loquendus*.

A Communibus veniunt quatuor participia; ut à *Largior*, *largiens*, *largiturus*, *largitus*, *largiendus*.

Ab Imperfonalibus nulla exstant participia præter *Pœnitens*, *decens*, *libens*, *libens*, *pertæsus*, *pœnitendus*, *pudens*, *pudendus*, *pigendus*.

Participia degenerant in nomina Participialia.

Nomina Participialia

1. Cum alium casum quam suum verbum regunt;

ut, *Amans pecunia*.

2. Cum componuntur cum dictionibus, cum quibus

their verbs will not be compounded withal; as, *Infans*; an infant, *Indotus*, unskilfull.

3 When they be compared; as, *Amans*, loving, *Amantior*, more loving, *Amantissimus*, very loving.

When they signifie no time; as, *Sapiens*, wise, *Sponsa*, a bride.

Participles of the present tense very often become Substantives, sometimes of the Masculine gender, as, *Oriens*, the East: sometimes of the Feminine; as *Consonans*, a Consonant: sometimes of the Neuter; as, *Accidens*, an accident: sometimes of the Common of three; as, *Appetens*, greedy of.

Participles
of the Pre-
sent tense
be declined
like *Felix*.
And of o-
ther tenses
like *Bonus*.

Participles of the present tense are declined with three Articles; as, *hic, hæc & hoc*, *Amans*, like *Felix*.

Participles of other tenses are declined with three terminations; as, *Amatus, ta, tum*; *Amaturus, ra, rum*; *Amandus, da, dum*, like *Bonus*.

Chap. 39.

Of an Adverb.

V.
An Adverb
explaineth
a Verb.

AN ADVERB is a part of Speech added to other words (but especially to the Verb) to declare and perfect their sense and signification.

The significations of Adverbs are many, whose variety must be gathered out of the Circumstances of the Verbs.

Accor-

bus ipsorum verba componi non possunt; ut, *Infans*, *indolens*.

3 Cum comparantur; ut, *Amans*, *amantior*, *amantissimus*.

4 Cum tempus non significant; ut, *Sapiens*, *sponsa*.

Participia præsentis temporis non raro fiunt Substantiva, modò masculini generis; ut, *Oriens*: modò fœminini; ut, *Consonans*: modò neutrius; ut, *Accidens*: modò communis; ut, *Appetens*.

Participia præsentis variantur tribus Articulis; ut, *hic huc*, & *hoc*, *amans*, sicut *Felix*.

Participia reliquorum temporum variantur tribus terminationibus; *Amatus*, *ta*, *tum*, *Amaturus*, *rum*; *Amandus*, *da*, *dum*, sicut *Bonus*.

Participia Præsentis variantur sicut *Felix*. Reliquorum verò temporum, sicut *Bonus*.

Cap. 39.

De Adverbio.

ADVERBIUM est pars Orationis adjecta aliis vocibus (sed præcipuè Verbis) ad sensum & significationem earum perficiendum & explanandum.

V. Adverbium explanat Verbum.

Significationes Adverbiorum sunt multæ, quarum varietas ex Verborum circumstantiis colligenda est.

Secundum

There be
33 kinds
of Adverbs

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

- In a place; as, *hic*, here, *illuc*, there.
- Place and signification } To a place; as, *huc*, hither, *illuc*, thither.
- } From a place; as, *hinc* hence, *illinc* thence.
- } By a place; as, *hac* this way, *illac* that way.
- Time; as, *nunc* now, *tunc* then, *hodie* to day, *usque* untill, or as far as, is both of time and place.
- Number, as, *Semel* once, *bis*, twice, *ter* thrice, *iterum* again.
- Order; as, *Inde* after that, *denique* lastly, *deumum* lastly.
- Asking; as, *cur*, why? *quare*, wherefore? *unde* whence?
- Callings; as, *hous*, ho, *o* bebo so ho.
- Affirming; as, *certe* truly, *ne* truly, *profecto* truly, *scilicet* yea.
- Denying; as, *non* not, *haud* not, *minime* no.
- Swearing; as, *Po* by Apollo, *adi* by Apollo's Temple, *Herole*, by Hercules.
- Exhorting; as, *age* go to soles, if you dare, *satis* if you will.
- Granting; as, *licet* it may be so, *esto* be it so, *sit sane* be it indeed so.
- Forbidding; as, *ne* not, *non* not.
- Flattering; as, *amabo* pretty.
- Wishing; as, *utinam* would to God, *si* if that.
- Gathering together; as, *simul* together, *una* in one, *pariter* alike.
- Partings; as, *seorsim* severally, *gregatim* by flocks, *bisariam* two ways.
- Choosing; as, *potius* rather, *imò* yea rather, *satis* better.
- Excluding; as, *Tantum* only, *modò* only, *solum* only.
- Including or denying only; as, *non modò* not only, *non solum* not only, *etiam* much less.

Diver.

Species Ad
verbiorum
sunt 33.

171

Loci { In Loco; ut, *Hic, illic,*
ad Locum; ut, *Huc, illuc,*
eaque { A Loco; ut, *Hinc, illinc.*
Per Locum; ut, *Hac, illac.*

Temporis; ut, *Nunc, tunc, hodie, usq;* Temporis
& Loci est.

Numeri; ut, *Semel, bis, ter, iterum.*

Ordinis; ut, *Indè, denique, demum.*
Interrogandi; ut *Cur ? quare ? unde ?*

Vocandi; ut, *Heus; eho.*
Affirmandi; ut, *Certè, na, profectò, scilicet.*

Negandi; ut, *Non, haud, minimè,*
Jurandi; ut, *Pol, adipol, hercle.*

Hortandi; ut, *Agè, sodes, sùltis,*

Concedendi; ut, *Licèt, esto, sit-sane.*

Prohibendi; ut, *Nè, non.*

Adulandi; ut, *Amabè.*

Optandi; ut, *utinam, o sù.*

Congregandi; ut, *Simul, undè, pariter.*

Segregandi; ut, *Seorsim, gregatim, bisariam.*

Eligendi; ut, *Potius, imò, satius.*

Excludendi; ut, *Tantum, modò, solùm.*

Includendi, sive negatæ solitudinis; ut, *Non mo-
dò, non solùm, nedum.*

N

Diver

Secundum eorum significationem quædam dicuntur Adverbis

According to their signification some are called Adverbs of

- Diversity, as, *Aliter*, otherwise, *secus* otherwise.
 Propinquity or nearness, as, *obulam* meeting,
presso at hand.
 Intending or Increasing; as, *Valde* very, *nimis*
 too much, *funditus* utterly, *omnino* altogether.
 Remitting or diminishing, as, *Vix* scarce, *agre*
 hardly, *paularim* by little and little, *pedeten-*
tim, foot by foot.
 Restraining, as, *Quatenus* as far as, *quoad* as
 much as concerneth, *in quantum* in as much as.
 Of a thing not finished, as, *Pene* almost, *forme*
 in a manner.
 Explaining, as, *Put a* suppose *utpote* as, *vimurum*
 to wit, *id est* that is, *videlicet* to wit, *quasi*
dicat as if one should say.
 Doubting, as, *For san* perhaps, *for sitan* perhaps
 so, *fortassis* if it be so.
 Chance, as, *Fortè* as it falls out, *fortuito* by
 chance, *fortè fortuna* by fortune.
 Shewing, as, *En to*, ecce behold, *sic thus*, *ita* so.
 Likeness, as, *Sic to*, *sicut* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as,
ita as.
 Quantity, as, *Parum* a little, *minimè* very little;
satis enough *abunde* in abundance.
 Quality, as, *Bene* well, *maie* ill, and such as end
 in e, and come of Adjectives of three termina-
 tions, as, *Docte* learnedly, *Pulcre*, bravely, al-
 so such as end in er, and come of Adjectives of
 three Articles; as, *graviter* heavily, *felicitè*
 happily.
 Comparing; as, *Tam* as well, *quam* as, *minus*
 less, *æque* as well as, *magis atq;* rather than.

Adverbs derived of Adjectives are compared like
 Adjectives, and differ only in termination, as, *Doctè*
 learnedly, *doctius* more learnedly, *doctissime* most
 learnedly, *fortiter* strongly, *fortius* more strongly,
fortissime most strongly. Like.

Diversitatis, ut, *Aliter, secus.*

Propinquitatis, ut, *Obuiam, praesens.*

Intendendi, ut, *Valde, nimis, funditus, omnino.*

Remittendi, ut, *Vix, egre, paulatim, pedesentim,*

Restringendi, ut, *Quatenus, quoad, in quantum.*

Rei non peractae, ut, *Penè, ferme.*

Explanandi, ut, *Putà, utpote, nimirum, i. e. (id est) viz. (videlicet) q. d. (quasi dicat.)*

Dubitandi, ut, *Forsan, forsitan, fortassis.*

Eventus, ut, *Fortè fortuito, forte fortuna.*

Demonstrandi, ut, *En, ecce, sic, ita,*

Similitudinis, ut, *Sic, sicut, seu, tanquam, velut.*

Quantitatis, ut, *Parum, minimè, satis, abunde,*

Qualitatis, ut *Bene, male, & quae in e definunt,*
ab Adjectivis trium terminationum: ut, *Dolè,*
pulcre : item in *er* ab Adjectivis trium Articulorum, ut, *Graviter, feliciter.*

Comparandi, ut, *Tam, quam, minus, aequè, magis atque.*

Adverbia ab Adjectiva derivata more Adjectivorum comparantur ; sed solâ terminatione differunt ;
ut, *dolè, doctius, doctissime, fortiter, fortius, fortissime.*

N

Simil

Likewise *Bene* well, *melius* better, *optime* very well: *Sape* often, *sapius* more often, *sapissime* very often: *Nupex* lately, *nuperrime* very lately, with many others.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender take upon them the nature of Adverbs, in imitation of the Greeks, as, *Recentus* for *recenter* newly, *Torvum* for *torve* frowningly

Chap. 40. Of a Conjunction.

VI.
A Conjunction conjoyneth words and sentences. Its kinds according to signification are 17.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of Speech which fitly joyneth words and sentences together.

Copulatives, which couple both the sense and the words; as, *Et* and, *que* and, *et* not.

Suspensives, which stay the speech, or make another thing to be expected; as, *Cum* both, *tum* both, *&* both, *vel* either, *ne* neither, being set together.

Disjunctives, which sever the sense and couple the words; as, *Aut* or, *sive* or, *vel* or.

Causals, which give the reason of the former sentence, as, *Nam* for, *enim* for, *quia* because.

Discretives, which make a difference; as, *Sed* but, *verò* but, *at* but.

Conditionals, which imply a condition, as, *Si* if, *sin* but if, *nisi* except, *dum* so that.

Exceprives, which except some thing, as, *Ni* unless, *nisi* except, *quin* but, *alioquin* otherwise.

Interrogatives, which ask a question, as, *Ne* whether? *an* whether? *utrum* whether?

Dubitives, which propound a doubt, as, *An* whether? *no*? *num* whether? *no*, *nunquid* what?

Rationals, or **Illatives**, which infer the conclusion.

According to their signification some be

Quoad potestatem five significationem, Conjunctionum alia sunt

Similiter & Bene, melius, optime: sepe, sapius, se-
pissime: nuper, nuperrime, cum paucis aliis.

Aliquando Neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Ad-
verbiorum, ad Græcorum imitationem; ut, Recens
pro recenter: Torvum pro torvè.

Cap. 4c. De Conjunctione.

CONJUNCTIO est pars Orationis, quæ vo-
ces & sententias aptè connectit.

VI.

Conjunctio
voces & sen-
tentias con-
jungit.
Species ejus
quoad signi-
ficationem
fuit 17

Quoad potestatem five significationem, Conjunctiones aliae sunt

Copulativæ, quæ & sensum & verba copulant,
ut, Et, que, nec.

Suspensivæ, quæ orationem suspendunt, five
aliud expectari faciunt; ut, Cum, cum, &, vel,
nec, geminatæ.

Disjunctivæ, quæ sensum disjungunt, verba ve-
rò copulant, ut, Aut, sive, vel.

Causales, quæ causam reddunt Superioris sen-
tentiae, ut, Nam, enim, quia.

Discretivæ, quæ discretionem faciunt, ut, Sed,
verò, at, atq.

Conditionales, quæ conditionem implicant, ut,
Si, sin, nisi, dum.

Exceptivæ, quæ aliquid excipiunt, ut, Ni, nisi,
quin, atioquin.

Interrogativæ, quæ interrogant, ut, Nè, an, u-
trum,

Dubitativæ, quæ dubitant, ut, An, num, nun-
quid.

Rationales, five Illativæ, quæ ex ratione pro-
posita

According to their signification some be

tion from the reason set down, as, *Ergo* therefore, *ideo* therefore, *itaque* therefore.

Continuatives, which continue the members of a speech in order, as, *deinde* after, *porro* furthermore, *proinde* thereupon, *insuper* moreover.

Concessives or Adversatives, which grant somewhat which the following sentence may oppose, as, *Et si* although, *quanquam* although, *licet* though, *tamen* although, *quamvis* although.

Redditives to the same, which being referred to their Concessives, make a sentence diverse from the former, as, *tamen* yet, *attamen* but yet, *verum* but, *veruntamen* yet notwithstanding.

Electives, which shew the former member of the sentence to be preferred, as, *Quam* as, *ac* as, *atque* as,

Diminutives, which lessen the sense, as, *solum* at least, *vel* even.

Expletives or Completives, which fill up a sentence for ornaments sake, as, *Quidem* indeed, *autem* and, *scilicet*, *scilicet*, *scilicet*, *enim vero* truly.

Conjunctions adverbial, or Adverbs conjunctive, which with a very little difference are discerned from Adverbs, as, *Quando* when, *ubi* seeing that, *proinde* therefore, *et* then.

According
to its Order
four.

According to their
Order some be

Prepositives, which are set in the beginning of sentences, as, *nam* for, *quare* wherefore, *atque*.

Subjunctives, or Postpositives, which have the second, third, or fourth place in a clause, as, *Quidem* indeed, *quoque* also, *vero* indeed, *enim* for.

Commons, which may indifferently be set before or after, as, *Ergo* therefore, *igitur* therefore, *itaque* therefore, *sed* but.

En.

Quoniam propositum five significatione Conjunctionum alia sunt.

Quoniam ordinem sunt.

posita conclusionem inferunt, ut, *Ergo, ideo, itaque,*

Continuativæ, quæ membra orationis ordine continuant, ut, *Deinde, porro, proinde, insuper*

Concessivæ, sive Adversativæ, quæ aliquid concedunt, cui posterior sententia adversetur, ut, *Esse, quanquam, licet, tamen, quamvis.*

Redditivæ earundem, quæ ad Concessivas relative diversam sententiam superiori reddunt, ut, *Tamen, at tamen, veruntamen.*

Electivæ, quæ ostendunt præcedens membrum sententiæ præteriri, ut, *Quam, ac, atque.*

Diminutivæ, quæ diminuunt sensum, ut, *Saltem, vel.*

Expletivæ, vel Completivæ, quæ ornatus gratiâ sententiam complent, ut, *Quidem, autem, scilicet, enim, vero.*

Conjunctiones adverbiales, vel adverbia conjunctiva, quæ tenui discrimine ab adverbis discernuntur, ut, *Quando, proinde.*

Præpositivæ, quæ in sententiarum exordio ponuntur, ut, *Nam, quare, at.*

Quoad Ordinem quatuor.

Subjunctivæ, sive postpositivæ, quæ secundum, tertium, vel quartum locum in clausula occupant, ut, *Quidem, quoque, verò, enim.*

Communes, quæ indifferenter & præponi & postponi possunt, ut, *Ergo, igitur, itaque, sed.*

Encliticals, or Inclinations, which are annexed to the former word, and incline or turn back their accent into the last syllable of it; as, *Que, nē, vō, dum, sis, nam.*

Chap. 41. Of a Preposition.

VII.

A Preposition is set before other words.

There be

34 Prepositions, some of which are
1 Separable.

A PREPOSITION is a part of Speech which is set before other words, either
1 Apposition; as *Ad scholam, to the School.*
in 2 Composition; as, *Advenia. to come to.*

Prepositions are either
1 Separable,
Or,
2 Inseparable.

Separable Prepositions are used both in and out of Composition; of whose regiment we shall treat

Lib 3. Chap. 8.

For thirty one of these govern an Accusative case,
viz.

Ad to
Apud at
Adversus } against
Adversum }
Ante before
Cis } on this
Citra } side
Circum } about
Circa }
Circiter }
Contra against.

Erga towards
Extra without
Infra below
Inter between
Intra within
Juxta by
Ob. for
Penes in the power
Per by
Ponè behind
Post after

Præter besides
prope nigh (of
Propter because
Secundum ac-
cording to
Secus by
Supra above
Trans beyond
Versus to-
wards
Ultra beyond

Which some have comprised in these four Verses.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, circa, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
ultra,

Enditice sive Inclinativæ, quæ affixæ præcedenti voci, accentum suum in ejus ultimam syllabam inclinant; ut, *Que, nē, ve, dum, sis, nam.*

Cap. 41. De Prepositione.

PRÆPOSITIO est pars Orationis quæ aliis vocibus præponitur, vel in
 { Appositiones; ut, *Ad Scholam.*
 { Compositiones; ut, *Advenio.*

Præpositiones sunt vel
 { 1 Separabiles,
 { Sive,
 { 2 Inseparabiles;

1 Separabiles sunt, quæ & in & extra Compositionem usurpantur; de quarum regimine dicemus, *Lib. 3. Cap. 8.*

Ex his enim Triginta una Accusativum regunt, viz.

<i>Ad</i>	<i>Erga</i>	<i>Præter</i>
<i>Apud</i>	<i>Extra</i>	<i>Prope</i>
{ <i>Adversus</i>	<i>Infra</i>	<i>Propter</i>
{ <i>Adversum</i>	<i>Inter</i>	<i>Secundum</i>
<i>Ante</i>	<i>Intra</i>	<i>Secus</i>
{ <i>Cis</i>	<i>Juxta</i>	<i>Supra</i>
{ <i>Citra</i>	<i>Ob</i>	<i>Trans</i>
{ <i>Circum</i>	<i>Penes</i>	<i>Versus</i>
{ <i>Circa</i>	<i>Per</i>	<i>Ultra</i>
{ <i>Circiter</i>	<i>Ponē</i>	
<i>Contra</i>	<i>Post</i>	

Quas aliqui quatuor versibus complectuntur.

*Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
 Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, ob, infra,
 ultra,*

VII,
 Præpositio
 aliis vocibus
 præponitur.
 Præpositio-
 nes sunt 34
 Quarum a-
 liæ sunt
 1 Separabi-
 les.

ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum

Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intra.

And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz. *A, ab, absque* without, *coram* before, *cum* with, *de, ex, of, pro* before, *pro* for, *sine* without.

Five govern both these cases; viz. *Clam* *prill*,
in in, sub & subter under, super above; only, *tenu*,
up to, Will have an Ablative case singular, and Geni-
tive plural.

2 Others
Inseparable.

Others *Inseparable* Prepositions are such as are never found without Composition, viz.

Ans

Đi

De

As



Co

22

Am 7 Ambio to go about.

Di *Diduco to bring unto sundry parts.*

Dis () *Distrabo* to Distract.

Re as, Recipio to receive

Sepono to let a tide.

Conspire to line together.

Vesicular outcrops:

The signification of Prepositions is not so much to be learned by rules, as by daily use of reading and writing.

Some Prepositions are wont to be set after their cases; viz. *Cum*, as, *quibuscum* with whom, *tenus*, as, *pube tenus* up to the pubty parts. *versus*, as, *Londonum versus* towards London; to which *usque* may be added, as *ad Orientem usque*, as far as the East.

Prepositions, when they be put without a case become Adverbs; as, *Coram* laudare, *clam* vituperare, to praise one in presence, and dispraise privately.

Some Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, according to their several significations, are judged sometimes Prepositions, sometimes Adverbs, and sometimes Conjunctions.

Some Prepositions do make Adjectives of the Comparative and Superlative degree, as in chap. 17. l. 3.

Chap.

*ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pòd, secundum,
Per, circum, circa, contra, iuxta, inter, & intra.*

Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum; *A, ab, abs, abs-
que, coram, cum, de, è, ex, præ, pro, sine.*

Quinque serviunt utrique casui, *Clam, in, sub, sub-
ter, super*: unicum tenus gaudet Ablativo singulari, &
Genitivo plurali.

2 *Inseparabiles* sunt, quæ nunquam extra compo-
sitionem inveniuntur.

3 *Aliæ Inse-
parabiles.*

<i>Am</i>	}	<i>ut,</i>	<i>Ambio</i>
<i>Di</i>			<i>Diduco</i>
<i>Dis</i>			<i>Distraho</i>
<i>Re</i>			<i>Recipio</i>
<i>Se</i>			<i>Sepano</i>
<i>Con</i>			<i>Convivo</i>
<i>Ve</i>	}		<i>Vesanus.</i>

Præpositionum significatio non tam regulis, quàm
assiduo legendi ac scribendi usu discenda est.

Quædam Præpositiones suis casibus postponi so-
lent; viz. *Cum*, ut *quibuscum*; *tenus*, ut, *pube tenus*;
versus, ut, *Londinum versus*: quibus addi potest *usque*;
ut, *ad Orientem usque*.

Præpositiones cum sine casu ponuntur sunt Ad-
verbia; ut, *Coram laudare*, & *clam vituperare*.

Quædam Adverbiorum, Conjunctionum, & Præ-
positionum, pro variâ eorum significatione, modò
Adverbia, modò Conjunctiones, modò Præpositio-
nes censi possunt.

Quædam Præpositiones procreant Adjectiva Com-
parativi & Superlativi gradus, ut videre est, *cap. 17.
Lib. 2.*

Cap.

Chap. 42.

Of an Interjection.

AN Interjection is a part of Speech interposed among other, which signifieth a passion of the mind suddenly breaking forth.

There be so many Interjections then, as there are motions of a troubled mind, viz. of

Rejoycing; as, *Evax hey bzabe, vah hote, is o tne.*

Sorrowing; as, *Heu alas, hei : hei welladay, o ob ah.*

Dreading; as, *Atat out alas.*

Marvelling; as, *Papa O strange.*

Disdaining; as, *Hem oh, vah away swith it.*

Shunning; as, *Apaga a bannt, apagite be gone.*

Calling; as, *Eho ho, ho, is to ho.*

Praising; as, *Euge well done, eja a ha.*

Scorning; as, *Hui swho.*

Exclaiming; as, *Proh o.*

Cursing; as, *Malum swith a mischiel, va malum, swo swith a mischiel.*

Disliking; as, *Phy out upon it.*

Threatning; as, *Ve swo.*

Laughing; as, *Ha, ha, he.*

Silence; as, *An'tt whoohst, pax peace.*

Sometimes Nouns, Verbs, and other words are put into a Speech in manner of Interjections; as, *infandum* not to be spoken, *Amabè* of all loves, or as thou lovest me, *Malum swith a mischiel*, *mirabile dictu* wonderful to be said, &c.

Cap. 43.

De Interjectione.

Interjectio est pars Orationis quæ subito prorum-
pentem animi affectum demonstrat.

Tot igitur sunt Interjectiones, quot sunt animi per-
turbati morus, viz.

Exultantis; ut, *Evax, vah, ia.*

Dolentis; ut, *Heu, hei, hei, oh.*

Timentis; ut, *Atat.*

Admirantis; ut, *Pape.*

Indignantis; ut, *hem, vah.*

Virantis; ut, *Apage, apagite.*

Vocantis; ut, *Ebo, ho, io.*

Laudantis; ut, *Euge, eja.*

Ridentis; ut, *Hui.*

Exclamantis; ut, *Oh, prob.*

Imprecantis; ut, *Malum, vae malum.*

Fastidientis; ut, *Phy.*

Minantis; ut, *Vae.*

Ridentis; ut, *Ha, ha, he.*

Silentium orationi injungentis; ut, *Anst, Pax.*

Aliquando Nomina, Verba, & aliae voces interji-
ciuntur, more Interjectionum; ut, *Infandum, amab-
malum, mirabile dictu, &c.*



LIB. III.

OF SYNTAX.

Syntax
teacheth the
due joyning
of words
By Rules.

SYNTAX, or Construction, is the third part of Grammar, which teacheth the due joyning of words together.

And that is the due joyning of words which the most approved among the antients have used both in writing and speaking.

There be two parts of Syntax,	{ Concordance, and Government,	Chap. I. Chap. I.
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	----------------------

Chap. I.

Of Concordance.

Of Con-
cordance.

Concordance is the construction of words according to their agreement in some of the things that belong unto them.

There be three Concords	{	The first between the Nominative case and the Verb. Sect. I.
		The second between the Substantive and the Adjective. Sect. II.
		The third between the Antecedent and the Relative. Sect. III.

To which may be added the rules	{	Of the case of the Relative. Sect. IV.
		Of the word that asketh, and the word that answereth to the question. Sect. V.

Sect.



LIB. III.

DE SYNTAXI.

SYNTAXIS, sive Constructio, est tertia pars Grammatices, quæ debitam partium Orationis inter se Compositionem docet.

Et vero est debita Compositio, quæ veterum praeclarissimis, tum in scribendo, tum in loquendo sunt Per Regulas.

Syntaxeos partes
duæ sunt

Concordantia.
&
Regimen

Cap. I.

Cap. II.

Cap. I.

De Concordantia.

Concordantia est dictionum constructio secundum earum in accidentibus quibusdam convenienciam.

Concordantia.

Sunt autem Concordantiae tres

Prima inter Nominativum & Verbum. Sect. I.
Secunda inter Substantivum & Adjectivum. Sect. II.
Tertia inter Antecedens & Relativum. Sect. III.

Quibus adungi possunt Regulae

De casu Relativi. Sect. IV.
De Interrogativo & Reddito. Sect. V.

S&A.

§. I. The Rule of the first Concord.

A Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative case in Number and Person : as,

The Master readeth, and ye neglect.

Whilest the Cat sleepest, the Mice dance.

1 Obs. The Nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom set down ; as,

Without God (we) can do nothing.

1 Exc. Unless it be for differencing sake, i. e. when we signifie several employments ; as,
thou playest, I ply my book.

2 Exc. Or for Emphasis sake, i. e. when we mean more than we speak expressly ; as,

Thou art our Parron, thou art our Father, if thou forsakest us ; we are undone.

2 Obs. The Verb Substantive is very often understood ; as, *There (is) no safety in War.*

Such a Master ; such a Man.

3 Obs. Oft times other Verbs (also) are understood ; as, (** To pick out*) *the Ravens eyes.*

The Sow († will return to the mire.)

§. II. The Rule of the second Concord.

THe Adjective agreeth with its Substantive in case, gender, and number ; as,

True faith is a rare bird in the earth, and very like to a black Swan.

An basty bitch bringeth forth blind whelps.

1 Obs. An Adjective put like a Substantive doth supply the place of a Substantive, as,

A learned poor man is better than an unlearned rich man.

All evil things are to be avoided.

A good man is a common good.

§. I. Regula prima Concordantiæ.

I.

Verbum Personale cœheret cum Nominativo
Numero & personâ; ut,
Præceptor legit, vos verò negligitis.
Dum felis dormit, saluant mures.

1. *Obs.* Nominativus primæ vel secundæ personæ rarissime exprimitur; ut,

Absque Deo nihil possumus.

1. *Exc.* Nisi causâ discretionis, viz. cum diversa studia significamus.

Tu ludis, ego studeo

1. *Exc.* Aut Emphasis gratiâ; viz. cum plus significamus, quàm expressâ dicimus; ut,

Tu es Patronus, tu Pater; si deseris tu, perimus.

1. *Obs.* Verbum Substantivum sæpissimè subauditur, ut, *Nulla salus bello.* (* est)

Qualis Dominus, talis Servus.

3. *Obs.* Sæpe reticentur & alia verba; ut,

Cor vicini oculum.

(* configere)

Sus ad lutum.

(† redibit)

§. II. Regula secundæ Concordantiæ.

II.

Adjectivum cum Substantivo, genere, numero
& casu consentit; ut,
Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.
Verâ fides.

Canis festinans cætos parit catulos.

1. *Obs.* Adjectivum Substantivè positum supplet locum Substantivi; ut,

Doctus pauper indocto divite præstantior est.

Omnia mala sunt fugienda.

Vir bonus est commune bonum.

O

§. III.

III.

§. III. The Rule of the third Concord.

3 The third.

THe Relative (*qui*) agreeth with its Antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,
The man is wise that speaketh few words.
The first hour that gave life, took from it.
The burden is made light, which is well born.

N. B. The Antecedent (most commonly) is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Nominative case, the Substantive, and the Antecedent be called *Suppositæ*, because in Concordance they be as it were put under the Verb, Adjective, and Relative (which also by some are called *Apposites*) and bear them up: hence

1 *Obs.* In speeches which belong only to men, the *Suppositæ* is often understood; as,

Thus (men) say commonly.

Good (boyes) learn diligently.

A good (woman) come of good parents.

(He) that maketh too much hast, dispatcheth too late.

(Things) which hurt us, teach us.

2 *Obs.* Sometimes a whole clause, a member of a sentence, a Verb of the Infinitive mood, an Adverb with a Genitive case, or a word put for it self, do supply the place of *Suppositæ*; as,

To have faithfully learned the Liberal Arts, doth qualifie mens manners.

To rise early is very wholesome.

Part of the Ensigns are burnt.

I came in season, which is the chiefest of all things.

Farewel being often said, I again spake many words.

3 *Obs.*

§. III. Regula tertiæ Concordantiæ.

Relativum (*qui*) cum Antecedente concordat III.
 genere, numero, & personâ; ut, 3 Tertiæ,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

Prima, quæ vitam dedit, hora carpsit.

Leve fit, quod bene fertur onus.

N. B. *Antecedens* (serè) est dictio quæ Relativum antecedit, & à Relativo refertur.

Nominativus, Substantivum, & Antecedens dicuntur *Supposita*, quia Verbo, Adjectivo & Relativo (quæ etiam à quibusdam *Apposita* vocantur) in Concordantia quasi supponuntur atque ea sustentant: hinc

1 *Obs.* In orationibus quæ ad homines tantum pertinent Suppositum sæpe subauditur; ut,

Sic vulgò dicunt.

Boni discunt seduli.

Bona bonis prognata.

Qui nimium properat, serius absolvit.

Quæ nocent, docent.

2 *Obs.* Aliquando oratio, membrum orationis, verbum Infiniti modi, Adverbium cum Genitivo, aut dictio pro se posita, suppleant locum Suppositorum; ut,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores.

Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est.

Partim signorum sunt combusta.

In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum.

Sæpe vale dicto, rursus sum multa loquutus.

3 *Ob.* The Verb, Adjective or Relative, sometimes agree with the Supposite in sense rather than words; as,

A company rush. Both are deluded, or mocked.

An armed Nation fight.

Where is that rogue that hath undone me?

I also am undone too, which is dearer to me.

4 *Obs.* A Verb, Adjective or Relative set between two suppositives of divers numbers or genders, may agree with either of them; as,

The falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

Poverty seemeth a great burden,

A living creature full of reason, whom we call a man,

A bird which is called a Sparrow.

The City Lutetia which we call Paris.

5 *Obs.* Many suppositives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Verb, Adjective, or a Relative plural, and these will agree with the more worthy Supposite; as,

I and thou, who ply our books diligently, are in safety.

Thou and he, who sit so negligent, take heed you be not whipt.

6 *Obs.* The Relative and the Antecedent agree also in case, if they be joyned to the same Verb; as,

What City I build, it is yours.

That what Comedies he made might please the people.

N.B. The worthinesse of a Supposite is considered according to its

}	1 Gender,
	or,
	2 Person.

1 The first Person is more worthy than the Second, or Third; and the Second more worthy than the third.

2 The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, or Neuter, and the Feminine is more worthy than the Neuter.

Except. But in things not apparent to have life, the Neuter Gender is more worthy; as,

The

3 Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum quandoque cum Supposito casu magis quam voce convenit; ut,

Turba ruunt. uterque deluduntur.

Gens armati pugnant.

Vbi illic scelus est qui me perdidit?

Ego etiam unâ peteo, quod mihi est carius.

4 Obs. Verbum, Adjectivum aut Relativum inter duo supposita diversorum numerorum, aut generum collocatum, cum alterutro convenire potest; ut,

Amantium iræ amoris, redintegratio est.

Paupertas visum est magnum onus.

Animal plenum rationis, quam vocamus hominem

Avis (qui vei) quæ passer appellatur.

Urbs Lutetia (quam vel quæ Parisos dicimus.

5 Obs. Plura Supposita singularia per Conjunctionem copulata sæpe Verbum, vei Adjectivum, vel Relativum plurale exigunt, atque hæc cum Supposito digniore quadrabunt; ut,

Ego & tu, qui studemus seduli sumus in turo.

Tu atque ille, qui sedetis tam supini, cavete ne vapuletis.

6 Obs. Relativum & antecedens etiam in casu conveniunt, si eidem verbo jugantur; ut,

Urbem, quam statuo, vestra est.

Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas.

N.B. Suppositi dignitas
 spectatur secundum
 1 Genus,
 aut,
 2 Personam.

1 Dignior enim est persona prima quam secunda, aut tertia, & dignior secunda quam tertia.

2 Dignius etiam est masculinum genus quam femininum, aut neutrum, & dignius femininum quam neutrum.

Exc. At in rebus inanimatis neutrum genus adhibetur tanquam dignius; ut,

The Bows and the Arrows are good,

Thy rod and thy staff (these) have comforted me,

6 *Obs.* When the Verb or Adjective answereth to many Suppositives, it agreeth expressly with that which is nearest to it, and with the rest by supplying it; as,
Thou lyeest where I (lye) thou suppest when we (sup.)
The Husband and the Wife is angry.

Exc. Yet when there is a comparison or likeness, the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Suppositive, which is further from it; as,

I write better than thou (wriest.)

Gods Love is sweet, as hony is (sweet.)

7 *Obs.* A Pronoun Primitive seems to be included or understood in a Possessive, and therefore the Relative or adjective do oft agree with such a primitive; as

It concerneth not me, who am the eldest.

Seeing no body readeth my writings, fearing to recite them publickly.

§. IV. Rule, Concerning the case of the Relative.

To which
add.

q. The case
of the Re-
lative.

WHEN there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative case to the Verb; as,

He that bewareth not afore, shall be sorry afterward. That which (is) rare, (is) dear.

He may easily find a stick, who desires to beat a dog.

But if there do come a Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be governed of the Verb, or of some other word in the same sentence; as,

Oft times thou maist conquer by patience, whom, thou canst not conquer by force.

If

Arcus & calami sunt bona.

Virga tua & baculus tuus (ipsa) me consolata sunt.

6 *Obs.* Cum Verbum vel Adjectivum pluribus Suppositis responder, cum viciniore convenit expresse, cum reliquis per supplementum; ut,

Cubas ubi ego, cœnas, quando nos.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

Exc. Attamen quando est comparatio vel similitudo, Verbum vel Adjectivum convenit cum remotiore Supposito; ut,

Ego melius, quam tu, scribo.

Divina lex, sicut mel, dulcis est.

7 *Obs.* Pronomen Primitivum includi vel subintelligi in Possessivo videtur, ideoque Relativum aut Adjectivum cum tali Primitivo sæpe concordant; ut,

Nil meâ refert, qui sum natu maximus.

Scripta cum mea nemo legat, vulgo recitare timetis.

§. IV. Regula, De casu Relativi.

Quoties nullus Nominativus interferitur inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus : ut, Quibus addas,

Qui antè non cavet, post dolebit.

Quod rarum charum,

Facile inveniat baculum qui cepit cedere canem.

4 De casu Relativi,

At si Nominativus Relativo & Verbo interponatur, Relativum regetur à Verbo, aut ab alia dictione in eadem oratione; ut,

Sæpe vincas patient, quem non vincas impetu.

O 4

Si

If (thou) canst not do *what* (thou) *wouldest*; will
that, *which* (thou) *mayest* do.

whose shadow I reverence.

Like to whom I have seen.

1 *Obs.* As the Relative may be the Nominative
case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive in an
Adjective; as,

He that rejoyleth at other mens evils is twice
wretched.

Happy is he, *whom* other mens harms make *wary.*

2 *Obs.* Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites do
follow the Rule of the Relative, which evermore go
before the Verb, like as the Relative doth; as,

What *an* *one* *was* he? He *is* *such* *an* *one* *as* I never
saw.

V.

§. V. The Rule of the Question and Answer.

5 Of the
Question
and Ans.

“ **W**hen a question is asked, the answer
“ must be made by the same case, and
“ *tenie*, that the question is asked by; as,
What *doye*? *We* *ply* our books.

Who *is* *rich*? He *that* *desireth* *nothing.* Who *is*
poor? The *covetous* *man.* What *is* *now* *a* *doing*
in *England*? They *consult* about *Religion.*

1 *Obs.* This rule faileth when the diverse nature of
words require diverse cases; *viz.*

1 When a question is made by *Cujus*, *ja*, *jum*; as,
Whose *cattle* *are* *these*? *Egon's.*

2 Or by a word that may govern diverse cases; as,
Is he *accused* *of* *theft*? or *of* *murder*? *Of* *both.*
What *cost* *it*? *A* *penny.*

3 When one may answer by a possessive; as,
Whose *book* *is* *this*? *Mine.*

Whose *house* *is* *this*? *My* *Fathers.*

Chap.

Si non potest *quod vis*, id velis *quod possis*.

Cujus umbram veneror.

Cui similem non vidi.

1 Obs. Sicuti Relativum Verbo Nominativus, ita Adjectivo Substantivum fieri potest; ut,

Qui malis gaudet alienis bis miser est.

Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cautum.

2 Obs. Nomina Interrogativa & Indefinita regulam Relativi sequuntur, quæ semper præcedunt verbum sicuti Relativum; ut,

Qualis erat? Talis erat qualem nunquam vidi.

§. V. Regula de Interrogativo, & ejus Redditivo.

Interrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus, & temporis erunt; i. e. quo casu vel tempore quæritur; in eodem respondebitur; ut,

§ De Interrogativo & Reddito.

Quid agitis? Studemus.

Quis dives? Qui nil cupiat. Quis pauper? Avarus.

Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia?

Consultitur de Religione.

1 Obs. Fallit hæc regula, quoties diversa vocum natura diversos casus exigit; viz.

1 Quoties Interrogatio fit per *Cujus, ja, jum*; ut,
Cujum pecus? Agonis.

2 Aut per dictionem variae Syntaxeos; ut,
Furtive accusatur an homicidii? Utrouque, vel de Quanti constitit? Denario. (utroque.)

3 Quoties per possessivum respondere licet, ut,
Cujus est hic codex? Meus

Cujus est hæc domus? Paterna.

Cap.

Chap. 2.

Of the Government of Nouns.

2 Of Construction.

Government is the Construction of words, according to which every foregoing word governeth a certain case, or mood, of the word which followeth it.

Government is }	Of Nouns	Substantives,	Chap. 2.
		Adjectives,	Chap. 3.
	Of Pronouns,		Chap. 4.
	Of Verbs,		Chap. 5.
	Of Participles,		Chap. 6.
	Of Adverbs,		Chap. 7.
	Of Conjunctions,		Chap. 8.
	Of Prepositions,		Chap. 9.
	Of Interjections,		Chap. 10.

For all parts of Speech govern cases except a Conjunction, which yet will have certain moods and tenses.

1 Of Nouns.	Nouns govern four cases:	A Genitive,	Sect. VII.
		A Dative,	Sect. VIII.
		An Accusative,	Sect. IX.
		An Ablative,	Sect. X.

VI.

§. VI. Rule, Of Nouns Substantives.

1 Substantives.

“Substantives govern a Genitive case,
 “For when two Substantives come together betokening diverse things, the latter of them shall be the Genitive case; as,

*The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.
 Gods Word remaineth for ever.*

1 Obs. But if two or more Substantives belong to one thing, they shall be put in the same case; as,

My

Cap. 2.
De Regimine Nominum.

Regimen est constructio dictionum, secundum ^{2 Regimi-} quam præcedens quæque dictio regit certum ^{nis.} casum, vel modum sequentis

Est autem Re- gimen	{	Nominum	{	Substantivorum, Cap. 2.
			{	Adjectivorum, Cap. 3.
		Pronominum,		Cap. 4.
		Verborum,		Cap. 5.
		Participiorum,		Cap. 6.
		Adverbiorum,		Cap. 7.
		Conjunctionum,		Cap. 8.
		Præpositionum,		Cap. 9.
		Interjectionum,		Cap. 10.

Omnes enim partes orationis regunt casus, excepta Conjunctione, quæ tamen certos modos & tempora postulat.

Nomina regunt qua- tuor casus: viz.	{	Genitivum,	Sect. VII.	I Nominum
		Dativum,	Sect. VIII.	
		Accusativum,	Sect. IX.	
		Ablativum,	Sect. X.	

§. VI. Regula, De Nominibus Substantivis.

VL

Substantiva Genitivum regunt.
Quum enim duo Substantiva diversæ signifi- ^{I Substanti-} cationis concurrant, posterius in Genitivo ponitur; ^{vorum.}
ut.

Timor Domini est initium sapientiæ.

Verbum Dei manet in æternum.

1 Obs. Si duo vel plura Substantiva sunt ejusdem rei, in eodem casu ponentur;

Pater

The Latine Grammar.

My Father being a man, loveth me a child.

Mark Tully Cicero the Prince of Orators.

2. *Obs.* The Genitive case of the owner is often changed into an Adjective Possessive; as,

My Fathers house.

My Masters Son.

3. *Obs.* The former Substantive is sometime understood by an *Ellipsis* or defect of a word; as,

To * *Sr. Marie's.*

* *Church,*

I saw this mans † *Byrrhia.*

† *Servant.*

The * third of the *Kalends,*

* *Daie.*

4. *Obs.* An Adjective of the Neuter gender, being put without a Substantive, will have a Genitive case; as,

As much money as any man keeps in his chest, so much credit he hath.

We do not see that (end) of the wallet which is on the back.

So also will others after the Greek fashion; as,

Black Wool will take no dye.

Sneaking dogs clap the tail under the belly,

5. *Obs.* Words importing any quality to the praise or dispraise of a thing, coming after a Noun or Verb Substantive, shall be put in the Ablative or Genitive case, as,

A child of an ingenious look, and an ingenious blush

Every basest fellow is of a most lavish tongue.

6. *Obs.* *Opus* and *usus* when they be Latine for need will have an Ablative case, as,

What need words?

He hath need of twenty pounds.

But *Opus* necessary, admits of diverse cases, as,

A guide is necessary for us.

Get such things as are necessary for you.

7. *Obs.* Substantives derived of Verbs, do sometimes govern the cases of their Verbs, as,

A man banished from his Country.

Pater meus vir amat me puerum.

Marcus Tullius Cicero Princeps Oratorum.

2 *Obs.* Genitivus possessoris sæpissimè in Adjectivum possessivum mutatur; ut,

Patris domus, vel Paterna domus.

Heri filius, vel herilis filius.

3 Prius Substantivum quandoque per *Ellipsin* subauditur; ut,

Ad * *Stræ. Mariæ.*

* *Templum.*

† *Hujus video Byrrhiam.*

† *Servum.*

Tertio * *Kalendarum.*

* *Die.*

4 Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo positum Genitivum postulat; ut,

Quantum quisque suâ nummorum servat in arcâ.

Tantum habet & fidei.

Non videmus id mantica quod in tergo est.

Sic & alia Græcorum imitatione; ut,

Nigralanarum nullum bibunt colorem.

Canum degeneres caudam sub alvum reflectunt.

5 *Obs.* Nomina qualitatem denotantia ad laudem vel vituperium rei efferebantur in Ablativo vel Genitivo post nomen vel Verbum Substantivum; ut,

Ingenui vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris.

Contemptissimus quisque solutissimâ est linguâ.

6 *Obs.* *Opus & usus* pro *necesse*, gaudent Ablativo; ut,

Quid verbis opus est?

usus est viginti minis.

Opus verò pro *necessarius* variè construitur; ut,

Dux nobis opus est.

Quæ tibi opus sunt para.

7 *Obs.* Substantiva verbalia verborum suorum casus interdum regunt.

Exul. à Patria.

Obtem-

Obedience to the Laws.

What have you to do to mind this matter ?

Chap. 3.

VII.

§ VII. Rule, Of Adjectives governing a Genitive case.

2 Adjectives
1 With a
Genitive
case.

Adjectives also govern a Genitive case, that signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, care, fear, or such like passions of the mind; as,

The nature of man is eager of news.

The mind is fore-sighted of that which is to come.

Live mindful of death. Fearful of a storm.

Ignorant of learning.

III. Adjectives derived of Verbs that end in *ax*; as, Virtue is an abandoner of Vices.

Time is a consumer of things.

IV. Nouns Partitives; as, Some of you.

Take whether of these thou wilt.

V. Nouns being put partitively, viz. having after them this english *of* or *among*, such as are,

1 Certain Interrogatives; as, Which of the brethren?

Is there any among men so miserable as I am?

2 Certain nouns of Number; viz. Cardinals and Ordinals; as, Four of the Judges.

It is not yet apparent who was the eighth of the wise men.

3. Nouns of the Comparative and Superlative degree; as,

Of the hands the right is the stronger.

The middle finger is the longest among the fingers.

1 Obs. Yet these in another sense will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,

The first from Hercules. The third from Aeneas.

2 And in another sense a Dative; as,

Second to none in godliness.

3 They

Obtemperatio legibus.

Quid tibi curatio est hanc rem?

Cap. 3.

§. VII. Regula, De Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus.

VII.

Genitivum etiam regunt Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, curam, timorem, aut ejusmodi animi affectionem significant; ut, Est natura hominum novitatis avida.

2 Adjectivorum, cum Genitivo.

Mens est præsaga futuri.

Vive memor mortis. Timidus procella.

Rudis literarum.

III. Verbalia in *ax*, ut,

Virtus est vitiorum fugax.

Tempus edax rerum.

IV. Partitiva; ut, *Aliquis vestrum*.*utrum horam* mavis accipe.

V. Partitivè posita; viz. quæ per *de*, *ex*, aut inter exponuntur, cujusmodi sunt,

1 Interrogativa quædam; ut, *Quis fratrum?*An *quisquam hominum* est æquè miser ut ego?

2 Certa Numeralia; viz. Cardinalia & Ordinalia; ut, *Quatuor judicum*.

Sapientum octavus quis fuerit nondum constat.

3 Comparativa & Superlativa; ut,

Manuum fortior est dextra.*Digitorum* medius est *longissimus*.

1 Obs. Hæc tamen in alio sensu Ablativum exigunt cum præpositione; ut,

Primus ab Hercule. Tertius ab Aneâ:

2 In alio verò sensu Dativum; ut,

*Nulli pietate secundus.*2 *usur*

3 They are used also with the Præpositions, by which their Genitive case is explained, as,
One of you is a god. One alone of a great many. The chief amongst all.

VI. Besides a great company of other Adjectives (*viz. Compos, reus, exfors, particeps*, and the like) which may better be learned by frequent reading, as,
That hath got his desire. Accused of th fr. Exempted from all fault. Partaking of his counsel.

Touching which see LINACER'S and DISPAUTER'S Grammars.

VIII.

§. VIII. Rule of Adjectives governing a Dative case.

2 A Dative.

THese govern a Dative case,
 " 1. Adjectives that betoken
 1 Profit or Disprofit, as,

O be good and favourable to thine own!

Fit for the Country, profitable for the field.

A rout grievous to the peace, and enemy to gentle rest.

„ 2 Likeness or Unlikeness, as,

A Poët is very near to an Orator. Equal to Hector.

Disagreeing to the truth.

„ 3 Pleasure, as, *Pleasant to all persons.*

„ 4 Submitting, as, *Beseeching his Father.*

„ 5 Belonging to any thing, as,

Idleness will be troublesome to thee.

There is no way unpassable for vertue.

6 Hitherto are refer'd nouns compounded with
Con, as, *Cognatus mihi*, akin to me.

1 Obs. Yet some of these which signifie Likeness may have a Genitive case; as,

Thou art like thy Master.

He was equal to this man, Partaker of his roguery.

2 Obs.

3 Usurpantur etiam cum Præpositionibus per quas Genitivus exponi solet; ut,

Est Deus è vobis alter. Solus de plurimis.

Primus inter omnes.

VI. Ingens præterea Adjectivorum turba (viz. *Compos, reus, exsors, particeps, &c.*) crebrâ lectione melius addiscenda; ut,

Compos voti. Reus furti. Omnis culpa exsors.

Illius consilii particeps.

De quibus videbis LINACRUM & DES-
PAUTERIUM.

§. VIII. Regula, De Adjectivis Dativum regentibus.

VIII.

Dativum regunt :

3 Dativo.

1. Adjectiva quibus significatur,

1 Commodum aut Incommodum; ut,

Sis bonus, & felixque tuis.

Patriæ idoneus, utilis agro.

Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti.

2 Similitudo aut Dissimilitudo; ut,

Est finitimus Oratori Poëta, Aqualis Hæctori.

Veritati dissensaneum.

3 Voluptas; ut, *Jucundus omnibus.*

4 Submissio; ut, *Parenti supplex.*

5 Relatio ad aliquid; ut,

Otium tibi molestum erit.

In via virtuti nulla est via.

6 Huc referuntur ex Con Præpositione composita; ut, *Mihi cognatus.*

1 Obs. Quædam tamen ex his quæ similitudinem significant, Genitivo gaudent; ut,

Domini similis es.

Par hujus erat. Affinis sceleris vel sceleris.

P

2 Obs.

2. *Obs.* *Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, conscius* and *superstes* will have diverse cases; as,
Common to all living creatures.

Death is common to all men,

This is common betwixt me and thee.

Unmeet for the purpose. Far from ambition.

Estranged from Scevola's studies.

Free from this evil. Free to all.

We are free from those evils.

It's proper to fools. Proper to me.

I am guilty to my self of no fault.

He was privy to the prank.

He out-lived his honour.

That surviveth all other things.

3. *Obs.* *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, aequalis*, will have sometimes an Accusative case with a Preposition; as,

Born to glory. Shoes fit for the feet.

A man good of no side.

Virtues are equal and even amongst themselves.

„ II. Nouns Adjectives derived of Verbs, and of
„ the passive signification in *bilis*; as,

He is dead, being to be lamented of all good men.

And more to be lamented by none than thee.

IX.

§. IX. Rule, Of Nouns that govern an Accusative case.

3 An Accusative.

„ A Djectives govern an Accusative, which signifie
„ the measure of length, breadth, or thickness of
„ any things; as, A foot high. An hand broad.

Three fingers thick, Seven foot long.

But they sometimes } A Genitive case, as, Borders
also govern } ten foot broad.

} An Ablative; as, A well
three foot wide.

Sect.

2 Obs. Communis, alienus, immunis, proprius, con-
scijs & superstes variis casibus serviunt; ut,

Commune animantium omnium.

Mors omnibus communis est.

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

Alienum consilii. Alienus ambitioni.

Alienus à Scevolæ studiis.

Immunis huius mali. Omnibus immunis.

Immunes ab illis malis sumus.

Proprium est stultorum. Mihi proprium.

Mibi nullius culpa conscius sum.

Is conscius ille facinori fuit.

Superstes dignitati suæ vixit.

Superstes omnium rerum.

3 Obs. Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inuti-
lus, vehemens, aptus, ineptus, par, æqualis, interdum
etiam Accusativo cum Præpositione junguntur; ut,

Natus ad gloriam. Calcei ad pedes apti.

Homo ad nullam partem utilis.

Virtutes ipsæ inter se æquales & pares.

Cic.

II. Verbalia in bilis accepta passivè; ut,

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit.

Nulli flebilior, quam tibi.

9. IX. Regula, De Nominibus Accu-
sativum regentibus.

IX,

„ **A** Djectiva regunt Accusativum significantem 3 A-
„ longitudinem, latitudinem, aut crassitiem; ut, ^{vna}
Altus pedem. Latus manum.

Crassus tres digitos, Septem pedes longus.

Sed interdum } Genitivum; ut, Arcæ latæ pedum
regunt } denum,
} Ablativum; ut, Fons latus pedibus
tribus.

X.

§. X. Rule, Of Nouns governing an Ablative case.

4 An Ablative.

I. **T**Hese govern an Ablative case
 I Nouns and Adverbs of the Comparative degree, having *than*, *by* or *in* after them; as,
Silver is baser than Gold, and Gold than Virtue,
No Theatre to truth is greater than Conscience.
Higher by a foot. To excel in strength.

Obs Tantū, quātid, multū, pau'ū, nimid, ed, quō, hūc, etate, natu, are joyned to both degrees of comparison; as,

He is far more skilful than the rest, but not much better.

By how much one is less learned, by so much he is more impudent. The greatest in age, i. e. The eldest. The least by birth, i. e. The youngest.

II. These Adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *præditur*, *captus*, *contentus*, *extor'is*, *fretus*; as,
Thou art worthy of haired.

unbefitting the gravity of a wise man.

Endued with every vertue. Deprived of eyes.

Get thee hence, content with thy condition.

Banish'd from his own house. Trusting to thy clemency

Obs But *dignus*, and *indignus* will have sometimes a Genitive case; as, *A warfare worth thy labour.*

Not unworthy of his great Ancestors.

III. Nouns of diversity will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *Another thing from this. Another man from him.*

And sometimes a Dative; as, *Different from this thing*

IV. Adjectives and Verbs that signify plenty or want, will have an Ablative, and sometimes a Genitive case; as, *Love is very full both of honey and gall.*

Love is a thing full of thought some fear.

Thou

§. X. Regula, De Nominibus Ablativum regentibus.

X.

Ablativum regunt,I Comparativa (Nomina, Verba, & Adverbia) quum exponuntur per *quàm*, aut post se habent nomen significans mensuram excessûs; ut,

4 Ablativo.

*Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.**Nulium Theatrum veritati conscientia majus est.**uno pede altior. Viribus præstare.*

I Obs. Tantò, quantò, multò, paulò, nimid, eò, quò, hòc, ætate, natu, utriq; gradui apponuntur.

*Longè cæteris peritior est, sed non multò melior.**Quò quis indoctior, eò impudentior.**Maximus ætate. Minimus natu.*II. *Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus*; ut,*Dignus es odio.**Indignum sapientis gravitate.**Omni virtute præditus. Captus oculis.**Sorte tuâ contentus abi.**Extorris suâ domo. Fretus tuâ clementiâ.*,, I Obs. *Dignus & indignus* interdum etiam Genitivum vendicant; ut *Militia operis digna tui.**Magnorum non indignus avorum.*,, III. *Nomina diversitatis*, Ablativû sibi cum Præpositione subjiciunt; ut, *Aliud ab hoc. Alter ab illo.**Et nonnunquam Dativum; ut, Huic diversum.*,, IV. *Adjectiva & verba quæ ad copiam egestatémue pertinent*, interdum Ablativo, interdum & genitivo gaudent; ut, *Amor & melle & felle est fecundissimus.**Res est solliciti plena timoris amor.*

Thou aboundest in love. Thou wantest virtue.

Rich in white cattle. Rich in grounds.

Void of guile. Blessed with grace.

Go on or increase in virtue, upright in life.

„ 1 *Obs.* Some of these will have also an Ablative case
„ with a Preposition; as, *Void of anger.*

„ V. Any Adjective or Verb will have an Ablative case,
1 Of the Instrument; as, *Stout at the Sword.*

*Better at Oars. Jesus vanquished the Devil, not
with weapons, but with death.*

2 Of the Cause; as, *Pale with anger.*
Worse for too much liberty.

3 Of the Circumstance, of the manner of doing, or
of the thing; as,

*An envious man groweth lean at the prosperity of a-
nother. By name a Grammarian, but indeed a Bar-
barian. A Trojan by birth, a Syrian by nation.*

Crooked old age will come by & by with a still pace.

1 *Obs.* But sometimes the Ablative case of the cause,
or manner of doing, will have a Preposition; as,
Unprovided of money.

He used the man with a great deal of courtesie.

„ VI. Adjectives and Verbs of buying and selling will
„ have an Ablative case of the price; as,

Cheap at twenty pounds. Dear at a farthing.

Not to be sold for pearls, or purple, or gold.

That victory cost much blood, and many wounds.

He taught for wages. Wheat is sold at a low rate.

To hire for a penny. To let for a shilling.

He lives at ten pounds rent.

1 *Obs.* Yet these words, when they are without
Substantives, are put after Verbs in the Genitive
case; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; as,

I sell not for more than others, but for less.

Things are so much worth, as they may be sold for.

„ VII. Adjectives, and Verbs Pessives and Neuters
„ that

Amore abundas. Cares virtute.

Dives niuei pecoris. Dives agris.

Expers fraudis. Gratiâ beatus.

Maeste sis virtute. Integer vita.

1 *Obs.* Ex his quædam junguntur Ablativo cum Præpositione; ut, *Vacuus iræ, irâ, ab irâ.*

V. *Quodvis Nomen aut Verbum* admittit Ablativû

1 *Instrumenti*; ut, *Ense validus. Melior remis.*

Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit Iesus.

2 *Causæ*; ut, *Pallidus irâ.*

Deteriores licentiâ.

Invidus alterius rebus macrescit opimis.

3 *Circumstantiæ modi actionis aut rei*; ut,

Nomine Grammaticus, re Barbarus.

Trojanus origine, Syrus natione.

Tam veniet tacito curva senecta pede :

1 *Obs.* Sed Ablativo causæ aut modi aliquando additur Præpositio; ut,

Imparatus à pecuniâ.

Cic.

Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem.

„VI. *Adjectiva & Verba mercandi* regunt Ablativum pretii; ut,

Vilis viginti minis. Asse carus.

Nec gemmis, nec purpurâ venate, nec auro.

Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit,

Mercede docuit. Vili venit triticum.

Addicere denariis. Locare solido.

Habitat decem minis.

1 *Obs.* Hæc tamen sine Substantivis posita, Verbis subjiciuntur in Genitivo; viz. *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,

Non Vendo pluris quàm alii, sed minoris.

Tanti valent res, quanti vendi possunt.

„VII. *Adjectiva, & Verba Passiva, Neutralia, sig-*

that signifie some property or passion, will have an Accusative case, or Ablative, signifying the part or place wherein the property or passion is; as,

He is diseased in his feet. He is sick in mind rather than in body.

He hath red hair. Red-haired.

1 *Obs.* But the part affected is sometimes put in the Genitive case; as, *O thou! that hast a happy wit. Thou troublest thy self in mind.*

2 *Obs.* These be Greek phrases:

Merry as concerning other things. Like in other things. Like him both in speech and colour.

XI.

§. XI. Rule, Of the Ablative case Absolute.

N.B. **A** Noun or Pronoun Substantive, joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, shall be put in the Ablative case Absolute; as,

The King coming, the enemies ran away, i. e. When the King comes. I being Captain.

And it may be resolved by *whilest, when, if, &c.*

Chap. 4.

Of the Government of Pronouns.

2 OF PRONOUNS.

THese Genitive cases of the Primitives *Mei, tui, sui, nostri* and *vestri*, be used when suffering or passion is signified; but *Meus, tuus, suus, noster* and *vester* be used when action or possession is signified; as,

Part of thee, Thy part. The image of us, Our image. The love of himself, His own love.

1 *Obs.* Possessives are sometimes put for Primitives; as, *He did it for my sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Nostri* and *vestri* be used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives; as,

Some

significantiā aliquam proprietatem vel passionem, possunt regere Accusativum, vel Ablativum, significantem partem in qua est proprietas aut passio; ut,

Ager pedes, vel pedibus. Aegrotat animo magis quam corpore.

Ruber Capillos. Ruber crine.

1 Obs. Sed pars affecta interdum in Genitivo ponitur; ut, *O te! felicem cerebri.*

Angis te animi.

2 Obs. Graecae phrasae sunt, *Cetera latus. Cetera similis.*

Huic vocemque coloremque similis est.

§. XI. Regula, De Allativo absolutè posito.

XI.

N.B. **A**blativus absolutè ponitur expresso Participio, vel subaudito; ut,

*Rege veniente hostes fugerunt,
Me duce.*

Et resolvitur per *Dum, cum, si, &c.*

Cap. 4.

De Regimine pronominum.

M*ei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* ponuntur cum passio; sed *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester,* cum actio vel possessio significatur, ut,

2 Pronominum.

Pars tui, pars tua. Imago nostri, Imago nostra.

Amor sui, Amor suus.

1 Obs. Possessiva verò interdum pro Primitivis usurpantur; ut, *Mea causa fecit, i. e. mei.*

2 Obs. *Nostrum & vestrum* sequuntur Distributiva, Partitiva, Comparativa & Superlativa, ut,

Aliquis

Some of you. The bigger of you. The eldest of you.
 3 *Obs.* *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, will have certain Genitive cases after them, viz. *Ippius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum*, and the Genitives of participles, which are referred to the Primitive, understood in the Possessive; as,

Thou mayest guess out of thine own mind.

Thou hast seen the eyes of me weeping.

II. *Ipse* and *idem* may be joyned to all persons.

I my self will see. Thou thy self go on to do it.

Plato himself said. He himself did it.

Idem governeth sometimes a Dative case; as,

He that saveth a man against his will, doth the same as he that kills him.

But more commonly an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *The same with it.*

III. *Ille* noteth the eminency or worth of a thing; and *Iste* the baseness or contempt of it; as,

That brave Alexander the great. That mean fellow.

Hic is for the most part referred to the later Antecedent, and the nearer to its self; *Ille* to the former, and the further from it; as,

The Husbandmans aim is contrary to the shepherds, he looks for profit from his land, and he from his stock of cattle.

Cap. 5.

Of the government of Verbs.

V	Erbs govern a	{	Nominative	{	Sect. XII.
			Genitive		Sect. XIII.
			Dative		Sect. XIV.
			Accusative		Sect. XV.
			Ablative		Sect. XVI.

Aliquis *vestrū*. Major *vestrū*. Maximus natus *no-*
strū.

3 *Obs.* *Mens*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*, quosdam Ge-
nitivos poſſe ſe recipiunt; *vir*, *ipſus*, *ſolius*, *unius*, *duo-*
rum, *trium*, *omnium*, *plurimum*, *paucorum*, & Genitivos
Participiorum qui referuntur ad Primitivum in Poſ-
ſeſſivo incluſum; ut,

Ex tui ipſius animo conjecturam feceris.

Noſtros vidisti ſentis oculos.

II. *Ipſe* & *idem* omnibus perſonis adungi poſſunt; ut,

Ego ipſe videbo. Idem perge facere.

Ipſe Plato dixit. Hic idem fecit.

Idem regit aliquando Dativum; ut,

Invitum qui ſervat, idem facit occidenti.

Sed frequentius Ablativum cum Præpoſitione; ut,

Idem cum illo.

III. *Ille* eminentiam rei denotat; *Iſte* verò con-
temptum; ut,

Alexander ille. Iſte homuncio.

Hic ad poſterius & propius ante-poſitum; *Ille* ad
prius & remotius uſitatiffimè refertur; ut,

Agricolæ contrarium eſt Paſtoris propoſitum;

ille fruſtum è terrâ ſperat; *hic* è pecore.

Cap. 5.

De Regimine Verborum.

V	Erba re- gunt	{	Nominativum	}	Calum,	{	Se&t. XII.
			Genitivum				Se&t. XIII.
			Dativum				Se&t. XIV.
			Accusativum				Se&t. XV.
			Ablativum				Se&t. XVI.
							Quibus

To which also belong the Rules	Of Verbs passives;	Sect. XVII.	
	Of such as have a diverse construction,	Sect. XVIII.	
	Of the Infinitive mood,	Sect. XIX.	
	Of the Gerunds, and Supines,	Sect. XX.	
	Of the Gerunds in	<i>Di,</i>	Sect. XXI.
		<i>Do,</i>	Sect. XXII.
		<i>Dum,</i>	Sect. XXIII.
	Of the first Supine,	Sect. XXIV.	
	Of the latter Supine,	Sect. XXV.	
	Of time,	Sect. XXVI.	
	Of Space,	Sect. XXVII.	
	Of Place,	Sect. XXVIII.	
	Of Impersonals,	Sect. XXIX.	

XII.

§. XII. Rule, Of Verbs governing a Nominative case.

I Of Verbs
with,
I A Nomi-
native.

» Verbs Substantives, certain Passives, & Verbs,
» of Gesture will have a Nominative case after
» them, as well as before them; as,

God is the chiefest good.

Faith is accounted the foundation of our Religion.

An evil shepherd sleepeth void of care.

He will become a learned man.

I Obs. All manner of Verbs (almost) will have after them a Nominative case of the Noun Adjective that agreeth with the Nominative case of the Verb, in Case, Gender, and Number; as,
The earth remaineth unmoveable. I write very seldom.
Good boyes learn diligently. I speak often.

XIII.

§. XIII. The Rule of Verbs governing a Genitive Case.

3 A Genitive

T Hese Verbs govern a Genitive case :
1. Sum, when it betokeneth possession, or otherwise

Quibus accidunt Regulae	De Verbis Passivis,	Seçt. XVII.	
	De variâ constructionem } habentibus,	Seçt. XVIII.	
	De modo Infinitivo,	Seçt. XIX.	
	De Gerundiis & Supinis,	Seçt. XX.	
	De Gerundiis in {	Di,	Seçt. XXI.
		Do,	Seçt. XXII.
		Dum,	Seçt. XXIII.
	De priore Supino,	Seçt. XXIV.	
	De posteriore Supino,	Seçt. XXV.	
	De Tempore,	Seçt. XXVI.	
	De Spatio,	Seçt. XXVII.	
	De Loco,	Seçt. XXVIII.	
	De Impersonalibus.	Seçt. XXIX.	

§. XII. Regula, De Verbis Nominativum regentibus.

XII.

Verba Substantiva, passiva quædam, & Verba gestûs, utrinque Nominativum experunt; ut, Deus est *summum bonum*. Fides Religionis nostræ *fundamentum habetur*. Malus pastor *dormit supinus*. Hic *evadet vir doctus*.

1 Verborum cum,
1 Nominativo.

Obs. Omnia scilicet Verba post se Nominativum habebunt Adjectivi nominis, quod cum Supposito Verbi, casu, genere, & numero concordat; ut, Terra *manet immobilis*. Scribo *rarissimus*. Boni *discunt seduli*. Loquor *frequens*.

§. XIII. Regula, De Verbis Genitivum regentibus.

XIII.

Genitivum regunt:

2 Genitivo;

1. *Sum*, quoties significat possessionem aut ad aliquid

otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a property or duty; as, *This house is my Fathers house.*

It is (the duty) of a young man to reverence his elders.

It is (the property) of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to pill them.

1 *Obs.* But some Adjectives, as *meum, tuum, humanum*, &c. are put in the Nominative case, where *officium* or *munus* (a duty) seems to be understood by an Ellipsis; as,

It is not my duty to speak against the Authority of the Senate.

It is incident to a man to be angry, but a beastly part to rage.

It is a Kingly part to do well.

„II. Verbs that heroken to esteem or regard; as, *Honesty is reckoned little worth.*

Money is every where much regarded.

I care not this for thee, who valuest mee but an hair.

I take it in good part.

1 *Obs.* But *estimo* will have an Ablative case; as, *Virtue is much to be esteemed.*

He valued it at three-pence.

2 *Obs.* *Valo* will have a Genitive, an Accusative, or an Ablative case; as, *It is so much worth.*

It is worth two farthings.

3 *Obs.* We say also, *I account, or esteem it as nothing.*

„III. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, or acquitting, will have a Genitive case of the crime or punishment; as, *It behooveth him to look to himself, that accuseth another of dishonesty.*

They condemned most innocent Socrates to lose his life.

He admonished me of a mistake.

He is acquitted of theft.

1 *Obs.* And this Genitive case is turned sometimes into

aliquid pertinere; ut,

Hæc domus est patris.

Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.

Boni Pastoris est rondere pecus, non deglubere.

1 *Obs.* At hi Nominativi *meum, tuum, humanum,*
&c. usurpantur ubi officium aut munus subintelligi vi-
detur per Ellipsin; ut,

Non est *meum* contra Authoritatem Senatûs dicere.

Humanum est irasci; *Belluinum* verò sævire.

Regium est benefacere.

II. Verba æstimandi; ut,

Parvi penditur probitas.

Plurimi passim fit pecunia.

Non *hujus* te facio, qui me *pili æstimas.*

Æqui, boni consulo vel facio.

1 *Obs.* *Æstimo* Ablativum etiam adsciscit; ut,

Magno virtus æstimanda est.

Tribus denariis æstimavit.

2 *Obs.* *Valco* cum Genitivo, frequentius autem cum
recusativo, & Ablativo junctum reperitur; ut,

Tanti valet. *Valet duos asses,* vel *duobus assibus.*

3 *Obs.* Dicimus etiam, *Pro nihilo puto, habeo, duco,* &c.

„ III. Verba accusandi, dampnandi, monendi, &
absolvendi, Genitivum criminis, vel pœnæ postu-
lant; ut, *Qui alterum incusat probri,* cum ipsum
se intueri oportet.

Socratem innocentissimum capitis condemnabant,

Admonuit me errati.

Furti absolutus est.

1 *Obs.* Vertitur hic Genitivus aliquando in Ablati-
vum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione;
ut,

into an Ablative either with, or without a Preposition; as, *I will condemn thee of the same fault.*

Is he accused of theft, or dishonesty? Of both.

I thought that thou wert to be admonished of that matter.

„ IV. *Satage, misereor and miseresco,*
He is busie about his own matters. Pity the pains.
Pity thine own stock.

I Obs. But *misereor* and *miseresco*, are sometimes read with a Dative case; as,

Pity this man. Have compassion on the bad.

„ V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor and memini;* as,
He remembreth his promise. It is the property of
fools to see other mens faults and forget their own.
I will make thee to remember me alwayes.

I. Obs. And these will have also an Accusative case;
 as, *I remember my lesson. I forget the song.*

„ VI. Some also after the manner of the Greeks
 will have a Genitive case; as,

Cease thy womanish complaints.

It is time to give over the fight.

He is worthy of all mischief, that blasphemeth at his fortune.

XIV.

§. XIV. Rule, Of Verbs governing
a Dative case.

3 Dative.

„ ALL manner of Verbs put acquisitively (i. e.
 „ which are known commonly by these tokens
 „ to or for after them) will have a Dative case; as,
I have it for this man, and not for thee.

I sleep not to all men. Neither is there sowing nor mowing for me there.

And to this rule do also belong Verbs that becomen,

„ I To

civum vel cum Præpositione, vel sine Præpositione;

ut *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.*

Accusatur furti, an stupri? Utroque, vel de utroque.

Puravi eâ de re admonendum esse te.

IV. *Satago, misereor miseresco; ut,*

It rerum suarum satagit, Miserere laborum.

Generis miseresce tui.

I Obs. At *misereor* & *miseresco* rarius cum Dativo leguntur; ut,

Huic misereor. Miseresce malis.

V. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, & memini; ut,*

Data fidei reminiscitur. Proprium est stultorum, aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum.

Faciam ut me semper memineris.

I Obs. Et hæc Accusativum etiam desiderant; ut, *Reminiscor lectionem. Obliviscor carmen.*

VI. Quædam etiam, more Græcorum, Genitivum admittunt; ut,

Desine molium querelarum.

Hor.

Tempus desistere pugne.

Virg.

Dignus est omni malo, qui erubescit fortune. Curt.

§. XIV. Regula, De Verbis Dativum regentibus.

XIV.

Dativum regunt,

Omnia Verba acquisitive posita; ut,

3 Dativo,

Huic habeo, non tibi.

Non Omnibus dormio.

Mibi istic nec servitur, nec meretur.

Atque huic regulæ appendent Verba.

Q

1 Sig-

- „ 1 To profit or disprofit; as,
It cannot profit or disprofit me.
He hurteth the good, who spareth the bad.
- „ 2 To compare; as,
To compare great things with small.
He made himself equal to his brother.
 1 Obs. But these will have sometimes an Accusative or an Ablative case with a Preposition; as,
If he be compared to him, he is nothing.
I compare Virgil with Homer,
- „ 3 To give or to restore; as, *Fortune hath given too much to many, enough to none.*
He is ungrateful that requites not a favour to him that deserveth it.
- „ 3 To promise or pay; as,
I promise thee these things.
He hath payed the debt unto me.
- „ 5 To command or to shew; as,
Money hoarded up, commandeth or serveth every body.
Take heed oft-times what thou sayest of any body, and to whom.
- „ 6 To trust; as, *Believe not a woman, no though she seem dead. I commit this to thy trust.*
- „ 7 To obey, or to be against; as,
A dutiful Son alwayes obeyeth his Father.
Fortune resisteth fluggish prayers.
- „ 8 To threaten or to be angry with; as,
He threatned death to them both.
I am angry with thee.
- „ 9 Sum with its Compounds, except *possum*; as,
He is a father to the City, and a husband to the City.
Many things are wanting to them that desire many things.
 1 Obs. Likewise *Sum* and *Suppetit* signifying to have; as, *Every man hath his own liking.*
We have mellow-apples.

- „ 1 Significantia Commodum aut Incommodum;
ut,

Non potest mihi commodare nec incommodare.

Bonis nocet, qui malis parçit.

- „ 2 Comparandi; ut,

Parvis componere magna.

Fratri se adæquavit.

- 1 Obs. His autem interdum additur Accusativus
aut Ablativus cum Præpositione; ut,

Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.

Comparo Virgilium cum Homero.

- „ 3 Dandi & reddendi; ut, Fortuna multis nimium
dedit, nulli satis.

Ingratus est qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit.

- „ 4 Promittendi ac solvendi; ut, Hæc tibi promitto.

- „ 5 Imperandi aut nuntiandi; ut,

Imperat, aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.

Quid de quoquo viro, aut cui dicas, sæpe cayero.

- „ 6 Fidendi; ut, Mulieri nè credas, nè mortue qui-
dem. Hoc tuæ mando fidei.

- „ 7 Obsequendi & repugnandi; ut,

Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.

Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat.

- „ 8 Minandi & Irascendi; ut,

utrique mortem minatus est.

Irascor tibi.

- „ 9 Sum cum compositis, præter possum; ut,

Urbi pater est, urbique maritus.

Multa petentibus desunt multa.

- 1 Obs. Item Sum, & suppetit, pro habeo; ut,

Velle suum cuique est.

Sunt nobis mitia poma.

Q 2

Pauper

He is not poor, *who hath the use of things.*

2 *Obs.* Sum, with many others will have a double Dative case; as,

The Sea is a destruction to greedy seamen.

A good King is an ornament to the Common-wealth.

Thou hopest it will be a praise to thee, which thou imputeest as a fault to me.

3, 13 Verbs compounded with the Adverbs, *Satis, bene, male,* and the Prepositions, *Pro, ad, contra, sub, ante, post, ob, in, and inter;* as,

He hath done good to many, he hath done ill to none.

I prefer no man before thee.

A new relator addeth something to things he hath heard.

1 *Obs.* A few of these sometimes change their Dative case into another case; as,

One man excels another in wit.

I forbid thee fire and water.

2 *Obs.* But *Præco, præcedo, præcurro,* with some other Compounds of *præ,* will have rather an Accusative case; as, *Thou shalt go before me.*

3 *Obs.* There is oft-times a Pleonasm or redundancy of the Dative cases, *Mihi, tibi, sibi;* as,

I slay this man with his own sword.

N. B. Sometimes a Dative case is put figuratively in stead of an Accusative or Ablative with a Preposition; and of some it is called the eighth case; as,

The cry goeth unto heaven. Keep the heat from the cattle.

xv.

§. XV. Rule, Of Verbs governing an Accusative case.

4 An Accu-
sative. **V**ERBS Transitives, are all such as have after them an Accusative case of the doer or sufferer; as, *Fear God. Honour the King.*

It's

Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus.

2 Obs. *Sam* cum multis aliis *geminum* adsciscit
Dativum; ut,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis.

Rex pius est Republica ornamento.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis.

3 10 Composita cum Adverbii, *Satis, bene, malè,*
& Præpositionibus, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in,*
inter; ut,

Benefecit multis, malefecit nulli.

Neminem tibi antepono.

Auditis aliquid novus adjicit Auctor.

1 Obs. Pauca ex his mutant Dativum aliquoties in
aliu[m] casum; ut,

Præstat ingenio alius, alium.

Interdico tibi aqua[m] & igni.

2 Obs. Sed *Præco, præcedo, præcurro,* & quædam a-
lia Composita cum *præ* Accusativo potius junguntur;
ut, *Præbis me.*

3 Obs. Sæpe fit Pleonasmus sive redundantia Da-
tivorum, *Mihi, tibi, sibi;* ut,

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

N. B. Aliquando Dativus figuratè ponitur pro Ac-
cusativo aut Ablativo cum Præpositione: & a non-
nullis dicitur octavus casus; ut,

It clamor cælo, pro ad cælum.

Solstitium pecori defendite, pro à pecore.

§. XV. Regula, De Verbis Accusativum
regentibus.

XV.

V Erba Transitiva exigunt Accusativum; ut

4 Accusati-
vo.

Deum time. Regem honora.

Q 3

Fili

Its a sons duty to reverence his Parents.
The fierce Lionesse followeth the Wolf, and the
Wolf the Kid.

1 *Obs.* Verbs absolute may have an Accusative case of their own signification, and sometimes an Ablative; as, *I live a life. To live a life long.*

Thou sleepest Endymions sleep. They rejoyced with exceeding great joy. To go a long way. To go the right way. He died a sudden death.

2 *Obs.* Some Verbs will have an Accusative case figuratively; as, *He smells like a Goat. Thy voice sounds like a man. He offends in the same thing. They counterfeit sober men, and live riotously.*

3 Verbs of asking, teaching, and arraying, will have two Accusative cases, one of the Person, and another of the Thing; as,

Do thou only ask God leave.

Hunger teacheth a man many things.

He put on his shoes which he had first put off.

4 But some of these sometimes change the one Accusative case into the Dative or Ablative; with, or without a Preposition; as, *I put on thy coat, or I put thy coat on thee. He informeth the Senate of his journey. Let us intreat leave of him.*

XVI.

§. XVI. Rule, Of Verbs governing an Ablative case.

§ Ablative.

These govern an Ablative case.

I. All Verbs, so that the Ablative case be,

1 Of the Instrument.

2 Of the Cause.

3 Of the manner of doing.

II. Verbs of Price.

III. Verbs that signifie some property or passion.

Concerning which we have spoken before in the Regiment of Nouns, p. 218.

IV.

Filii est, *repperi parentes.*

Torva Leæna *Lupum sequitur, Lupus ipse Capellam.*

1 *Obs.* Verba absoluta Accusativum admittunt cognatæ significationis & aliquando Ablativum; ut, *Vivis vitam. Vitâ diu vivere.*

Endymionis somnum dormis.

Gaudebant gaudium valde magnum.

Longam ire viam. Ire rectâ viâ.

Morte obiit repentinâ.

2 *Obs.* Quædam etiam figuratè Accusativum habent; ut,

Olet hircum. Vox sonat hominem

Eadem peccat. Curios simulant & Bacchanalia vivunt.

3 Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, duplicem regunt Accusativum; unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

Tu modo posce Deum veniam.

Multa hominem fames docet.

Induit se calceos quos prius exuerat.

4 Sed interdum mutant, alterum Accusativum in Dativum vel Ablativum, cum, vel sine Præpositione; ut,

Induo te tunica, vel tibi tunicam. Separatum edocet de itinere. Veniam oremus ab ipso.

§. XVI. Regula, De Verbis Ablativum regentibus.

XVI.

Ablativum regunt.

I. Quodvis Verbum; modo iste Ablativus sit,

1 Instrumenti;

2 Causæ,

3 Modi Actionis;

II. Verba pretii.

III. Verba proprietatem vel passionem significantia.

5 Ablativo.

De quibus in Regimine Nominum supra dictum est, P. 219.

Q 4

IV.

The Latine Grammar.

IV. Verbs of plenty or scarcenesse.

V. Some certain Deponents and Neuters, viz.

<i>Fangor,</i>	}	They that would get true glory,
		must discharge the duties of Justice
<i>Fruor,</i>		It's the best to make use of ano-
		thers madnes.
<i>utor,</i>		It helpeth in a bad matter, if thou
		canst use a good courage.
<i>Vescor,</i>		I eat flesh.
<i>Nitor,</i>		I trust to my strength. It becometh
		one to rely on his virtue, not his
		blood. (honour.
<i>Dignor,</i>	} as,	I think not my self worthy of such
<i>Prosequor,</i>		I pursue thee with love, i.e. I love
		thee.
<i>Muto,</i>		He changeib square things for round
<i>Munero,</i>		He rewardeth him with the fellow-
		ship of his Kingdom.
<i>Supersedeo</i>		We must leave off the multitude of
		examples. (at my table.
<i>Communico</i>		I will give thee allowance alwaies
<i>Afficio,</i>		I affect thee with joy, or I make
		thee glad, with some few others.

VI. Verbs of Comparing or Exceeding; as,

I prefer this man by many degrees.

He is beyond him but a little space.

It is seemly to be overcome in virtue by those whom thou excellest in eminency of place.

VII. Verbs that betoken receivings distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative case with a Preposition; as, *I heard it of many. It is far distant from us. I delivered thee from the evils.*

Obs. And this Ablative may be turned into the Dative; as, *He took his life from him.*

VIII. *Mereor* will have an Ablative case with the Preposition *De*; as,

Grammatica Latina.

241

IV. Verba Abundandi, & Implendi.

V. Cetera quædam Deponentia & Neutra, viz.

<i>Fungor,</i>	}	Qui adipisci veram gloriā volunt, Justitiæ <i>fungantur</i> officiū.
<i>Fruor,</i>		Optimum est alienā <i>insaniā</i> frui.
<i>utor,</i>		In re malā <i>animo</i> si bono <i>utare</i> , juvat.
<i>Vescor,</i>		<i>Vescor</i> carnibus.
<i>Nitor,</i>		<i>Nitor</i> meis <i>vivibus</i> . <i>Virtute</i> decet, non <i>sanguini</i> niti.
<i>Dignor,</i>	} ut,	Haud equidē tali me <i>dignor</i> honore
<i>Prosequor,</i>		
<i>Muto,</i>		<i>Mutat</i> Quadrata rotundis.
<i>Munero,</i>		Regni cum societate <i>muneravi</i> .
<i>Superseco</i>		Exemplorum <i>multitudine</i> <i>superse-</i> <i>ndum</i> est.
<i>Communico</i>		<i>Communicabo</i> te semper <i>mensā</i> meā.
<i>Afficio,</i>		<i>Afficio</i> te <i>gaudio</i> , cum paucis aliis.

VI. Verba quæ vim Comparationis obtinet; ut,

Præfero hunc *multis* gradibus.

Paulo intervallo illum *superat*.

Deforme est ab iis virtutibus *superari*, quos *dignitate* *præstas*.

„ VII. Verba Accipiendi, Distandi & Auferendi

„ Ablativum cum Præpositione operant; ut,

Audi *ex multis*. Longè *distat* à nobis.

Eripuit te à malis.

1 Obs. Vertitur hic Ablativus aliquando in Dativum; ut, *Eripuit* illi vitam.

VII. *Mereor* Ablativo adhæret cum Præpositione
De; ut,

De

Thou never deservedst well of me.

Caroline deserved very ill of the Common-wealth.

XVII.

§. XVII. Rule, Of Verbs Passives.

Verbs Passives will have after them an Ablative case with a Preposition, and sometimes a Dative; as, *Virgil is read of me.*

A Boar is oft-times held by a little dog.

Honest things, nor hidden things, are desired of good men.

1 Obs. The other cases remain in the Passives which belong to their Active; as,

Thou art accused by me of theft.

Thou shalt be made a mocking-stock.

2 Obs. *Vapulo, venio, liceo, exsulo* and *fio*, do follow the construction of Passives, i. e. they govern an Ablative case with a Preposition, or a Dative; as,

Thou shalt be whipt by the Master. I had rather be spoiled by a Citizen, than sold by an enemy.

What will become of him? Virtue is cheapned by all at a low rate. Why is Philosophy banish'd from banquets?

XVIII.

§. XVIII. Rule, Of Verbs having diverse Constructions.

With a diverse Construction.

I. **T**He same Verb may have diverse cases in a several respect or consideration; as,

He gave me his garment for a pawn, thou being present, with his own hand.

II. These Verbs have a diverse Construction,

1 In the same signification; as,

1 I flatter thee.

2 He bespotted me.

3 I bear ken to thee.

4 I agree with thee.

5 I dissent from thee.

6 I bestow a book on thee.

De me nunquam bene meritus es.

Catilina pessimè de Republicâ meruit.

§. XVII. Regula, De uerbis Passivis.

XVII.

Verba Passiva admittunt Ablativum cum Præpositione, & interdum Dativum; ut,
Virgilius legitur à me.

A cane non magno sæpe tenetur Aper.

Honestæ bonis viris, non occulta petuntur.

1 Obs. Cæteri casus manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activorum; ut,

Accusaris à me furti.

Habeberis ludibrio.

2 Obs. Vapulo, venio, liceo, exsulo, fio, Passivorum constructionem habent, i. e. Ablativum admittunt cum Præpositione, vel Dativum; ut,

A Præceptore vapulabis.

Malo à cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire.

Quid fiet ab illo? Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus.

Cur à convivii exsulat Philosophia?

§. XVIII. Regula, De Verbis variam Constructionem habentibus.

XVIII.

I. **E**dem Verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis apponi possunt; ut, Cum diversa significati-
Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentæ, propriâ one.
manu.

II. Hæc variam habent constructionem,

1 In eadem significatione, viz.

1 { Adulo { tibi } 2 Aspersit { mihi labem.
{ Adulor { te } { me labe.

3 Attendo { tibi } 4 Consentio { tibi.
{ te } { tecum.

5 { Dissentio { tibi, à te, } 6 Dono { tibi librum.
{ Dissidua { tecum } { te libro.

- 7 I mock thee.
 8 I bestow my means on thee.
 9 I put on thy coat.
 10 He spread his cloak on the horse.
 11 I forbid thee this thing
 12 I cure { my son
 { that disease
 13 I moderate my affection
 14 I deprave thee
 15 I tarry for thee
 16 I forbid thee the house
 17 I go into the house
 „ 2 In a different signification; as,
 1 I assent }
 I come } to thee
 2 I envy }
 I imitate } thee
 3 I obey }
 I hear } thee
 4 { I see to thee
 { I avoid thee
 { I make a caution, or I am careful for thee
 5 { I give place to thee
 { I go out of the city
 { Give me a book
 6 { I advise, or look to thee
 { I ask advice of thee
 { I resolve concerning thee
 7 { It happeneth to me
 { It toucheth me
 8 { I favour thee
 { I desire thee
 9 { It is wanting to me
 { He faileth me
 { He revolteth from me

- 7 Illudo { tibi } 8 Imperio { tibi fortunas meas
 { te } { te fortunis meis
- 9 Induo { tibi tunicam } 10 Instravit { equo penulam
 { te tunicā } { equum penulā
- 11 Interdico tibi hanc rem, vel te hanc re
- 12 Medico { gnato tuo
 { istum morbum.
- 13 Moderor { affectui, } 14 Obrecto { laudem
 { affectum } { landi
- 15 Praestolor { tibi } 16 Prohibeo { te domo
 { te } { tibi domum
- 17 Subeo { te etum
 { te eto
- „ 2 In diversā significatione. (video
- 1 Accedo { tibi, i. e. Assentior } 2 Amulor { tibi, i. e. in-
 { te, i. e. Adco } { te, i. e. imitor
- 3 Ausculto { tibi, i. e. Obedio
 { te, i. e. Audio
- 4 Caveo { tibi, i. e. periculum à te avertio
 { te }
 { à te } i. e. declino
 { de te, i. e. do aliquid ad cautionem
- 5 Cedo { tibi
 { urbe
 { librum
- 6 Consulo { tibi, i. e. consilium do, vel prospicio
 { te, i. e. consilium à te peto
 { in te, i. e. statuo
- 7 Contingit { mihi, i. e. accidit
 { me, i. e. tangit
- 8 Cupio { tibi, i. e. faveo.
 { te, i. e. expeto
- 9 Deficit { mihi, i. e. deest
 { me, i. e. destituit
 { à me, i. e. in alteram partem transit.

- 10 { I give or send } to eaw y. to one
letters to thee } to read.
- 11 { I lend thee on usury
I borrow of thee on usury
- 12 { I am sick of a Feaver
I take pains for the publick safety
- 13 { I am careful for thee
I am afraid of thee
- 14 { I remember thee
I speak of thee
- 15 { I conquer the City
I obtain my desire
- 16 { I promise you
I entertain you
I betake my self home
I report it to you
- 17 { I propound it to you
I refuse a gift
- 18 { I declare him consul
I pay thee
- 19 { I free thee
I endeavour this
- 20 { I desire this
I labour about trifles
- 21 { I have leasure for trifles
I am void of blame
The place is empty.
Use will teach the rest.

XIX.

§. XIX. Rule, Of the Infinitive mood.

Of the Infinitive mood. Verbs of the Infinitive mood are put after Verbs or Adjectives, as,
Ponricus, wilt thou be made rich? Thou must desire nothing.

And

- Do tibi literas, i. e. ut ad aliquem feras.
- 10 Mitto ad te literas, i. e. ut legas.
- Facero, tibi, i. e. do ad usuram.
- 11 Faceror abs te, i. e. accipio ad usuram.
- 12 Laboro { febrī
de salute publicā
- Metuo, Timeo, te, vel à te, i. e. ne mihi noceas.
- 13 Formido, tibi, vel de te, i. e. sollicitus sum.
- 14 Memini tui, te, de te.
- 15 Potior tuis. Potior voto.
- 16 Recipio { tibi, i. e. promitto
te, i. e. accipio
domum i. e. confero
- 17 Refero { tibi, i. e. narro
ad te, i. e. propono
- 18 Renuntio { munerī, i. e. recuso
consulem, i. e. declaro
- 19 Solvo { tibi, i. e. satisfacio
te, i. e. libero
- 20 Studeo { huius, i. e. operam do
hoc, i. e. cupio
- 21 Vaco { nugis, i. e. operam do
ad nugas, i. e. otium habeo
culpā, i. e. careo
Vacat locus.

Cætera docebit usus,

§. XIX. Regula, De Infinitivo modo.

XIX.

„I. Verba Infinita quibusdam cum Verbis cum De Infinito
„ Adjektivis subjiciuntur; ut, modo.
Vis fieri dives, Pontice? nil cupias.

Et

And he was *worthy to be loved.*

Bold to endure all things. Enduring to be called.

1 *Obs.* They have an Accusative case before them in stead of a Nominative; as, *I bid thee to go hence.*

I bid thee be in good health.

Which may be resolved by *that*; as, *I bid that thou go hence. I am glad that thou art in good health.*

2 *Obs.* They have like cases before and after them; as, *An Hypocrite desireth to seem just.*

Nature hath granted to all men to be happy, if any knew how to use it.

3 *Obs.* They are sometimes put absolutely by an Ellipsis; as,

That these villanies should be committed, i. e. It is fit.
The Lamb trembled, i. e. Begun to tremble.

XX.

§. XX. The Rule of the Gerunds.

Of the Gerunds in

Gerunds and Supines will have such a case as the Verbs that they come of; as,
We must use age. To hear a sermon.

And they are as it were Nouns of both Numbers:

These in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Di} \\ \text{Dum} \\ \text{Do} \end{array} \right\}$ of the $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Genitive} \\ \text{Accusative} \\ \text{Ablative} \end{array} \right\}$ Case,

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{An occasion of studying.} \\ \text{Fit to study.} \\ \text{Weary with studying.} \end{array} \right\}$

Hence is it that,

XXI.
Di.

1 The Gerund in *Di* may be used after certain Substantives and Adjectives that govern a Genitive case; as,

There is no place for telling.

The wicked love of having.

Certain of going. Skilful in darting.

1 *Obs.*

Exerat tum dignus amari.

Audax omnia perpeti. Patiens vocari.

1 Obs. Pro Nominativo Accusativum ante se statuitur; ut, Jubeo te abire.

Gaudeo te bene valere.

Atque resolvuntur per quoddam & ut; ut, Jubeo, ut tu abeas. Gaudeo quod tu bene valeas.

2 Obs. Utrunque eisdem casus habent; ut,

Hypocrita cupit videri justus, vel se videri justum.

Natura beatissimis omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uri.

3 Obs. Ponuntur interdum absolute per Ellipsin; ut,

Hæccine fieri flagitia? i. e. decet.

Agnus est epidare? i. e. coepit.

§. XX. Regula, De Gerundiis.

XX.

Gerundia & Supina regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut, De Gerundiis in

utendum est ætate. Auditum concionem.

Et se habent ut nomina utriusque numeri.

In { Di } { Genitivi }
 { Dum } { Accusativi } Casus
 { Do } { Ablativi }

ut, { Occasio studendi.

{ Aptus ad studendum.

{ Fessus studendo.

Hinc est quod,

1 Gerundia in Di pendent à quibusdam cum Substantivis cum Adjectivis Genitivum regentibus; ut, XXI.

ut,

Non est narrandi locus.

Amor sceleratus habendi.

Certus eundi. Peritus jaculandi.

R

x Obs.

1 *Obs.* This Gerund is often joyned with a Genitive case plural; as,

For the cause of seeing them.

Leave off getting apples.

Liberty of encreasing new Comedies.

2. *Obs.* The Infinitive mood is sometimes put instead of this Gerund; as,

Skilful to heal.

XXII.

Do,

3. Gerunds in *Do* be used with one of these Prepositions; *A, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro*; as,

Idle boyes are quickly frightened from learning.

The manner of right writing is joyned with speaking.

1. *Obs.* Sometimes they are used without a Preposition; as,

We learn by teaching.

XXIII.

Dum,

3. The Gerund in *Dum* is used after one of these Prepositions, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter*; as,

In supper while be merry.

Christ dyed to redeem us.

1 *Obs.* When you have this English *must* or *ought*, it may be put in the Gerund in *Dum*, with the Verb *est*, and a Dative case expressed or understood; as,

I must go hence, we ought to pray, that there may be a sound mind in a sound body.

N. B. Gerunds are often turned into participials in *Dus*, which agree with their Substantives; as;

In reading old Authors thou shalt profit.

It is the next to theft to be drawn on by a reward to accuse men.

1. *Obs.* Hoc Gerundium sæpiſſime conjungitur Genitivo plurali, ut,

Illorum videndi gratia.

Licentia diripiendi pomorum.

Crescendi copia novarum.

2. *Obs.* Infinitivus aliquando loco hujus Gerundii ponitur; ut,

Peritus medicari.

XXII.

Do,

2. Gerundia in *Do* pendent ab his Præpositionibus; *A, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro,* ut,

Ignavi à discendo cito deterrentur

Rectè scribendi ratio *cum loquendo* conjuncta est.

1 *Obs.* Ponuntur & absque Præpositione; ut,

Docendo discimus.

XXIII.

Dum,

3. Gerundia in *Dum* pendent ab his Præpositionibus, *Inter, ante, ad, ob, propter*; ut,

Inter cœnandum hiiæres este.

Christus moriebatur propter nos redimendum.

1 *Obs.* Cùm significatur necessitas, ponuntur citra Præpositionem, addito Verbo *est*, cum Dativo expresso vel subintellecto; ut,

Abenndum est mihi. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

N. B. Sæpe vertuntur Gerundia in Participialia in *Dus*, quæ suis Substantivis conveniunt; ut,

Legendis veteribus proficies.

Ad Accusandos homines duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.

XXIV.

§. XXIV. Rule, Of Supines.

Of the
Supines,
um,

I. **T**He first *Supine* is put after Verbs and Participles that betoken *moving to a place*; as,
They come to look on.

Why goest thou about to undo thy self.

1 *Obs.* But these have a motion scarce discernable.
I set to sale. I bestow my Daughter to be married.

2 The Poets say, *I go to visit. I go to see.*

XXV.
u,

II. The latter *Supine* is put after Nouns Adjectives;
as, *Easie to be done. Unhonest to be spoken.*

XXVI.

§. XXVI. Rule, Of Time.

Of Time.

NOuns are commonly used,
1. In the Ablative case, which betoken part
of time; i. e. with answer to *when*; as,

No man is wise at all hours.

Thou wakest in the night, and sleepest in the day.

2. In the Accusative case, which signifie continual
term of Time, without ceasing or intermission; i. e.
with answer to the question *how long*; as,

Thou sleepest the whole winter.

Black Pluto's Gate lieth open night and day.

1 *Obs.* Sometimes a Preposition is added; as,

*Three months ago. About three years. In a few
dayes. For a day. About that age. About that time.*

§. XXIV. Regula, De Supinis.

XXIV.

I. **P**rius Supinum sequitur Verbum aut Partici- De Supinis
pium significans motum ad locum; ut, um,

Spectatum veniunt?

Cur te is perditum.

1. *Obs.* Illa verò, *Do venum, do filiam nuptum*, la-
tentem habent motum.

2. Poëtice dicunt, *Eo visere. Vado videre.*

II. Posterius Supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva; XXV.

ur,

Facile factu. Turpe dictu.

u,

§. XXVI. Regula, De Tempore.

XXVI.

FRequentius usurpantur

1. In Ablativo, quæ significant partem tem- De tempore
poris, i. e. quando? ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Nocte vigilas, luce dormis.

2 In Accusativo, quæ durationem temporis de-
notant, i. e. quamdiu? ut,

Hyemem totam stertis.

Noctes atque dies patet atri janua Ditis.

1 *Obs.* Interdum additur Præpositio; ut,

Ante tres menses. Per tres annos. In paucis diebus.

Circa id ætatis. Id tempus per vel sub.

XXVII. §. XXVII. Rule, Of space or distance of place.

Of space.

NOuns that betoken space between place and place be commonly put in the Accusative case, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Depart not a *foot-breadth* from a good conscience.
They are not *many paces* one from another.

XXVIII §. XXVIII. Rule. Of Nouns of Place.

Of Place.

NOuns of place, when they follow a Verb that signifieth action or motion,

1. *In* a place, *to* a place, *from* a place, or *by* a place (if they be Nouns Appellatives, or proper names of great places) be put with a Preposition; as,

He is *in the Market*.

I live *in England*. He went hence *to the Church*.

He came *through France into Italy*.

He is gone *out of the Town*.

2. *Obj.* But sometimes the Preposition is understood; as, He went *to Italy*.

2. *In* a place or *at* a place (if they be proper names of Cities or Towns) of the first or second Declension and the Singular number, be put in the Genitive case; But if of the third Declension or Plural Number, only in the Ablative; as,

What should I do *at Rome*.

He lived *at London*.

He was born *at Athens*.

I being unconstant love Tibur *at Rome*, and Rome *at Tibur*.

3. *To* a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Accusative case; as,

I go *to London* to buy wares.

I went *to Cambridge*,

4. *From*

§. XXVII. Regula, De Spacio Loci. XXVII.

S Pacium loci in Accusativo effertur, interdum & De Spacio.
in Ablativo; ut,

A rectâ conscientiâ transversum pedem nē discedas.
Nec Multis inter se passibus absunt.

§. XXVIII. Regula, De Loco. XXVIII

N Omina loci cū apponuntur Verbis significan- De Loco.
tibus actionem aut morum,

1. *In loco, ad locum, à loco, aut per locum* (si sint nomina Appellativa, vel nomina majorum locarum) adduntur ferè cum præpositione, ut, *In foro versatur.*

Vivo in Anglia. Ad Templum abiit.

Venit per Galliam in Italiam.

Profectus est ex oppido.

¶ *Obs.* Sed omittitur aliquando Præpositio; ut, *Italium petiit.*

2. *In loco aut ad locum* (si sint propria nomina Urbium aut oppidorum) primæ vel secundæ Declinationis & singularis Numeri, Genitivum; sin tertiæ Declinationis & pluralis duntaxat Numeri, Ablativum admittunt; ut,

Quid Romæ faciam?

Londini vixit.

Athenis natus est.

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, Tibure Romam.

3. *Ad locum* (si sint propria) ponuntur in Accusativo; ut,

Eo Londinum ad merces emendas.

Concessi Cantabrigiam.

4 From a place, or by a place (if they be proper names) are put in the Ablative case; as;

He went by London to Cambridge.

He went from London.

Obs. *Humus, militia, bellum, domus, and rus* do follow the rules of proper names of Cities or Towns; as;

We live together at home, and in the wars.

He was brought up in the Country.

I will go into the Country.

Go home.

He is returned out of the Country.

He is newly gone from home.

XXIX.

§. XXIX. Rule, Of government of Impersonals.

Of Impersonals,
I Active.

I. Impersonals of the Active voice govern

1. A Genitive case, viz. *Interest, refert, and est* for *interest*; as, *It concerneth all men to do well.*

It much concerneth a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops be learned and pious.

1 Obs. Except these Ablative cases, *Meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ* and *cujâ*; as,

It is expedient to thee to know thy self.

It little concerneth you.

2 Obs. *Est* in such clauses as these, is put for *licet* after the Greek fashion; viz.

You may see.

Nor is it for any man to deceive you.

II. A Dative, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c.* which be put acquisitively; as,

It is not lawful for any man to sin.

It is better for me to dye manfully, than to live with disgrace.

I am resolved to run all hazards.

III. An Accusative, 1. Only, viz. *Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet*; as, *It becometh not men to scold like women,*

2 With

4. A loco aut per locum (si sint propria) ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam. Discessit Londino.

Obs. Humus, militia, bellum, domus & rus, propriorum sequuntur formam; ut,

Domi bellicque simul viximus.

Rure educatus est.

Ego rus ibo,

Ite domum.

Rure reversus est.

Nuper domo exiit.

§. XXIX. Regula, De regimine Impersonalium. XXIX.

I. Impersonalia activæ vocis regunt

I. Genitivum, viz. *Interest, refert, & est* pro *De Impersonalibus, & Activis.*

interest; ut, *Interest omnium rectè agere. Refert multum Christianæ Reipublicæ, Episcopos doctos & pios esse.*

Obs. Præter Ablativos, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ & ejus*, ut,

Tuâ refert teipsum nōsse.

Vestrâ parvi interest.

2. Obs. *Est* in hujusmodi clausulis ponitur pro *licet* ad imitationem Græcorum; viz.

Videre est.

Neque est te fallere cuique.

II. Dativum, viz. *Accidit, certum est, contingit, constat, confert, &c.* quæ acquisitivè ponuntur; ut,

Peccare nemini licet.

Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quam per dedecus vivere.

Stat mihi casus renovare omnes.

III. Accusativum, I solum. viz. *Juvat, decet, delectat, oportet*; ut, *Dedecet viros muliebriter rixari.*

3. Cum

2 With the Prepositiō *ad*, viz. *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, as
It belongeth to thee. It belongeth to all men to live well

3 With a Genitive, viz. *Pœnitet*, *tædet*, *miseret*,
miserescit pudet, *piget*; as,

It repenteth every one of his own estate.

It irketh me of my life.

Passives.

II. Impersonals of the Passive voice have such cases as other Verbs Passive have; as,

Neither is there sowing nor mowing there for me.

He is gone to Athens. They slept all night.

The enemies fought stoutly.

1 Obs. Yet many times the case is not exprest; as,

What do they in the School? they ply their books.

Chap. 6.

XXX. §. XXX. Rule. Of the government of Participles.

Of Participles.

Participles govern such cases as the Verbs that they come of; as, *Like to enjoy his Friends.*

Taking order for thee. Called the seven wise-men.

1 Obs. But when they be changed into Nouns, they will have a Genitive case; as,

Greedy of another mans goods. Most desirous of thee.

2 Obs. Participles in *Dus* will have a Dative case; as, *He is to be earnestly entreated by me.*

3 Obs. *Exosus* and *Perosus* having the active signification, will have an Accusative case; as,

Hating cruelty.

But having the Passive, a Dative; as,

Hated of God and good men.

4 Obs. *Pertusus* will have a Genitive or an Accusative case; as, *Weary of wedlock. Weary of his sluggishness.*

5 Obs. *Natus*, *prognatus*, *fatus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, will have an Ablative case; as,

O thou that art born of a Goddess!

A good woman come of good Parents.

Of what blood is he come?

2. Cum Præpositione, *ad*; *vix*. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*,
ut, *Ad te attinet*. *Spectat ad omnes bene vivere*.

3. Cum Genitivo, *vix*. *Pœnitet*, *tadet*, *miseret*,
miserescit, *pudet*, *piget*; ut,
Sux quemcunque fortunæ pœnitet.
Tadet me vitæ.

11. Impersonalia passivæ vocis similes cum perso- 2 Passiva
nalibus passivis casus obtinent; ut,

Mihi istic nec feritur, nec *metitur*.

Itur Athenas. *Dormitur totam noctem*.

Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur.

1 Obs. Sed & horum casus interdum non expri-
muntur; ut, *Quid agitur in ludo literario?* *Studetur*.

Cap. 6.

XXX. Regula, De Regimine Participiorum. XXX.

Participia regunt casus suorum Verborum; ut,
Fruiturus amicis.

6. Partici-
piorum.

Consulens tibi. *Septem vocati sapientes*.

1 Obs. Sed cum fiunt nomina Genitivum postu-
lant; ut,

Alieni appetens cupientissimus tuus,

2 Obs. Quæ in *Dus* verò Dativum, ut,

Mihi exorandus est.

3 Obs. *Exosus* & *perosus* activè significantia regunt
Accusativum; ut,

Exosus faviham.

Passivè verò Dativum; ut,

Exosus Deo & sanctis.

4 Obs. *Pertæsus* nunc Genitivum, nunc Accusativum
regit; ut, *Pertæsus thalami*. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam*,

5 Obs. *Natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*,
editus, in Ablativum feruntur; ut,

Nate Dea.

Bona bonis prognata Parentibus.

Quo sanguine cretus?

6. Peri-

6 The words put in stead of a Verb by way of circumlocution, do sometimes govern the Case of the Verb; as, He doth earnestly *mind that*.

Do you perswade me to that?

XXXI.

Chap. 7. §. XXXI. Rule, Of the Government of Adverbs.

1 Of Adverbs which govern cases.

7. Adverbs
1 With
Case.

Adverbs govern
I. A Nominative case, viz. *En* see, and *Ecce* behold, being Adverbs of Shewing; as,

Behold Priam. Loe two Altars.

1 *Obs.* But being Adverbs of upbraiding, they will have an Accusative, as,

See his habit or fashion. Look thou the other fellow.

II. A Genitive, viz. Adverbs of quantity, time, and place; as, *In what Country. To what Land. At that time. An abundance of tales. Words enough. Part of the men.*

1 *Obs.* So also *Ergo* for *causā*; as, *For his sake.*

2 *Obs.* *Pridie* the day before, and *Postridie* the day after, will have a Genitive or an Accusative case, as, *The day before that day. The day after the Kalends.*

3 *Obs.* *Minimè gentium* in no wise, is a proper phrase, or manner of speech.

III. A Dative, viz. such as be derived of Nouns that govern a Dative case, as, *He came to meet him. He singeth like him. He liveth unprofitable to himself*

1 *Obs.* These Datives be used Adverbially, *Temporè* betime, *lucè* by day, *vesperè* at even, as, *We must rise betime. We must go to bed at even. We must take pains by day.*

IV. An Accusative case of the preposition they be com. of; as, *Nearer the City. Next to Spain.*

N.B.

6 Periphrasis etiam verbi aliquando regit casum ipsius; ut.

Id studiosè operam dat, i. e. curat :

Idne estis autores mihi ? i. e. id suadetis.

Cap. 7. §. XXXI. Regula, De Regimine Adverbiorum.

XXXI.

I De Adverbiis quæ casus regunt.

Adverbia regunt.

I. Nominativum, viz. *En, & Ecce*, demonstrandi; ut, *En Priamus. Ecce duo altaria.*

7. Adverbiorum.
I Cum Casu.

I Obs. Exprobantis verò Accusativo junguntur; ut, *En habitum : Ecce alterum.*

II. Genitivum, viz. Adverbia loci, temporis; & quantitaris; ut, *ubi gentium. Quo terrarum. Tunc temporis. Abundè fabularum. Satis verborum. partim virorum.*

1 Obs. Sic & ergò pro causâ, ut, *illius ergò.*

2 Obs. *Pridie & Postridie* Genitivum aut Accusativum regunt; ut, *Pridie ejus diei.*

Postridie Kalendas, sive Kalendarum.

3 Obs. Minimè gentium peculiaris phrasis est.

III. Dativum, viz. quæ derivantur à Nominibus Dativum regentibus; ut, *Venit obviam illi.*

Canit similiter huic. Sibi inutiliter vivit.

1 Obs. Sunt & hi Dativi, Adverbiales, *Tempori, luci, vespri*, ut,

Tempori surgendum. Vespri cubandum.

Luci laborandum.

IV. Accusativum Præpositionis unde sunt profecta; ut, *Propius urbem. Proximè Hispaniam.*

N. B. Plur.

N. B. *Plus, minus, amplius*, will have a Nominative, a Genitive, a Dative, and an Ablative case; as,
Above three hundred wagons : Above fifty men ;
Above half a mile : More than that.

2. Of Adverbs, which govern Moods.

2 With a
Mood.

1. **U**bi when, *postquam* after that, *cum* when, do govern an Indicative; as, *When I shall sacrifice an heifer for my fruits, come thou.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *when I sung of Kings, and wars, Apollo pulled me by the ear.*

2. *Donec* until, governs an Indicative; as,
until he had to fold the sheep and count them.

Or a Subjunctive; as *until* that water which thou hast set on, *be* boyled.

Donec as long as, an Indicative; as.

As long as I was safe.

3. *Dum* whil'st, or as long as, governs an Indicative; as, *Whilst the maid is making ready.*

As long as thou doest what becometh thee.

Dum so that, or until, doth govern a Subjunctive, as, *So that I may profit thee.*

until the third Summer shall see him reigning in Italy.

4. *Quoad* as long as, governs an Indicative; as,

As long as thou expectest thy Chamber-fellow,

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As long as I could.*

Quoad until doth govern a Subjunctive; as,

I will keep all things safe till the Army be sent hither.

5. *Simulac & Simulatque* as soon as, do govern an Indicative; as, *As soon as he was able to abide war.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As soon as his age waxed ripe.*

6. *Quemadmodum* as, *ut* as, *utcumque* as, *sicut* as, do govern

N. B. *Plus, minùs, ampliùs*, Nominativo, Genitivo, Accusativo & Ablativo junguntur; ut,
Plus trecenta vehicula: Plus quinquaginta hominum.
Plus quingentos passus. Plus eo.

2. De Adverbiis, quæ Modos regunt.

1. **U**bi, postquam, & cum, Indicativum regunt; 2 Cum
 ut, Cum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse ve- Modo.
 nito.

Et Subjunctivum; ut,

Cum canerem Reges, & prælia, Cinthius aurē vellit.

2. Donec pro quousque regit Indicativum, ut,

Cogere donec oves stabulis numerumq; referre jussit

Aut Subjunctivum; ut,

Donec ea aqua, quam adjeceris, decocta sit.

Donec pro quamdiu regit Indicativum; ut,

Donec eram sospes.

3. Dum de re imperfectâ, regit Indicativum; ut,

Dum apparatur virgô.

Dum quod te dignum est facis.

Dum pro quamdiu, dummodo, & donec, regit Sub-
 junctivum; ut, Dum prosum tibi.

Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit æstas.

4. Quoad pro quamdiu, Indicativum regit; ut,

Quoad expectes contubernalem

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, Quoad possem & liceret.

Quoad pro donec regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Omnia integra servabo, quoad exercitus huc mit-
 tatur.

5. Simulac, Simulatque Indicativum regunt; ut,

Simulac belli patiens erat.

Vel Subjunctivum; ut, Simulatque adoleverit ætas.

6. Quemadmodum, ut, ut cunq; sicut: regunt Indica-
 tivum;

vern an Indicative; as, *As thou salutes*, so shalt thou be saluted again.

Or a Subjunctive; as, *As thou shalt sow*, so shalt thou reap.

Ut after that, doth govern an Indicative; as, *After that they came into the City.*

7 *Quasi* as, *ceu* as, *tanquam* as, *perinde ac si* like as, *Haud secus ac si*, no otherwise than as, do govern a Subjunctive; as,

As though we knew not our selves among our selves, And these also couple like cases; as,

I knew the man even as thy self.

He smileth on me as on a friend,

8 *Nē* not, an Adverb of Forbidding, doth govern an Imperative; as, *Be not so wroth.*

Or a Subjunctive; as, *This is a great knave, do not fear him.*

XXXII. Chap. 8. §. XXXII. Rule, Of the Government of Conjunctions.

I Of Conjunctions which do couple Words.

§. Of Conjunctions which do Couple.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, and these four *quā, nisi, prāterquam, an*, do couple like cases, and most commonly like moods and tenses; as, *The night, and love, and wine* do perswade no moderate thing.

He is younger than thou art.

He pleaseth no body but himself.

Peter and John did pray and preach in the Temple.

1 *Obs.* But oftentimes some particular reason of words, requireth divers cases, moods and tenses; as,

I bought a book for an hundred asses and more.

I lived at Rome and at Venice.

I gave thee thanks, and will do so whilst I live.

2 *Obs.*

vum; ut, *ut salutabis, ita & resalutaberis.*

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, *ut sementem feceris, ita & meres.*

ut postquam Indicativum regit; ut,
ut ventum est in Urbem.

7 *Quasi, ceu, tanquam, perinde ac si, haud secus ac si,*
regunt Subjunctivum; ut,
Quasi non noverimus nos inter nos.

Atque hæc copulant similes casus; ut;
Novi hominem tanquam te.

Arridet mihi quasi amico.

8 Nè Prohibendi Imperativum regit; ut,
Nè sævi tantop. re.

Aut Subjunctivum; ut, Hic nebulo magnus est.
nè metuas.

Cap. 8. §. XXXII. Regula, De Regimine
Conjunctionum.

XXXII

I De Conjunctionibus quæ voces copulant.

C Onjunctiones Copulativæ & disjunctivæ, 8 De Con-
cum his quatuor, *quàm, nisi, præterquam, an,* si- junctioni-
miles omnino casus, & aliquoties similes modos & bus: I. quæ
tempora conglutinant; ut, *Nox, & Amor, vinumq;* copulant.

nihil moderabile suadent.

Est mihi natu quàm tu.

Nemini, nisi sibi, placet.

Petrus & Joannes precabantur & docebant in templo

1 Obs. Sæpe verò dictionum aliqua privata ratio
diversos casus, modos & tempora postulat; ut;

Emi librum centussi & pluris.

Vixi Romæ & Venetiis.

Tibi gratias egi, atque agam dum vivo.

S

206f.

2 Obs. *Cum* and *tum*, and *tum* being doubled; will couple like cases; as,

He embraceth all learned men, but especially *Marcellus*. He hateth both learning and virtue.

2. Of Conjunctions which govern Moods.

2 Govern
Moods.

1 **E** *Though* although, *tamen* *si* although, *etiam* *si* although, *quanquam* although, in the beginning of a Speech govern an Indicative; as,

Though no news was brought.

But in the middle of a speech a Subjunctive; as,

Thou blamest me, *though thou hast done* it thy self.

2 *Quamvis* although, *licet* although, commonly do govern a Subjunctive; as,

Though thou comest thy self.

3 *Ni* except, *nisi* unless, *si* if, *siquidem* if so be, *quid* that, *quia* because, *quam* than, *postquam* after, *postquam* after that, *ubi* for *postquam*, *nunquam* never, *priusquam* before that, do

govern { An Indicative, } as { I am glad that thou
or,
Subjunctive, } art returned safe.

Si if, doth govern an Indicative; as,

If thou beest well, it is well.

Or a Subjunctive; as, *If thou shalt deny*, thou shalt be whipt.

Si used for *quamvis* though, a Subjunctive; as,

No not *though she intreat* me.

4 *Quando* seeing that, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* because, do govern an Indicative; as,

Say on, *seeing that we sit together* on the soft grass.

5 *Quippe* because, doth govern an Indicative; as,
Because he is sick.

Quippe

2 Obs. Cùm & tum, item tum geminatum, similes
casus copulant; ut,
Amplectitur Cùm eruditos omnes, tum imprimis
Marcellum. Odit tum literas, tum virtutem.

2. De Conjunctionibus quæ modos Regunt.

1. **E** Ts, tamen, etiamsi, quanquam, in principio 2 Regunt
rationis regunt Indicativum, ut, Modos.
Etsi nihil novi afferebatur.

Sed in medio Orationis, Subjunctivum, ut,
Me culpas, etiamsi ipse feceris.

2 Quamvis, & licet frequentius Subjunctivum re-
gunt, ut,
Ipse licet venias.

3 Ni, nisi, si, siquidem, quod, quia, quam, postquam,
posteaquam, ubi pro postquam, nunquam priusquam,
regunt { Indicativum, } { Quod tu rediisti }
 { aur, } { (vel redieris) inco-
 { Subjunctivum, } { lumis, gaudeo.

Si regit { Indicativum; ut, Si vales, bene est.
 { &
 { Subjunctivum: ut, Si negaveris, vapulabis

Si pro quamvis Subjunctivum: ut,
Non, si me obsecret.

4 Quando, quandoquidem, & quoniam regunt In-
dicativum: ut,

Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consedimus herbâ.

5 Quippe regit Indicativum: ut,

Quippe egrotat.

Quippe qui as he that, doth govern an Indicative, or Subjunctive; as,

As he hath twice so sworn himself.

Qui, when *quippe* is understood, signifying a Cause a Subjunctive; as,

Thou art a fool to believe this fellow, i. e. because thou believest.

6 *Cum* for *quamvis* although, *quandoquidem* seeing that, *quoniam* because, govern a Subjunctive; as, Seeing thou art fit.

7 *Nē*, in *num*, whether of asking, will have an Indicative; as, Whether is he alive or no?

Of doubting, a Subjunctive; as,

See whether he be retained.

8 *Ut* to the end that, for *nē* *non* lest not, for *quam* although, and *utpote* because, governs a Subjunctive, as, to the end that he might be with you.

I am afraid he cannot stand it out.

Though all things fall out as I would.

Because thou hast deceived me so oft.

ut for *postquam* after that, *quemadmodū* even as, *scilicet* as, or used in asking, will have an Indicative; as,

After that I went from the City.

Go on to do, as thou doest.

Like as is his madness: How doth he?

XXXIII. Chap. 9. §. XXXIII. Rule. Of the Government of Prepositions.

9 Of Prepositions.

I. Thirty Prepositions govern an accusative case, viz.

- 1 To the Church,
- 2 At the market,
- 3 Before death,
- 4 Against two,

- 5 Towards thee,
- 6 On this side Thames
- 7 On this side the River,
- 8 About the Town.

9 About

Quippe qui, Indicativum & Subjunctivum; ut,
Quippe qui bis pejeravit, sive pejeraverit.

Qui, cum *quippe* subintelligitur, habens vim causalem, Subjunctivum; ut,
Stultus es qui huic credas.

6 *Cum* pro *quavis*, *quandoquidem*, & *quoniam*, regit Subjunctivum; ut,

Cum sis aptus.

7 *Nè, an, num*, Interrogandi regunt Indicativum; ut, *Superatne?*

Dubitandi, Subjunctivum; ut,

Vise num redierit.

8 *ut*, causalis, & *pro nè non*, pro *quanquam*, & *inipote*, Subjunctivum regit; ut,

ut una esset tecum.

Metuo ut subsiet.

ut omnia contingant, quæ volo.

ut qui toties scelleris.

ut pro postquam, quemadmodum, sicut, & Interrogativum regit Indicativum; ut,

ut ab Urbe discessi.

Perge facere, ut facis.

ut est dementia. ut valet?

Cap. 9. §. XXXIII. Regula, De Regimine Præpositionum.

XXXIII.

I. **T**riginta Præpositiones Accusativum regunt; 9 Præpositivum.

1 *Ad Ecclesiam*

2 *Apud forum*

3 *Ante obitum*

4 *Adversus duos*

5 *Adversum te*

6 *Cis Tamesin*

7 *Citra fluvium*

8 *Circa oppidum*

S 3

9 *Cir-*

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 9 About the hill | 20 Through the plain fields |
| 10 About two thousand | 21 Behind the back |
| 11 Against the prick | 22 After death |
| 12 Towards the people | 23 Besides the Cottage |
| 13 Without the house | 24 For my neighbour |
| 14 Betwixt the cup & the lip | 25 According to Aristotle |
| 15 Within the house | 26 By the water-courses |
| 16 Below all men | 27 Above his capacity |
| 17 By the well | 28 Beyond the Alps |
| 18 For a reward | 29 Towards London |
| 19 In his power | 30 Beyond the Indians |

II. And twelve govern an Ablative case, viz.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 From God | 7 Concerning trifles |
| 2 From an enemy | 8 Out of a well |
| 3 Of any body | 9 From an high Rock |
| 4 Without money | 10 Before all things |
| 5 Before the Master | 11 Without bread |
| 6 With loss | 12 For the poor |

III. Five govern an accusative and an Ablative case.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Privy to his Father | |
| 2 { Into the house | 4 Upon a stone |
| { In the house | |
| 3 { A little before night | 5 Under the earth |
| { In the night | |
| 6 So procul when it is a Preposition ; as,
Far from the City. Far from the wall.
To which you may add Tenuis up to ; as,
up to the privy parts.
up to the breast. up to the ears. | |
| 1 Obs. A Preposition is often understood ; as,
I expect to day, or at the furthest to morrow.
He appeared in the shape of a man. | |

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 9 Circum montem | 20 Per campos |
| 10 Circiter duo millia | 21 Ponè tergum |
| 11 Contra stimulum | 22 Post mortem |
| 12 Erga populum | 23 Prater casam |
| 13 Extra ades | 24 Propter vicinum |
| 14 Inter calicem & labrū | 25 Secundū Aristotelem |
| 15 Intra domum | 26 Secus decursus aquarum |
| 16 Infra omnes | 27 Supra captum |
| 17 Juxta fontem | 28 Trans Alpes |
| 18 Ob præmium | 29 Londinum versūs |
| 19 Penès illum | 30 ultra Isdos |

II. Duodecim verò regunt Ablativum, viz.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 A Deo | 7 De nugis |
| 2 Ab inimico | 8 E fonte |
| 3 Abs quovis | 9 Ex altâ rupe |
| 4 Absque pecuniâ | 10 Præ omnibus |
| 5 Coram Præceptore | 11 Siue Pane |
| 6 Cum damno | 12 Pro Pauperibus |

III. Quinque regunt Accusativum & Ablativum.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Clam { patrem
{ patre | 4 Super { lapidem
{ lapide |
| 2 In { rectum
{ recto | 5 Subter { terram
{ terra |
| 3 Sub { noctem
{ nocte | |

6. Item *Procul* quando fit Præpositio; ut,
Procul urbem. Procul muro.

Quibus addas *Tenūs*; ut,

Pabe tenūs.

Pectoribus tenūs. Aurium tenūs.

1. Obs. Præpositio sæpe subauditur; ut,

*Exspectat hodie, aut * summum grās*

Apparuit † humanā specie.

S 4

* ad.

† Sub.

2 Obs.

2 *Obs.* And oft times it is more than needs; as, *Abstain from vices. I will call my friends to this matter.*

3. *Obs.* A Preposition in Composition doth sometimes govern the same case, which it governed being without composition; as,

I pass by thee unsaluted. I leave my Office.

4 *Obs.* These seem to be singular expressions; as
To go out of the doors.

To prevent the windes in running.

XXXIV. Chap. 10. §.XXXIV. Rule, Of the Government of Interjections.

10 Inter-
jections,

Certain Interjections govern cases, viz.
1 *O* of Exclamation, a Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative; as,

O glad some day! O happy Husbandman! O pretty boy!
But of calling, a Vocative only; as,

Come hither o Galatée!

2. *Hens*, and *obe*, a Vocative; as,

O Syrus! Ho little Book!

3 *Pro* and *Proh*, *ah* and *vah*, an Accusative and Vocative; as, *O the faith of God and man!*

O holy Jupiter! Ah me poor man! Ah the Inconstancy!

Alas unhappy maid! Oh you Villain!

4 *Hen*, a Nominative, Dative, and Accusative, as,
Alas the Godliness. O the hated flock.

Alas for me poor man.

5 *Hem* and *apage*, an Accusative; as, *Fy upon craft.*

See Davus for you. Away with such complements.

6 *Hei* and *væ*, a Dative; as, *Woe is me.*

Woe be to thee.

1 *Obs.* Interjections are often put without a case;

as, *Alas, I am afraid.*

What madness, with a mischief.

2 *Obs.*

2 *Obs.* Sæpe verò redundat; ut, Abſtine à vitiis.
Amicos ad vocabo ad hanc rem.

3 *Obs.* Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem non-
nunquam, caſum regit quem & extra compoſitionem
regebat; ut,

Prætereo te in ſalutatum. Decedo Magiſtratu.

4 *Obs.* Limen exire. Curſu prevenire ventos, &c.
videntur ſingularia.

Cap. 10. §. XXXIV. *Regula, De Re-
gimine Interjectionum.*

XXXIV.

Quædam Interjectionum regunt caſus, viz 10 Interje-
1 *O* Exclamantis, Nominativum, Accuſa-
tionum, & Vocativum; ut,

O feſtus dies! O fortunatos agricolas! O formoſe puer!
Vocantis verò Vocativum tantum; ut,

Huc ades ô Galatæa.

2 *Heus & ohe*, Vocativum; ut,
Heus Syre! Ohe libelle!

3 *Pro & prob, ah & vah*, Accuſativum & Vocati-
vum; ut, *Prob* Deûm atque hominum fidem!

*Prob ſancte Jupiter! Ah me miſerum! Vah incon-
ſtantiam! Ah virgo infelix! Vah ſcelus!*

4 *Heu*, Nominativum, Dativum, & Accuſativum; ut,
Heu pietas. Heu ſtirpem inviſam.
Heu miſero mihi.

5 *Hem & apage*, Accuſativum; ut, *Hem aſtutias*
Hem Davum tibi. Apage iſtiusmodi ſalutem.

6 *Hei & vae* Dativum; ut, *Hei mihi.*
Vae tibi.

1 *Obs.* Interjectiones non rarò abſolutè & ſine ca-
ſu ponuntur; ut,

Hei vereor. Quæ malum dementia?

2 *Obs.*

2 Obs. And they are often understood ; as,
O me poor wretch ! O the base prank !
I think you wonder, Sirs !

Chap. II.

XXXV. §.XXXV. Rule. Of the Figures of a word.

Of Figures
1 Of a
Word.

Figure is a kind of speaking on some new fashion;
or, the altering of a word or speech from the usual
manner of speaking, and that by authority of good
writers.

Figure is { 1 Of a word : } which } Etymology.
of two } 2 Of Construction : } belongs } Syntaxis.
sorts, } to }

A Figure of a word (or that which belongs to Etymology) is that which any way changeth the form of a word ; and these be its chief kinds.

1 *Prothēsis*, is the putting a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word ; as, *Gnatus* for *natus*, *te-tuli* for *tuli*.

2 *Apharesis*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, *Ruit* for *eruit*, *temnere* for *contemnere*.

3 *Epenthesis*, is the putting of a letter or syllable into the middle of a word ; as, *Relligio* for *religio*, *induperator* for *imperator*.

4 *Syncope*, is the taking a letter or syllable from the middle of a word, as, *Abiit* for *abivit*, *dixi* for *dixisti*.

5 *Paragoge*, is the putting of a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *Dicier* for *dici*, *emorier* for *emori*.

6 *Apocope*, is the taking of a letter or syllable from the end of a word ; as, *Ingeni* for *ingenii*.

7 *Diarexis*, the dividing of one syllable into two ; as, *Aulāi* for *Aula*, *evolūisse* for *evoluisse*.

8 *Synarexis*,

2 Obs. Szpe etiam subintelliguntur; ut,
Me miserum ! Facinus indignum !
Credo vos mirari, iudices !

Cap. II.

§. XXXV. Regula, De Figuris dictionis. XXXV.

Figura est novatâ arte aliquâ dicendi forma; sive De Figuris
 mutatio formæ dictionis aut orationis, à com- I Dictionis,
 muni loquendi consuetudine, idque bonorum scripto-
 rum autoritate.

Est autem $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{1. Dictionis:} \\ \text{Figura} \\ \text{duplex,} \end{array} \right\} \text{quæ} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Etymologica} \\ \text{2. Constructionis:} \\ \text{Synlaxi} \end{array} \right\} \text{accidit.}$
Figura Dictionis (sive *Etymologica*) est quæ dictio-
 nis formam aliquo modo mutat; ejus hæ sunt præci-
 pue species.

1 *Prosthesis*, (sive *adjectio*) est appositio literæ vel
 syllabæ ad principium dictionis; ut, *Gnatus pro na-*
tus, tetuli pro tuli.

2 *Aphæresis*, (sive *detractio*) est ablatio literæ vel
 syllabæ à principio dictionis; ut, *Ruit pro eruit,*
temnere pro contemnere.

3 *Epenthesis* (sive *insertio*) est interpositio literæ
 vel syllabæ, in medio dictionis; ut, *Religio pro reli-*
gio, induperator pro imperator.

4 *Syncope* (sive *concisio*) est ablatio literæ vel syllabæ à
 medio dictionis; ut, *Abiit pro abiit, Dixti pro dixisti.*

5 *Paragoge*, (sive *productio*) est appositio literæ
 vel syllabæ ad finem dictionis; ut, *Dicier pro dici, e-*
morier pro emori.

6 *Apocope*, (sive *abscissio*) est ablatio literæ vel syl-
 labæ à fine dictionis; ut, *Ingeni pro Ingenii.*

7 *Diæresis* (sive *divisio*) est divisio unius syllabæ
 in duas; ut, *Anlâi pro anla, evoluisse pro evoluisse.*

8 *Synæresis*

8. *Synaresis*, is the contracting of two vowels into one syllable, which belong to two diverse syllables; as, *Thesēi* for *Thesēi*. *Vēmens* for *vehemens*.

9. *Metathesis*, is the mis-placing of a Letter or syllable; as, *Pistris* for *pristis*, a long Ship.

10. *Antithesis*, or *Antistæchon*, is the putting of a letter for a Letter; as, *Olli*, for *illi*.

11. *Tmesis*, is the parting of a compound word betwixt the parts whereof another is put; as, *Qua mihi cunque placent*. What things soever please me.

12. *Enallage*, is the putting of the Parts of Speech or their Accidents one for another; as, The people being as King i. e. ruling all abroad, *Agnus trepidare* for *trepidabat*, The Lamb did tremble.

13. *Archaismus*, is an old fashion of speaking, which is now out of use; as, *Valdē tonit* for *tonuit*, It thundered exceedingly. *Tam nulli consili*. So void of counsel. *Operam abuti*. To bestow his labour to a wrong end.

14. *Metaplasms*, is any change (at all) in a word; as, *Agrestē* for *agresti*.

Chap. 12.

XXXVI. §. XXXVI. Rule. Of the Figures of Construction.

2 Of Construction.

A *Figure of Construction*; is that which any way changeth the frame of a Speech. Its kinds are,

1. *Appositio*, is the putting together of two or more Substantives in the same case; as, *The River Rhine*. *The City Athens*. *M. T. C.*

And it is either to
 1. Restrain generality; as, *A living Creature*, *an Horse*.
 2. Take away equivocation; as, *The Dog-star*.
 3. To attribute a propriety to one; as, *Erasmus a man of most exact judgment*.
 2. *Syllep-*

8 *Synaresis*, (sive *complexio*) est contractio duarum vocalium (quæ ad diversas syllabas pertinent) in unâ syllabam; ut, *Thesēi*, pro *thesēi*, *vēmēns* pro *vehēmēns*.

9 *Metathesis* (sive *trajectio*) est transpositio literæ vel syllabæ; ut, *Pistris* pro *pristis*.

10 *Antithesis*, sive *Antistæchon*, (sive *oppositio*) est positio literæ pro literâ; ut, *Olli* pro *illi*.

11 *Tmesis*, est defectio vocis compositæ, cujus partibus alia interponitur; ut, *Quæ mihi cunque placeant*.

12 *Enallage* (sive *Antimeria*) partes Orationis, eamque Accidentia alia pro aliis ponit; ut, *Populum latè Regem*, i. e. regnantem. *Agnus trepidare*, pro *trepidabat*.

13 *Archaismus*, est vetus & jam obsoletus loquendi mos; ut, *Valdè tonit* pro *tonuit*. *Tam nulli consili*, pro *nullius consilii*. *Operam abuti*.

14 *Metaplasmus* (sive *transformatio*) est quævis mutatio vocis; ut, *Agreste* pro *Agresti*.

Cap. 12.

§.XXXVI. Regula, De Figuris Constructionis. XXXV.

Figura Syntaxeos sive Constructionis, est quæ orationis structurâ aliquo modo mutat. Ejus Species sunt Constructionis.

1 *Appositio*, est duorum vel plurium Substantivorum ejusdem casûs conjunctio; ut, *Flumen Rhenus. Urbs Athenæ. M. T. C.*

2 *Restringendæ generalitatis*; ut, *Animal equus*.

3 *Tollendæ æquivocationis*; ut, *Canis astrum*.

4 *Ad proprietatem attribuendam*; ut, *Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio*.

2 *Syllepsis*

2 *Syllepsis*, is the comprehending of the more unworthy gender or person under the more worthy; as,
I and my brother are white. Mars and Venus, both being naked, lye tyed fast together in the snares.

3 *Prolepsis*, is a brief expression of things; as,
Two Eagles flew, this from the East, that from the West. The people live, some in want, some in delights.
Bear ye one anothers burdens. Let both of us take an equal share.

4 *Zengma*, is the bringing back of one Verb or Adjective to diverse Suppositives, to one expressly, and to the other by supplying it; as,

John was a Fisher, and Peter.

The Husband and the wife is angry.

5 *Synthesis*, is a Speech which agreeth in sense, though not in words; as, *An armed nation fall on.*

We are both hurt. A brood-Goose. Two thousand slain.

6 *Antiptosis*, is the putting one case for another; as,
All kind of elegancy: Are ye Authors of it?

7 *Synecdoche*, is when that which belongs to a part, is spoken of the whole; as,

A Black-moor having white teeth: Wounded in the forehead: Flowers that have the names of Kings written on them.

8 *Ellipsis*, is the want of a word in a speech; as,
I remember that (I saw:)

I (thought) presently with my self.

9 *Pleonasmus*, is the abounding of a word in a speech beyond any necessity of it; as,

I saw it with these eyes.

I slaughtered him with his own sword.

10 *Asyndeton*, is the want of Conjunctions in a Speech; as, *It shall be done, will thou, nill thou: Eat, drink, play.*

11 *Poly syndeton*, is an over-plus of Conjunctions in a Speech; as,

2 *Syllepsis*, est comprehensio indignioris generis vel personæ sub digniore; ut,

Ego & frater sumus candidi.

Mars & Venus, impliciti laqueis, nudus uterq; jaceret.

3 *Prolepsis*; est pronuntiatio quædam rerum summaria; ut, *dua aquila volaverunt, hæc ab Oriente, illa ab Occidente. Populus vivit, alii in penuriâ, alii in deliciis. Alter alterius onera portate. Curemus æquam uterque partem.*

4 *Zeugma*, est Verbi vel Adjectivi, ad diversa supposita reductio, ad unum quidem expressè, ad alterum vero per supplementum; ut,

Joannes fuit Piscator & Petrus.

Maritus & uxor est irata.

5 *Synthesis*, est Oratio congrua sensu non voce; ut, *Gens armati ruunt.*

Uterque læsi sumus. Anser fæta. Duo millia cæsi.

6 *Antiptosis*, est positio casus pro casu; ut, *Omne, genus elegantia, i. e. omnis generis. Idne estis auctores? i. e. ejus.*

7 *Synecdoche* est, cum id quod partis est, attribuitur toti; ut *Æthiops albus dentes. Saucius frontem, vel fronte. Flores inscripti nomina Regum.*

8 *Ellipsis* est, defectio vocis in Oratione; ut, *Memini * videre, i. e. * me.*

*Ego continuò * mecum, i. e. * cogitabam.*

9 *Pleonasmus*, est abundantia vocis in oratione supra necessitatem; ut,

Vidi his oculis.

Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio.

10 *Asyndeton*, est conjunctionum in Oratione defectus; ut *Velis, nolis, fiet.*

Ede, bibe, lude.

11 *Polyasyndeton*, est Conjunctionum in Oratione redundantia; ut,

Somnus,

Sleep, and wine, and good chear, and whores, and baths, do weaken mens bodies and minds.

12 *Anastrophe*, is when a Preposition is set before its case; as,

The command is *in thy power*.

13 *Synchysis*, is a confused order of words; as,

¹ For it is ² bad for ³ such as ⁴ have ⁵ bleared-eyes and ⁶ raw ⁷ stomachs to play at ball.

14 *Hypallage*, is a placing of words contrariwise; as,

To commit the South winds to the Ships.

15 *Hellenismus*, is a going from the Latine use to imitate the Greeks; as,

Do not fight against two.

The rest which belong rather to the handsomings, than the making of a Speech, are to be sought for among the Rhetoricians.

Somnus, & vinum, & epulæ, & scorta, & balnea corpora atque animos enervant.

12 *Anastrophe*, est cum Præpositio suo casui postponitur; ut,

Te penès imperium.

13 *Synchysis*, est ordo Verborum confusus; ut,

¹ Namque ⁷ pilâ ³ lippis ² inimicum ⁴ & ⁶ ⁵ ludere *crudis*.

14 *Hypallage*, est mutua casuum permutatio; ut,

Dare classibus Austros.

15 *Hellenismus*, sive *Gracismus* est recessus à Latina consuetudine in imitationem Græcorum; ut,

Noli pugnare *duobus*, i. e. *contra duos*.

Cæteræ, quæ ad ornatum magis Orationis, quam structuram ejus spectant, à Rhetoricis inquirendæ sunt.

T

LIB.



Book. IV. OF PROSODIE.

IV.
Prosodie,

PROSODIE is the fourth part of Grammar, which teacheth the right pronunciation of words. A right pronunciation is that which observeth in every word, the Spirit, Tone, and time of the Syllables.

treateth of

Prosodia there-fore teacheth

1	Of the Spirits.	}	Chap. 1.
2	Of the Tones or Accents		
3	Of the time or Quantity of Syllables, Chap. 2, 3.		

Chap. 1. Of Spirits and Tones, or Accents.

1 Spirits.

1 **A** Spirit is the manner of uttering of a syllable with a breath; And it is

}	Sharp, with which a syllable is sharply uttered; as, <i>Hamus, homo.</i>
	Gentle or flat, with which a syllable is gently pronounced; as, <i>Amo, omnis.</i>

2 Tones.

2 A Tone, or Accent is the manner of pronouncing a syllable by lifting it up, or letting it down; as, *Probitatem vituperare.*

There be three sorts of Accents

{	1 An Acute, which sharpneth or listeth up a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke ascending towards the right hand (')
	2 A Grave, which flatteth or letteth down a syllable, & is marked with a thwart stroke descending towards the right hand (")
	3 A Circumflex, which uttereth a syllable with a longer stay, lifting it up as the Acute, and letting it down as the Grave Accent, and it is marked with a figure made of an Acute and Grave (^)

There

LIB. IV.

DE PROSODIA,

PROSODIA est quarta pars Grammatices, quæ
rectam vocum pronuntiationem tradit.

IV.
 Prosodia.

*Recta pronuntiatio est, quæ observat in unaquaque
 voce Spiritum, Tonum, & Tempus Syllabarum.*

Dicendum { ¹ Spiritibus, &
 ergo in { ² Tono, sive Accentibus } Cap. 1.
 Prosodiâ de { ³ Tempore sive Quantitate Syllabarum
 Cap. 2, 3.

agit de 1

Cap. 1.

De Spiritibus & Tonis, sive Accentibus.

¹ **S**piritus est ratio
 proferendi syl-
 labam cum Spiritu,
 estque vel { *Asper*, quo asperè proferitur
 syllaba; ut, *Hamus, homo.*
 { *Lenis*, quo syllaba leniter pro-
 feritur; ut, *Amo, omnis.*

² **Tonus** sive *Accentus* est ratio pronuntiandi syl-
 labam, eandem elevando vel deprimendo; ut, *Pro-*
bitatem vituperare.

Est au-
 tem Ac-
 centus
 triplex,
 { ¹ *Acutus*, qui syllabam acuit, sive attollit,
 & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dextram as-
 cendente (')
 { ² *Gravis*, qui syllabam gravat sive deprim-
 it, & notatur virgulâ obliquâ in dex-
 tram descendente (`)
 { ³ *Circumflexus*, qui syllabam longiori mo-
 rà effert; pariter attollens cum Acuto, &
 deprimens cum Gravi, & signatur notâ
 ex Acuto & Gravi conflatâ (^)

T 2

Tonorum

There be three *Rules of Tones or Accents*.

1 A word of one syllable being short or long by Position, hath an *Acute Accent*; as, *Mél, párs*: but if it be long by Nature, it is *Circumflected*; as, *Spér, flór*.

2 In a word of two syllables, if the first be long by Nature, and the latter short, the first is *Circumflected*; as, *Lána, mása*; but otherwise it hath an *Acute*; as, *Ebúr, Déus, sólers*.

3 A word of many syllables, having the last syllable save one long, when a long syllable followeth, it hath an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Libértas*, but when a short syllable followeth, it hath a *Circumflect* in the last syllable save one; as, *Amáre, Románu*.

But if it hath the last syllable save one short, the syllable before the last save one will have an *Acute* accent; as, *Dóminu*, *Póntifex*.

The rest of the syllables in words of many syllables have *Grave accents* (though not marked) as *Celebèrrimu*.

1 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Facio* have an *Acute* in the last syllable save one; as, *Benefácis, malefácis*.

2 *Obs.* The Compounds of *Fis. fit*, have an *Acute* in the last syllable; as, *Calefit, benefít*.

3 *Obs.* Grammarians do often confound a *Circumflect* with an *Acute*, because it is scarce differenced from it in pronuntiatiön.

There

Tonorum regulæ sunt tres.

1 Monosyllaba dictio, brevis, aut Posicione longa, acuitur; ut, *Mél, párs*; at Natura longa Circumfle-ctitur; ut, *Spés, flós*.

2 In Dissyllabâ dictione, si prior longa fuerit na-turâ, & posterior brevis, prior Circumfleclitur; ut, *Lána, mûsa*; in cæteris verò acuitur; ut, *Bónus, Dénus, sólers*.

3 Dictio Polysyllaba, si penultimam longam ha-bet sequente longâ, penultimam acuit; ut, *Libértas*; sequente verò brevi, Circumfleclit penultimam; ut, *Amáre, Ramárus*.

Sin brevem habet penultimam, acuit antepenulti-mam; ut, *Dóminus, Póntifex*.

Cæteræ omnes syllabæ in Polysyllabis gravantur, etsi non noceantur, ut, *Celebèrrimus*.

1 Obs. Composita à *Facio*, penultimam acuant, ut, *Benefácis, malefácis*.

2 Obs. Composita à *Fis, fit*, ultimam acuant, ut, *Calefit, malefit*.

3 Obs. Grammatici circumflexum cum acuto sæpe confundunt, quòd ab eo vix prolatione discerni-tur.

There be five things which alter the Rules of the Accents.

I. *Difference*, for which sake

1 Some words are *Circumflexed* in the last syllable, as the Ablative case of the first Declension *Musa*, whereby it may differ from the Nominative and Vocative *Musa*. Thus *ergo* for *causa* differs from *ergo* the Conjunction.

2 Some have an *Acute* accent in the last syllable, as many Adverbs, to difference them from other parts of Speech; *viz. una, aliqua, puta, pone, &c.* which in the end of a sentence have an *Acute* accent, but in the beginning or middle thereof a *Grave* accent.

3 Some have an *Acute* in the syllable before the last syllable save one; as, *Déinde, deorsum, quínimo, intereá loci, níhilóminus, quátenus, &c.* when they are not several words; as are *intérea loci, níhilo mínus, pábētēnus, &c.*

N. B. An Accent is now seldom marked, except for difference sake, for then it is noted not only in the last syllable, but also in the last syllable save one, and in that which is before the last save one; as, *occido, occido.*

II. *Transposition*, or mis-placing words. For when prepositions be set after their cases, they have a *Grave* accent; as, *Transstra pèr & remos Te penès imperium.*

III. *Attraction*, when the last syllable of the word going before doth draw unto it the accent of the Inclinerive Conjunction; as, *Lamináque laurúsque Dei.*

But when there is an apparent Composition; the accent is not altered; as, *ítaque, úndique, hícce.*

IV. *Concision*, when words are cut off by *Syncope*, or *Apocope*, for then they keep the accent of the whole word; as, *Virgili* for *Virgilií. Arpinás* for *Arpinátis.* So also *húc, illúc,* for *húcce, illúcce*; and the Compounds of *dic, duc, fac*; as, *Benedíc, redúc, benesác.*

V. The

Quinque sunt quæ Tonorum regulas perturbant, sive Tonus mutant.

I. *Differentia*, cujus causâ

1. Quædam dictiones *Circumflectuntur* in ultima; ut, Ablativus primæ Declinationis *Musâ*, quod differat à Nominativo & Vocativo *Musa*, Sic ergo pro causâ differt ab ergo Conjunctione.

2. Quædam acuiuntur, ut Adverbia plurima, nè videantur esse aliæ partes Orationis; viz. *undâ*, ali-
quò, *putâ*, *ponè*, &c. quæ in fine sententiarum acuiuntur, in consequentia vero gravantur.

3. Quædam Antepenultimam suspendunt; ut *Déinde*, *déorsum*, *quínimo*, *interea loci*, *nihilominus*, *quatenus*, &c. cum non sunt orationes diversæ; ut sunt, *Interea loci*, *nihilominus*, *pube ténus*, &c.

N. B. Accentus nota nusquam ferè jam apponitur, nisi differentię causâ, tunc enim signatur non tantum in ultima, sed etiam in penultima, & antepenultima; ut, *occido*, *occido*.

II. *Transpositio*, Præpositiones enim postpositæ suis casibus gravantur; ut, *Transstra pèr* & remos. *Te pèr* imperium.

III. *Attractio*, cum scil. ultima syllaba præcedentis dictionis attrahit sibi Accentum Encliticæ Conjunctionis; ut, *Luminâque laurûsque Dei*.

I. *Obs.* Ubi vero manifesta est Compositio, non variatur tonus; ut, *itaque*, *undique*, *hæcine*.

IV. *Concisio*, cum dictiones per Syncopen aut Apocopen castrantur; tunc enim tonum retinent integræ dictionis; ut, *Virgili* pro *Virgîlii*, *Arpinâs* pro *Arpinâtis*. Sic *hæc*, *illâc*, pro *hæcce*, *illæcce*; & Composita à *Dic*, *duc*, *fac*; ut, *Benedic*, *redic*, *benefac*.

V. *The idiom*, or the propriety of the language; For Greek words, if they come whole to the Latines, (*i. e.* if they be expressed with the very same letters) they keep their own accent: as, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

But if they become altogether Latine, they keep the Latine accent: as, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. If the proper accent of a strange word be unknown, it will be most safe to pronounce it according to the Latine accent.

2 Those syllables which are common, are pronounced short in Prose, *i. e.* where a mute and a liquid do follow a short vowel, as, *Celebris*, *Cathedra*: otherwise they are pronounced long, as, *Unus*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3 An Interrogation doth alter the accent: as, *Sicine* *ais* *Parmend*?

Chap. 2.

Of the Quantity of the First and Middle Syllables.

3 Time or Quantity.

Time, or Quantity, is the measure of pronouncing a Syllable, or the space of tuning a Vowel, whereby we measure how long it is a pronouncing.

According to Time, or Quantity, a Syllable is said to be

{	Short, which hath one time, or which is quickly pronounced: as, <i>Lēgē</i> , whose time is thus marked (˘)
	Long, which hath two times, or which hath the space of two short times; as, <i>Audīrent</i> , whose long time is thus marked (—)

According

V. *Idioma*, sive linguæ proprietates.

Dictiones enim Græcæ, si integræ ad Latinos veniant, (i. e. si iisdem planè literis proferantur) servant tonum suum: ut, *Metamorphosis*, *Orthographia*.

Sin prorsus Latinæ fiunt, Latinum quoque tonum servant; ut, *Georgica*, *Philosophia*, *idolum*.

N. B. 1 Si ignoretur proprius peregrinæ vocis tonus, tutissimum fuerit juxta Latinum accentum illam enuntiare.

2 Syllabæ communes (i. e. ubi muta cum liquida sequitur vocalem brevem) in prosa oratione corripuntur; ut, *Celebris*, *Cathedra*; in aliis verò dictionibus producuntur; ut, *unūna*, *illius*, *ubique*.

3 Interrogatio etiam tonum transfert; ut, *Siccine ais Parmeno?*

Cap. 2.

De Tempore, sive Quantitate Primarum & Mediarum Syllabarum.

Tempus, sive Quantitas, est syllabæ pronuntiandæ mensura, sive spatium modulandæ vocalis quo scil. moram ejus in pronuntiando metimur.

3 De Tempore sive Quantitate.

Secundum *Tempus*, sive *Quantitatem*, syllaba dicitur

Brevis, quæ unum habet tempus, sive quæ celeriter pronuntiatur; ut, *Lēgēre*; cujus tempus breve sic notatur (˘)

Longa, quæ duo tempora habet, sive quæ spatium duarum brevium exigit; ut, *Aūdīrēt*, cujus tempus longum sic notatur (—)

Secun-

According to
the order which
they have in
words, Syllables
are nam'd

First,	which have the	first	place in a word
Middle		middle	
Last,		last	

The quantity of the
first syllables are
known eight man-
ner of wayes : by

Of the first.

- I. Position.
- II. A vowel before a vowel.
- III. A Diphthong.
- IV. Derivation.
- V. Composition.
- VI. Preposition.
- VII. Rule.
- VIII. Example or Authority.

But the Middle Syllables have besides these a particular way of being known, which you may see IX.

I. According to Position,

1 A Vowel set before two Consonants, or a double consonant in the same word, is long; as, *Vēntus*, *āriū*, *patrīzō*. But the Compounds of *jugum* make *i* short; as, *Bijugum*.

2 And if a Consonant doth close the foregoing word, and the word following beginneth with a consonant, the vowel foregoing shall be long; as, *Majōr sūm quān cui possit fortuna nocere*.

3 A short vowel in the end of a word, when the word following beginneth with two consonants, sometimes, but seldom is made long; as,

Oculta spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4 A short vowel before a mute, with a liquid following is common, i. e. long or short; as,

Et primū volūcri similis, mox verā volūcris,

But a long vowel is not changed; as, *Aratrum*, *Simulacrum*.

II. A Vowel before another in the same word is short; as, *Dēus*, *nībil*.

But

Secundum ordinem suum quem habent in dictionibus syllabæ dicuntur	<i>Prime</i> <i>Mediæ</i> <i>Ultimæ</i>	<i>primum</i> <i>medium</i> <i>ultimū</i>	locum in dictione quavis occupant
-------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

I. Positione.

Primarum syllabarum quantitas octo modis cognoscuntur, viz.

II. Vocali ante vocalem.

III. Diphthongo.

IV. Derivatione.

V. Compositione.

VI. Præpositione.

VII. Regulâ.

VIII. Exemplo, seu Autoritate.

I.
Primarum.

Mediarum verò peculiaris est cognoscendi modus quem videre licet IX.

I. Juxta Positionem.

1 Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eadem dictione longa est; ut, *Vēnus*, *āxus*, *patri-um*: Sed Composita à *jūgum* corripunt; ut, *Bijūgum*.

2 Quòd si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens longa erit; ut,

Majōr sūm quā cui possit fortuna nocere.

3 Vocalis brevis in fine dictionis, sequente à duabus consonantibus inchoante, interdum, sed rarius producitur; ut,

Occultā spolia, & plures de pace triumphos.

4 Vocalis brevis ante mutam sequente liquida, communis redditur; ut,

Et primò volūcri similis, mox vera volūcris.

Longa verò vocalis non mutatur; ut, *Atātrum*, *Simulācrum*.

II. Vocalis ante alteram in eadem dictione brevis est; ut, *Dēus*, *nīhil*.

Sed

But 1 Genitive cases in *ius*, make the last syllable have one common; as, *unius, illius*. Except that *i* in *alterius* is alwayes short, and in *alius* alwayes long.

2 In the fifth Declension *e* between a double *i* is long; as, *Faciēi*.

3 *F* in *Fio* is every where long, but where *e* and *r* follow it both together; as,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4 *O*be hath the first syllable doubtful; *Ob*eu alwayes long.

5 A Vowel before another in Greek words is long; as, *Dicite Pærides*; and in Possessives; as, *Anēia nutritrix*.

But the quantity of Greek syllables is better to be found from the Greeks.

6 In forraign words the quantity is doubtful; as, *Michaël, Abraham*.

III. Every Diphthong is long; as, *Autum, Musa*. And syllables that are Contracted; as, *Cōgo, nūl*.

But *præ* before a vowel is often made short; as, *Ver præit æstatem*; and but seldom long; as, *Domino præirit Arion*. *e* in *Meotis* is doubtful.

IV. Derivatives have the same quantity that their Primitives have; as, *ā*mator of *ā*mo. Yet there be some excepted.

1 Which are derived from them that be short, and are long, viz.

<i>Vox, vocis,</i>	} of	<i>Vdeo.</i>	<i>Fecundus</i>	} of	<i>Juuo.</i>
<i>Lex, legis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>	<i>Vomer</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, regis,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>	<i>Lāterna</i>		<i>Lāreo.</i>
<i>Sedes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>	<i>Tēgula</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Jūnior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis.</i>	<i>Mācero</i>		<i>Mācer</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo.</i>	<i>Pēnuria</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

Sed i Genitivi in *ius*, penultimam habent communem; ut, *unius, illius*. Licet i in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2 In quinta declinatione e inter geminum i longa fit; ut, *Faciēi*.

3 Fi in *Fio* ubique longa est, nisi sequatur e & r simul; ut,

Omnia jam fient, fieri quæ posse negabas.

4 Obe primam syllabam ancipitem habet; *Obeu* semper longa.

5 Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pærides*; & in Possessivis, ut, *Antea nutrix*.

Sed Græcarum quantitas à Græcis rectius addiscenda est.

6 In peregrinis quantitas est ambigua; ut, *Mithæi, Abraham*.

III Omnis Diphthongus longa est; ut, *Åurum, Māsa* Syllabæ item Contractæ; ut, *Cægo, nîl*.

Sed *præ* ante vocalem sæpius corripitur; ut, *Ver præt æstatem*; rarius producitur; ut, *Domino prairit Arion, e in Maotis* est anceps.

IV. *Derivata* eandem cum *Primitivis* quantitatem sortiuntur; ut, *āmator* primâ brevi ab *āmo*. Excipiuntur tamen quædam.

1 Deducta à brevibus, quæ producuntur, viz.

<i>Vox, vōcis,</i>	} à }	<i>Vōco.</i>	<i>Fūcundus,</i>	} à }	<i>Fūvo.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis,</i>		<i>Lēgo.</i>	<i>Vōmer,</i>		<i>Vōmo.</i>
<i>Rex, rēgu,</i>		<i>Rēgo.</i>	<i>Lāterna,</i>		<i>Lāteo.</i>
<i>Sēdes,</i>		<i>Sēdeo.</i>	<i>Tēgula,</i>		<i>Tēgo.</i>
<i>Jūnior,</i>		<i>Jūvenis</i>	<i>Māsero,</i>		<i>Mācer.</i>
<i>Hūmanus,</i>		<i>Hōmo</i>	<i>Pēnuria,</i>		<i>Pēnus.</i>

= Deducta

2 Which are derived of them that are long; and are short, viz.

Dux, dūcūs,	} of	Dūco	Frāgor,	} of	Frā-
Dīcax,		Dico	Frāgilis		go.
Fīdes,		Fīo	Nōto, tas,		Nōtu.
ārena, ārista		āreo	Nāto, tas,		Nātu.
Pōsui,		Pōno	Dīsertus,		Dīsero.
Gēnui,		Gīgno	Sōpor,		Sōpio.

And some others of both sorts.

V. Compound words have the quantity of the Simple; as, Pōtens, impōtens, Sōlor, consōlor.

1 Except	Innūba,	} of Nūbo	Cognitum,	} of Nōtum
	Pronūba		Agnitum,	
	Dejēro,	} of Jūro	Perstiturus,	} of Staturus,
	Dejēro,		Restiturus,	

2 Also the Compounds of Dico, that end in dīcus; as, Maledīcus.

3 Ambītus the Noun hath i short, Ambītus the Participle hath i long.

4 Idem in the Masculine gender hath i long, in the Neuter i short.

5 In words that are Compounded

1 With Verbs, the former part ending in e is short; as, Valēdico.

2 With Participles, bi, tri, tre, du, the same are short; as, Bīceps, trīceps, trīcenti, dūcenti.

3 With Nouns the former part ending in i, y, u, is short; as, Tardīgradus, Polīdorus, cornūpetā.

Except quīvis and some others.

6 These words make long the last syllable of their simples which is common, viz: ubīque, ubīlibet, ibīdem, quāndōque, quāndōcunque, but dō in quāndōquidem is short.

VI. Of the Prepositions,

1 A, de, e, se, prae, and those that end in ā, are long, except a vowel follow; as, unda dēhiscens.

2 Pro the Latine syllable is long, except in these words,

2 Deducta à longis, quæ corripuntur, viz.

Dux, dūch,	Dūco.	Frāgor,	Frā-
Dīcax	Dīco.	Frāgilis,	go.
Fīdes,	Fīo.	Nōto, as	Nōtu
ārena, ārista	āreo	Nāto, as	Nātu.
Pōsui,	Pōno.	Dīsertus	Dīssero.
Gēnuī,	Gīgno.	Sōpor,	Sōpio.

Atque alia nonnulla utriusque generis.

V. Composita simplicium quantitatem sequuntur; ut, Pōtens, impōtens. Sōlor, consōlor.

1 Exci-	Innūba,	} à Nūbo.	Cognītum,	} à Nōtū
piuntur	Pronūba		Agnītum,	
tamen	Dejēro,	} à Jūro.	Perstīturus	} à Stātū-
	Pejēro		Restīturus	rus.

2 Item Composita à Dīco in dīcus; ut, Maledīcus.

3 Ambītus Nomen corripitur, ambītus Participium producitur,

4 Idem Masculinum producit ī, Neutrū vērō corripit,

5 In Compositis.

1 Cum verbis, prior pars vocis in e desinens corripitur; ut, Valēdico.

2 Cum particulis, bi, tri, tre, du, eadem corripuntur; ut, Bīceps, trīceps, trēcenti, dūcenti.

3 Cum Nominibus, prior pars exiens in i, y, u, corripitur; ut, Tardīgradus, Polīdorus, cornūptā, excipe quīvis & pauca alia.

6 Hæ voces ultimam syllabam simplicium, quæ communis est, producunt, viz. ubique, ubīlibet, ibīdem, quāndōque, quāndōcūque, sed de in quāndōquidem corripitur.

VI. Ex Prapositionibus.

1 A, de, ē, se, præ, & quæ in a desinunt, ubique producuntur, nisi vocali sequente; ut, unda dēbiscens.

2 Pro Latina longa est, præterquā in istis, Pro-

words, *Præcella*, *præfugus*, *prætervus*, *prænepos*, *prænep-
tis*, *præfatus*, *præfiteor*, *præfundus*, *præfificor*, *præfari*,
præpare, *præfugio*, *præfetto*, *præpello*, *præpulso*. But

1. *Præpago*, *gas*, and *Præpago*, *gnis* } have *Pro* doubtful,

2. *Pro* the Greek syllable is short; as, *Præpheta*,
Prætagus, *Præmetheus*, &c. but in *Propino* it is
doubtful.

3. *Di* is long, except in *Dyrmo*, and *dysertus*.

4. The rest of the Prepositions be short, if position
do not hinder; for *re* in *refert* it is good, cometh of
res, and is therefore long.

VII. There be } 1. Of Preterperfect tenses and Su-
two Rules, } pines of two syllables.
2. Of Preterperfect tenses that dou-
ble the first syllable.

1. Every Preterperfect tense and Supine of two
syllables, hath the first syllable long, as, *Légi*, *ēmi*, *mō-
tum*, *lātum*. Except

1. Six Preterperfect tenses, *Fēdi*, *bēbi*, *dēdi*, *scēdi*,
tūli, *sēti*.

2. Nine Supines, *Dātum*, *fātum*, *cūtum* (of *cio*)
ītum, *lītum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rātum*, *vītum*.

2. Preterperfect tenses that double the first syl-
lable of their Present tense, have their first syllable
short; as, *Pēpendi*, *mōmordi*, *spōspōdi*.

VIII. The quantity of such syllables as come not
under the rules foregoing is to be known by the
Example and *Authority* of Poëts, and this is the most
certain and most general way.

1. Because every rule resteth upon the Authority
of the Antients.

2. Because the quantity of many syllables is not
known but by examples.

1. These words have their first syllable common,
viz.

words, *Præcella, præfugus, prætervus, præncipos, præncip-
tia, præfanus, præfiteor, præfundus, præficiscor, præfari,
præparo, præfugio, præfectio, præpello, præpulso.* Sed,

1. *Propago, gas,*
 &
 2. *Propago, glinis* } *Pro habent ancipitem,*

3. *Pro Græca corripitur; ut, Præphera, Prælogus,
Præmetheus, &c.* Sed in *propino* anceps est.

3. *Di* producitur, nisi in *Præmo, & disertus.*

4. Reliquæ Præpositiones, si positio sinat, corripiuntur; nam *re* in *refert* pro *utile est*, à nomine *res* est, ideoque producitur.

VII. Regula } 1. De Præteritis & Supinis dissylla-
 est duplex } bis.
 2. De primam Præteriti geminanti-
 bus.

1. Omne Præteritum & Supinum dissyllabum priorem habet longam; ut, *Lēgi, ēni, mōrum, fātum.*

Excipiuntur tamen,

1. Sex Præterita, *Fēdi, bēbi, dēdi, scēdi, tūi, fletū.*

2. Novem supina, *Dātum, fātum, cītum (à cieo) itum, lītum, quītum, sītum, rātum, itum.*

3. Primam præteriti geminantiā, primam itidem brevem habent; ut, *Fērendi, mēmordi, sēspondi.*

VIII. Quarum syllabarum quantitas sub prædictas rationes non cadit, à Poëtarum usu, *Exemplo*, atque *Authoritate* petenda est; atque hæc ratio est omnium certissima & generalissima,

1. Quia regula omnis authoritate veterum nititur.

2. Quia multarum syllabarum modulus non nisi exemplo cognoscitur.

3. Hæc primam syllabam habent communem;

vix, Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Crathys, Crescus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, Orion, Pachinus, palatium, Pelion Pyrene, rudo, Sycheus, Sycanius, &c.

2 And these their middle; *Batavus, connubium, ficedula, malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.*

2
Middle.

IX. Middle syllables are partly known the same way that the first, and partly, 1 By the increase of the Genitive case, And 2 the Analogy of the Conjugation.

1 The increase of the Genitive case is, when a Noun hath more syllables in the Genitive case singular, than it had in the Nominative, and according to it, the last syllable save one of Nouns increasing,

1 Sharp, is long.

2 Flat, is short,

2 The Analogy of Conjugation is, when Verbs follow their common Rule of Conjugating, and according to this.

a	{ the character or note of the	First	{ Conjugation is	long.
e		Second		long.
ë		Third		short,
i		Fourth		long.

But in *Do* and its Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation, *a* is short; as in *dāmus, circumdāmus, dābis, circumdābis, dāre, circumdāre.*

The syllables *rimus* and *ritis* in the Preterperfect tense of the Subjunctive mood are short; as, *Amaverim, amaveritis*; but long in the Future tenses; as, *Amaverimus, amaveritis*.

Latine Adjectives in *inus* make (*i*) long; as, *Clandestinus, mediastinus*. Except these following, *Diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, serotinus, Oleaginus, saginus, cedrinus, carbasinus*, and others that signify matter, or that come of the names of metals, and end in *inus*; as, *Chrysellinus, myrrhinus, &c.* which are derived of Greek Nouns.

vix. Britannus, Bithynus, Cacus, Cosyra, Craihys, Creticus, Curetes, Fidene, Gradivus, Hinulus, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, Lycas, orion, pachinus, palatium, Pelion, Pyrcus, rudo, Sycheus, Sycanius, cum quibusdam aliis.

1. Hæc verò mediam; Batavus, connubium, Ficedula; malea, Pharsalia, Sidonius, &c.

1 X. *Mediæ syllabæ* partim eadem ratione quâ primæ, partim etiam, 1 Ex incrementis Genitivi, atque, 2 Conjugationis Analogiâ cognosci possunt. 2. Mediarum

1 Incrementum Genitivi est quando Nomen plures habet syllabas in Genitivo singulari, quàm in Nominativo; juxta hoc, penultima Nominum crescentium.

1 Acute, longa est.

2 Graviter brevis est.

2 Analogiâ Conjugationis est; quando Verba sequuntur communem regulam conjugandi; & juxta hanc.

ā	{ index	Primæ	{ Conjugationis	longa	{ est.
ē		Secundæ		longa	
ē		Tertiæ		brevis	
ī		Quartæ		longa	

Sed in *Do* & ejus Compositis, quando primæ sunt Conjugationis, a brevis est; ut, *Dāmus, circundāmus dābis, circundābis, dāre circundāre.*

Syllabæ *rimus* & *ritis* in Præterito modi Subjunctivi sunt breves; ut, *Amaverim, amaveris*; in Futuro verò longæ; ut, *Amaverimus, amaveritis.*

Adjectiva in *inus* Latina penultimam producant; ut, *Clandestinus, mediastinus, &c.* Præter hæc sequentia, *diutinus, craftinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornotinus, ferotinus, oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus, &c.* reliqua materialia, sive à metallorum nominibus formata in *inus*; ut, *Chrysalinus, myrrhinus, &c.* à Græcis deducta.

Chap. 3.

Of the Quantity of the last Syllables.

3
And last
Syllables.

T He last syllables are reckoned according to the order of the letters with which words do end; thus,

A are long; as, *Amā*, *contrā*, *ergā*.

Except

1 *Putā*, *itā*, *quā*, *eīā*.

2 Likewise all cases in *a*, besides Vocatives in *a*, of Greek Nouns in *as*; as, *ō Anīā*, and the Ablative case of the first Declension; as, *Musā*.

3 Numerals in *iginta*, which have *a* common; as, *Triginta*, *quadraginta*.

B are short; as, *ab*.

Except

1 Hebrew words; as, *Jaiqb*.

C are long; as, *ac*, *scī*, and *hic* the Adverb.

Except

1 *Lā*, *nē*, *donē*, which are short.

2 *Fac*, and the Pronoun *hic* are common, as, also its Neuter Gender *hoc*, so that it be not of the Ablative case.

D are short; as, *ad*.

1 Except Hebrew words; as, *Daiid*.

E are short; as, *Maē*, *penē*, *legē*, *scribē*.

Except

1 Nouns of the Fifth Declension in *e*; as, *Fiaē*, *diē*, *rē*, with the Adverbs that come of them; as, *Hodiē*, *quarē*.

2 *Famē*, now of the Third Declension short, was heretofore of the Fifth long.

Words that end in

Cap. 3.

De Ultimarum Syllabarum Quantitate.

Ultimæ syllabæ numerantur juxta ordinem litterarum finalium; sic,

³
Et ultimarum syllabarum.

A producuntur; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā.*

Excipe

1 *Puā, uā, quā, ejā.*

2 Item omnes casus in *a*, præter Vocativos in *a*, à Græcis in *as*; ut, *Θέα, & Ablativum primæ declinationis*; ut, *Musā.*

3 Numeralia in *ginta*, quæ *a* habent communem, ut, *Triginta, quadraginta.*

B brevia sunt; ut *ab.*

Excipe

1 Hebræa; ut, *ἄς.*

C producuntur; ut, *ās, sic, & hic Adverbium.*

Excipe

1 *Lac, nec, donec*, quæ contrahuntur.

2 *Fac*, & pronomen *hic* sunt communia, item & ejus Neutrum *hoc*, modo non sit Ablativi casus.

D brevia sunt; ut, *ad.*

1 Excipe Hebræa; ut, *David.*

E brevia sunt; ut, *Marē, penē, legē, scribē.*

Excipe

1 Voces Quintæ Inflectionis in *e*; ut, *Fide diē, rē*, cum Adverbiis inde enatis; ut, *Hodiē, quare*

2 *Famē*, quæ nunc Tertiæ Inflectionis brevis, olim quintæ longa fuit.

The Latine Grammar.

3 The second person singular of the Imperative mood, of the Active voice, of the second Conjugation; as, *Docē, movē, manē*.

But *e* in *Cave, vide, salve*, and *vale* is sometimes short.

4 Monosyllables in *e*; as, *Mē, tē, cē*, except, *quē, nē, vē*, the Inclivative Conjunctions.

5 Adverbs in *e* derived of Adjectives; as, *Doctē, valdē*, and *fermē, ferē*: yet *benē* and *malē* are short.

6 Words that in Greek are writ with an *Eta*, or *e* long; as, *Anchisē, cetē, tempē*, are long; as, *Dominī, amarī*.

Except

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, uti* for *ut*, and *cui* a word of two syllables, which are common.

2 *Nis* and *quas* which are short, as are also the Vocative cases of Greek Nouns, whose Genitive singular endeth in *os*; as, *Pallidz, Daphnz*.

L are short; as, *Animāl, mēl*.

Except

1 *Sāl*, and *Sōl*.

2 Hebrew words which are writ in Greek with a long vowel; as, *Michaēl*.

N are long; as, *Pēān, Hymēn, nōn*.

Except

1 *Forsān, forsītān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn*.

2 Words cut off by Apocope; as, *Mēn, vidēn*.

3 *In* with its Compounds; as, *Exīn, subīn, &c.*

4 Nouns ending in *en*, whose genitive case singular hath *z* is short; as, *Carmēn, pestēn, libicēn*,

5 Greek

Words that end in

3 Secundæ personæ singulares imperativo-
rum Activorum secundæ Conjugationis; ut,
Docē, movē, manē.

Sed e in *Cave, vide, salve, & vale* quando-
que etiam corripitur.

4 Monosyllaba in e; ut, *mē, tē, cē*, præter
quē, nē, vē, Encliticas Conjunctiones.

5 Adverbia in e, ab Adjectivis deducta;
ut, *doctē, valdē*, item *fermē, & ferē*. Benē ta-
men & malē corripuntur,

6 Quæ à Græcis per η scribuntur; ut, *An-
chisē, cetē, tempē.*

longa sunt; ut, *Dominī, amāī.*

I Excipe

1 *Mibi, tibi, sibi, nobis, ibi, uti* pro *ut*, & *cui*
diffyllabum, quæ sunt communia

2 *Nisī & quasī* quæ corripuntur, ut & Da-
tivi & vocativi Græcorum, quorum Geniti-
vus in os breve exit; ut, *Pallidī, Daphnī.*

L corripuntur; ut, *Animā, mēl.*

Excipe

1 *Sāl & sāl.*

2 Hebræa, quæ Græcè scribuntur per voca-
lem longam; ut, *Michaēl.*

producuntur; ut, *Pæān, hymēn, nōn.*

N

Excipe

1 *Forsān, forsītān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, ve-
runtamēn.*

2 Voces per Apocopen castratas; ut, *Mén',
vidén'.*

3 In cum Compositis; ut, *Exīn, subīn, &c.*
Nomina in en, quorum Genitivum īnis
correptum habet; ut, *Carmēn, pestīēn, tibiēn.*

V 4

5 Græca

Finite in

5 Greek Nouns in *on* by little *o*; as, *Ri-
ōn, Pejiōn, Cancasōn*.

6 Greek Nouns in *in, yn, and an*, whose Nominative case is short; as, *Alexin, Ilyn, Maiān*.

0 are common; as, *Amo, virgo, porro, docendo*,
Except

1 Oblique cases in *o* which are alwayes made long, as, *Dominō serzō*.

2 Adverbs derived of Adjectives; as, *Tan-
tō, fatō, &c.* But *sedulō, crebrō, and mutō* are common, rather to be made long.

3 Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *dō, sō, and eō* for *causā*.

4 *Ambo, duo, ego, homo, citō, modō*, with its compounds, are seldom read long.

5 Greek words in *o* are long; as, *Sapibō*, unless they come of Nominative cases in *on* from which (*n*) is taken away; as *Leo, Plato*, which for the most part are short.

R are short; as, *Casār, tortulār, pēr, discēr*,
Except,

1 *Fār, lār, nār, vēr, fūr, cūr, and pār*, with its compounds. *Cor* is once read long in Ovid.

Molle menū levibus cor est violabile telus.

2 Greek words that end in *er* with *e* long; as, *Aēr, eratēr, except patēr, matēr*.

S have terminations answerable to the number of vowels.

as are long; as, *Anās, muās*.

Except,

1 Greek nouns, whose Genitive case singular endeth in *as*; as, *Arcās, Pallās*.

2 The Accusatives plural of Nouns increas-
ing; as, *Herās, Phillidās*.

es are long; as, *Anchisē, sedēs, docēs*.

Except

Words that end in

5 Græca in *on* per *o* parvum; ut, *Ilion*,
Pelion, *Caucasōn*.

6 Græca in *in*, *yn*, & *an*, quorum Nominativus est brevis; ut, *Alexin*, *Iryn*, *Maiān*.

O Communia sunt; ut, *Amo*, *virgo*. per *o*, *docendo*,
Excipe.

1 Obliquos in *o*, qui semper producuntur;
ut, *Dominō*, *servō*.

2 Adverbia ab Adjectivis deducta; ut, *Tantō*,
falsō, &c. Sed *sedulō*, *crebrō*, *mutuō*, sunt
communia rarius producenda.

3 Monosyllaba in *o* producuntur; ut, *dō*, *βō*,
item *ergō* pro *causā*.

4 *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *citō*, *modō*, cum com-
positis vix leguntur producta.

5 Græca per *o* producuntur; ut, *Sapphō*,
nisi descendant, à Nominativis in *o* quibus
adimitur; ut, *Leo*, *Plato*, quæ plerunque
corripiuntur.

R Corripiuntur; ut, *Cæsār*, *torculār*, *pēr*, *diciēr*,
Excipe.

1 *Fār*, *lār*, *xār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, & *pār*, cum com-
positis, *Cor* semel apud Ovidium producitur.
Molle meum levibus cōr est violabile telis.

2 Græca in *er*, ut, *Acēr*, *Cratēr*, excipe
patēr & *matēr*.

pares cum numero vocalium terminationes ha-
bent.

S producuntur; ut, *amār*, *musār*,

as Excipe.

1 Græca, quorum Genitivus singularis in
dos exit; ut, *Artās Pallās*.

2 Accusativos plurales nominum crescen-
tium; ut, *Heroās Phillidās*.

longa sunt; ut, *Anchisēs*, *sedēs*, *docēs*.

Excipe

Except

1 Nouns in *es* of the Third Declension that increase short; as, *Milēs, divēs*. But of these, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs* and *pēs*, with its Compounds, are long.

2 *Es* of *sum*, with its Compounds, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, and *penēs* the Preposition, are short.

Neuters singular, and Nominatives plural of Greek Nouns that end in *es* not *eis*; as, *Cacoethēs, Cyclopēs*,

is are short; as, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*

Except

1 Oblique cases plural in *is*; as, *Musīs, dominīs*, and *queīs* for *quibus*.

2 Words that make long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing; as, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3 Which are made in *is* of the Diphthong *ei*; as, *Omnīs, Simoīs*.

4 All Monosyllables; as, *Vīs, līs*, besides *is, bis*, and *quīs*.

5 *Velīs* with its Compounds, *malīs, nolīs*, and *ausīs, faxīs*.

6 The second persons singular of the Indicative mood present tense of the fourth Conjugation; as, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7 The second persons of the Future tense of the Subjunctive mood, which are common; as, *dederis, amaveris*,

os are long; as, *Herōs, honōs, dominōs*.

Except

1 *Compōs, impōs*, and *ōs, offīs*.

2 Greek Nouns with little *o*; as, *Delōs, Palladōs*,

us are short; as, *Famulūs, empūr*.

Words that end in

Except

Excipe

1 Nomina in *es* tertiæ Declinationis graviter crescentia; ut, *milēs, arvēs*. Sed ex his, *Cerēs, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, & pēs* cum Compositis longa sunt.

2 *Es* quoque à *sum* unà cum Compositis; *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs, & penēs* Præpositio corripuntur.

3 Item Neutra singularia: & Nominativi plurales Græcorum in *es* breve non *eis* desinentia; ut, *Cacoethēs, Cyclopēs*.

is brevina sunt; ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs*.

Excipe

1 Obliquos plurales in *is*; ut *Musīs, domiīs, & quēis* pro quibus.

2 Producentia penultimam Genitivi crescentis; ut, *Samnīs, nitīs*.

3 Quæ sunt in *is* ab *eis* Diphthongo; ut, *Omnīs, Simoīs*.

4 Monosyllaba omnia; ut, *Vīs, līs*, præter *īs, bīs, & quīs*.

5 *Velīs*, cum Compositis, *malīs, nolīs*, item *ausīs, faxīs*.

6 Secundas personas singulares Indicativi præsentis quartæ Conjugationis; ut, *Audīs, dormīs*.

7 Secundas personas Futuri Subjunctivi, quæ sunt communes; ut, *dederis, amaveris*.

os producuntur; ut, *Herōs, bonōs, dominōs*.

Excipe

1 *Compōs, impōs, & ōs, ossis*.

2 Græca per *o* parvum; ut, *Delōs, Palladōs*.

us corripuntur; ut, *famulūs, tempūs*.

Excipe

Words that end in

Except

1 The Nominative cases of Nouns that increase long; as, *Virtūs, salūs*.

2 The Genitive cases singular, the Nominatives, the Vocatives and Accusatives plural of the fourth Declension; as, *hujus manūs, hē manūs, hae manūs, ō manūs*.

3 Monosyllables in *us*; as, *pūs, crūs*.

4 Words which are writ in Greek with *us*; as, *Paulūs, Clīūs*.

And the name *Jesūs* to be revered of all good men.

u are long; as, *manū, genū*.

y and *ys* are short; as, *Moly, Tiphys*.

The last syllable in every verse is common; *i. e.* it may be either long or short.

Appendix

Excipe

1 Nominativos acutè crescentium; ut, *Vir-*
tūs, salūs.

2 Genitivos singulares, Nominativos, Vo-
cativos, & Accusativos plurales Quartæ De-
clinationis; ut, *hujus manūs, hæ manūs, hæ*
manūs, & manūs.

3 Monosyllaba in *us*; ut, *pūs, crūs.*

4 Quæ à Græcis scribuntur per *us*; ut,
Panthūs, Clyūs.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Jēsus.

u producantur; ut, *Manū, genū.*

y & *ys* corripuntur; ut, *Moly, Tipy's.*

Ultima cujusque versūs syllaba habetur
communis.

Finia in

Appendix



Appendix Grammatices.

Appendix
Grammatices.

agitur

De Ordine.

HA Genus de vocum Elementis, Accidentibus Constructione & Pronunciatione, quæ quidem quatuor, quas jam diximus, Partes Grammaticæ tanquam propria & partialia singularum subiecta, consistunt, & ipsam orationem juxta Regulas Grammaticas componendâ (tanquam subiectum hujus Artis, ut Logici dicunt, adequatū, totale & principale) conspiciunt.

Nunc verò de Ordine vocū pauca subjiciemus. Nam & hoc etiam ad finem Grammatici aliquo modo conducit, ut, quo ordine voces sint collocandæ, ad orationem melius eloquendam, aut scribendam intelligat.

Cap. I.

De Ordine vocum Grammatico.

Dictionum
sive vocum

Ordo Dictionum est earundem inter se collocatio, ita ut alia necessario præcedat, alia sequatur.

Est autem Ordo triplex.

1 Grammaticus.	}	quem observant	Grammatici	}	in Oratione componenda
2 Oratorius			Oratores		
3 Poeticus.			Poetæ.		

1 Grammatico.

1 Ordo Grammaticus sive naturalis est, quando voces in oratione juxta naturam suam collocantur, nullo observato sonorum numero.

Atque hic ordo è sermone vernaculo præcipue cognoscitur.

Secundum hunc ordinem composita oratio Translatio dicitur.

In Translatione verò sic collocentur voces.

1 Vocativus, vocandi particula, & quæ ab illis pendet.

2 Nominativus, & quæ ab eo pendet.

3 Verbum

- 3 Verbum principale, & quæ ab eo pendent, *viæ*.
- 1 Infinitum, 2 Casus Verbi, & quæ ab illis pendent;
Hic tamen observandum.
- 1 Adverbium Verbo subjungitur.
- 2 Subjunctivum & Adjectivum conjungi debent.
Item Præpositio & suus casus.
- 3 Interrogativa, Relativa, Indefinita, & Partitiva,
Adverbia quædam & Conjunctiones præcedunt alias
voces.
- 4 Impersonale quandoque incipit orationem.
- 5 Accusativus ante verbum Impersonale exponi
debet per *quod* vel *ut*.
- 6 Si quid defuerit suppleri debet.

Exemplum Ordinis Grammatici.

Scipio & Læli, artes exercitationesque virtutum
sunt omnino arma apertissima senectutis; quæ culturæ
afferunt fructus mirificos in ætate omni, cum vixeris
multum diuque, non solum quia deserunt nunquam,
nè quidem in tempore extremo ætatis, quanquam id
est maximum; verum etiam quia *conscientia vitæ actæ
bene, recordatioque benefactorum multorum est jucun-*
dissima.

Cap. 2. De Ordine vocum Oratorio.

Ordoratorius est quando voces in oratione jux- 2 Oratorio.
ta Artem Oratoriam collocantur, observatis
quicquid certis, sed omnino dissimilibus sonorum numeris.
Juxta hunc ordinem compositæ voces *Prosa* live
solutam Orationem (quam & *καὶ ἑὸς λόγος* Oratio-
nem dicimus) constituunt.

In oratione componendâ,

- 1 Obliquus in principio, Nominativus in medio,
& Verbum in fine collocetur.
- 2 Adjectivum præcedere, Substantivum verò se-
qui debet.

3 Inter

3. Inter Adjectivum & Substantivum aliæ voces interseruntur.

4. Adverbia Præpositionesque cum sua casu venustius ante Verbum vel Participium suum collocantur.

5. In prosâ versum fugito : citare tamen potes.

6. Principium vel exitum carminis, nec principium nec exitum proæ facito.

7. Principii cura sit major, medii penè nulla, clausulæ verò maxima.

8. In fine & principio periodi commendantur dictiones polysyllabæ, sed clausula varianda est maxime.

9. Artificium numeri nunquam longius senis à fine syllabis observetur.

10. Ex longis omnibus clausula rarior est, rarissima ex omnibus brevibus, at ex temperatione longarum & brevium frequentior.

11. Vocalium in diversis vocibus concursus sit quàm rarissimus.

12. In sublimi stylo adhibendæ sunt longæ syllabæ; in humili verò breves.

Exemplum Ordinis Oratorii.

Aptissima omnino sunt Scipio & Læli, arma senectutis artes exercitationesque virtutum; quæ in omni ætate cultæ, cum multum diùque vixeris, miseros afferunt fructus; non solum quia nunquam deserunt, ne in extremo quidem tempore ætatis, quanquam id maximum est; verum etiam quia conscientia beneactæ vitæ, multorumque bene factorum recordatio, jucundissima est.

N.B. Neque tamen hæc præcepta sunt ita mordicus tenenda, quin ut puer ex doctissimorum observatione potiora iis apprehendat, & in componenda oratione proprias aures & pulmones consulat.

Itaque

Itaque sex septemve periodos à se compositas semel atque iterum reciter; sic enim experietur orationem suam numerosam esse, vel hiantem & asperam deprehendat.

Cap. 3.

De Ordine vocum Poëtico.

O Rdo Poëticus est quando voces in oratione juxta Artem Poëticam collocantur, observatis quidem & certis & similibus sonorum numeris.

Juxta hunc ordinem constricta Oratio *Carmen* sive Poëma dicitur.

3 Poëtes,

Juxta quem
Carmen
constituitur,



2 Pro Ratione	Numeri Versuum,	usitate dicitur	Hemistichon,	quod continet	dimidium versus.
			Distichon,		duos versus.
3 Pro Ratione	Materia	usitate dicitur	Tetrastichon,	quod continet	quatuor versus.
			Hexastichon,		sex versus.
			Eteostichon,		annorum numerum dierum
			Hemaro-		numerum
4 Pro Ratione	Materia	usitate dicitur	fichon,	quod continet	numerum
			Aerostichis, cujus initiales, finales; aut medix literæ, collectæ certum sensum præbent.		
5 Pro Ratione	Materia	usitate dicitur	Comœdia, Tragedia, Bucolica, Elegia, Ode, Hymnus, Georgica, Satira, Epigramma, Epitaphium, Epithalamium, Genethliacum, &c.	quod continet	

In quo dignoscendi sunt.

In *Carmine* verò ritè constituendo summa cura adhibenda est ad dignoscendos pedes, & diversa versuum genera. Ex pedibus enim conjunctis fiunt Versus, & ex Versibus Carmen.

Cap. 4.

De Pede, & ejus generibus.

I Per.

PES est duarum syllabarum pluriùve constitutio, ex certa temporum sive quantitatum observatione.

Per

Appendix Grammatices.

315

Res est { *1 Simplex*, *1 Dyssyllabus*, qui constat ex *2 Simplicibus*,
 atque is { duabus syllabis.
 aut { *2 Trissyllabus*, qui constat ex
 tribus syllabis.
2 Compositus, qui constat ex simplicibus
 pedibus junctis

Dyssyllabi { *Spondeus*, qui constat ex { duabus longis. a
pedes { *Pyrrhychius* { duabus brevibus. b
 sunt { *Trocheus*, { priore longâ, & po- c
 quatuor { *Iambus*, { priore brevi, & po- d
 { steriore longâ.

ut, a *Virtus*, b *Dēus*, c *annus*, d *amans*.

Trissyllabi sunt octo { *Molossus*, { tribus longis. e
 { *Tribrachus*, { tribus brevibus. f
 { *Dactylus*, { primâ longâ, reliquis
 { *Anapaestus*, { duabus brevibus. g
 { *Bacchius*, { primis duabus brevibus,
 { *Antibacchius*, { postremâ longâ. h
 { *Amphimacer*, { primâ brevi, reliquis
 { *Amphibrachus*, { duabus longis. i
 { { primis duabus longis,
 { { postremâ brevi. k
 { { primâ longâ, mediâ bre-
 { { vi, ultimâ longâ. l
 { { primâ brevi, mediâ lon-
 { { gâ, ultimâ brevi. m

ut, e *Magnâtes*. f *Dominus*. g *Scribere*. h *Petrus*.
 i *Honestas*. k *Audire*. l *Charitas*. m *Venire*.

Pedes compositi, potius pedum conjunctiones, quam *2 Compositi*,
Pedes à quibusdam vocantur, atque ab aliis omittun-
 tur tanquam non multum ad institutum Grammatici
 pertineant. Hos tamen tetrasyllabas nihilominus ad-
 jecimus, propter aliquem eorum usum in Carminibus
 illis quæ ab his nomen acceperunt, viz. Choriambicum
 Ionicum, &c.

Pedes igitur compositi præcipui sunt 18.

Proceleusmaticus

Dispondeus

Choriambus

Antispastus

Diambus

Dichoræus

Ionicus à majore

Ionicus à minore

Epitritus primus

Epitritus secundus

Epitritus tertius

Epitritus quartus

Paon primus

Paon secundus

Paon tertius

Paon quartus

qui constat ex

duobus Pyrrhichiis.

duobus Spondeis.

Trochæo & Iambe.

Iambe & Trochæo.

duobus Iambis

duobus Trochæis.

Spondeo & Pyrrhichio.

Pyrrhichio & Spondeo.

Iambe & Spondeo.

Trochæo & Spondeo.

Spondeo & Iambe.

Spondeo & Trochæo.

Trochæo & Pyrrhichio.

Iambe & Pyrrhichio.

Pyrrhichio & Trochæo.

Pyrrhichio & Iambe.

a

b

c

d

e

f

g

h

i

k

l

m

n

o

p

q

Uc. a Hōmīnē ūs. b Cōnclūdētes. c Hīstōria.
d Alē ardēr. e Sēvērītās. f Cōmpōbā ē. g Cānābi-
mās. h Vēnērāntēs. i Sāltāntēs. k Cōncīā i l Cōm-
mūnīānt. m Incāntāc. n Cōnsīcrē. o Rēsolvēt,
p Sōlārē. q Sēlērītās.

Ex pedibus autem, Iambus & Trochæus, Spondeus
& Dactylus, Anapestus & Tribrachus, usitatissimi sunt.

Cap. 5.

De Versuum variis generibus.

2 Versus,

Versus est oratio iusto atque legitimo pedum
numero constricta.

Se corundem
1 Scansio.

Versum composituro discendum est, pedibus ipsum
ritē metiri (sive in suos pedes distinguere) quam Scansio-
nem sive Dimensionem vocant; ut,

Iā rē nec || invādē || ō sēnē || mē lītēr || ibis in ūr-
Hei mihi || quōd dōm || nō || nōn lītēr || rē ||

Scan-

Cui acci-
dunt,
I Casura.

1 Caesura.

1 Caesura.

1 Caesura.

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartum } pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartū pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartū } pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartū } pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartū pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

cum pos- } primū } pedem relin-
 } secundū } quitur syl-
 } tertium } laba ; ut,
 } quartum }

cum pos- primū secundu- pedem relin-
centium quitur syl-
quartum laba ; ut,

cum pos- primū secundū tertium quartū } pedem relin- quitur syl- laba ; ut,

4 Synaresis.

4 Synaresis est duarum syllabarum in unam contractionis; ut,

Seu len||to fue||runt * al||var||a||v||imue||ter||a.

* pro alvearia.

Fir autem frequentius in his dictionibus, *Dii, diis, iidem, iisdem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semibomo, semiustus, deest, deero, deerit, anteambulo, antecit, cui, & Genitivus nominum in eius; ut, Ulysseus, Ulyssei, cum multis aliis.*

5 Diarefis.

5 Diarefis est ubi ex una syllaba dissecta sunt duæ; ut,

Debuerant suos evolv||ere suos. pro evoluisse.

6 Systole.

6 Systole est quæ longam syllabam corrumpit; ut,

Marr|| long||a|| decem|| m||e||unt fastidia menses.

7 Diastole.

7 Diastole est quæ brevem syllabam producit; ut,

In quem recidimus quicquid mor||ale|| est amur.

Atque hæc si reperitur in ultima dictionis syllaba *casura* frequentius dicitur; ut,

Omn||i|| vincit|| m||or||, et|| n||os|| c||edam||us|| m||or||i.

Versuum genera 1 Depositionis.

sunt varia pro

ratione

2 Melri.

1 Depositio.

1 Depositio est terminatio scansionis, ex qua versus abundantiam, plenitudinem, aut defectum cognoscimus.

Secundum hanc versus dicuntur;

Secundum
quam dici-
tur,

1 Acatale-

cticus.

2 Catale-

cticus.

3 Brachy-

talectic-

1 Acatalecticus, live perfectus, cui nihil aut super-
est aut deest; ut,

Muse || Jovis || sint filii.

2 Catalecticus, live semimutulus, cui in fine deest

syllaba; ut,

Muse || Jovem || can||ant.

3 Brachycatalecticus, live mutilus, cui in fine pes

deest; ut,

Muse || Jovis || gnate.

4 Hyper-

4. Hypercatalecticis, five exuberantibus, in quo una, aut duæ syllabæ superflunt; ut,

Musa || sôrô || rês sũt Mãnẽr (va.

Musa || sô, ô || rês Pã || aĩs (lugent.

2. Metrum est legitimus pedum numerus, qui mensuratur.

Quoad Metrum, versus dicitur,

Secundum

quod est,

1. Adonicus.

1. Adonicus, five Adonicus qui constat

ex dactylo & spondæo; ut,

Gaudia || pellẽ.

Pellẽ || mōĩm.

2. Archilochius, five Archilochius, qui constat

ex duobus dactylis, & syllabâ; ut,

Dĩscĩtẽ || tĩstĩtẽ || m.

3. Alcmæus, qui constat ex tribus

dactylis & syllabâ; ut,

Dĩstĩtẽ || tĩstĩtẽ || m m m m.

4. Glyconicus, qui constat e spondæo,

& duobus dactylis; ut;

Tandẽm || egẽã || nōĩĩs.

5. Pherecræus, qui constat ex spondæo,

dactylo & spondæo; ut,

Nĩgrĩs || hũquĩrã || vẽĩĩs.

Hic, versus aliquando; pro prioris

spondæo habet trochæum; ut,

Prĩdẽ || as nōvã || nũĩĩs.

Aliquando Anapæstum; ut,

Sĩmĩlĩ || sũĩĩĩĩ || ōĩĩĩ.

6. Asclepiadæus, qui constat ex

spondæo, dactylo, & syllabâ lon-

ga, & duobus deinde dactylis;

ut,

Mĩĩĩĩ || nãĩĩ || ōĩĩĩ || dũĩĩĩĩ || egĩĩĩĩ.

7. Sapphicus, qui constat ex trochæo

spondæo, & duobus demum trochæis;

ut,

Jãm rãĩĩĩĩ || tẽĩĩ || ĩĩĩĩ || vĩĩĩ || atquẽ || dũĩĩĩĩ.

1. Dimeter,

2. Trimeter,

3. Tetrameter.

qui constat pedibus

duobus, estque

tribus, estque

quatuor, estque

3 Phalencius.

4 Pentameter,

9 Elegiacus.

10 Heroicus.

5 Hexameter,

11 Iambicus.

quinque, estque

qui constat pedibus

sex, estque

Post tres versus Sapphicos, Adonicus addi solet.

8 Phalencius, qui constat ex spondeo, dactylo, & tribus tandem trochæis, ut,

Quōquō||dīffīgī||ās pā||rens Mā||bīi
Nostmum||non pote||ris la||tere||nasum.

9 Elegiacus, qui constat dactylo vel spondeo, cum syllabâ longâ; & duobus tandem omninodactylis, cum syllabâ item longâ; ut,

Rēs ēst||sōlīcī||ī||plēnā cī||mōrīs
(āmōr.

Hēi mībī||quōd dōmī||nō||nōrīcēt
(īrē||rūō.

10 Heroicus, qui constat quatuor primis locis ē spondeo vel dactylo, quinto dactylo, & sexto spondeo; ut,

Tyrīzī||ū pātī||rēcū||baus sūb rē||
(mīnēfagī.

Sylvē||strem rēmū||ī Mū||sām mēdi
(īrē||ā||rēnā.

Reperitur etiam spondeus aliquando in quinto loco; ut,

Chārā Dē||ūm sōbō||rēs māgī||īfōrī||
(īacīē||mētīm.

Est & Heroicus Tetrameter qui constat ex quatuor postremis Hexametri pedibus; ut,

Aut Ephēsum bīmā||īs rē Cōrīnthī.

11 Iambicus, qui constat ē pedibus Iambicis; ut,

Sū||lēt īp||sā Rō||mā rī||rītū||rūt

Est autem hic versus

1 *Purus*, sive *Legitimus*, qui constat
 è solis Iambis; ut,

Pbāse || *ūs il* || *ē, quē* || *vidē* || *is hōspi-*
 (*lē*)

2 *Imparus*, qui aliquot in locis re-
 cipit pedem diversum Iambos; ut,

Jūs ē || *ix ā* || *mīs*, *ōp* || *prīmī* || *lēgēs*
 (*tīmōr*)

3 *Scazon*, sive *Choliambus*, i. e. clau-
 dicans Iambus, qui in sexto loco
 Spondæum, & in quinto Iambum re-
 tinet; ut,

Nec sōn || *ē lā* || *brā p. o* || *ūi* || *cābā* || *ī-*
 (*nō*).

N. B. Recipit Iambicus interdum (ob ma-
 jorem gravitatem exprimendam) in lo-
 cis imparibus (i. e. primo, tertio, &
 quinto) pro Iambo tribrachum, spon-
 dæum, dactylum, anapæstum; atque in
 locis paribus (i. e. secundo & quarto)
 quandoque tribrachum, spondæum rari-
 ūs, ultimum verò locum raro mutat; &
 saltem binos pedes Iambos perpetuo sibi
 servat.

Hic versus etiam dicitur
 in duo genera usitiora

Vel

1 *Dimetrum*, sive *tetrametrum*, qui
 constat ex quatuor pedibus quē-
 que metimur

Per dipodiam; i. e. geminum
 pedem more Græco; ut,

O cāminū || *dūlē* || *ēs* || *nō. a.*

Per monopodiam, i. e. sin-
 gulos pedes more Latino;
 ut,

O cāminū || *dūlē* || *ēs* || *nō. a.*

6 Hep. a.

12 Archilochius Heptameter.

6 Heptameter,	qui constat pedibus	septe, et sequitur	12 Archilochius Heptameter, qui constat quatuor primis pedibus Heroicis & tribus tandem trochæis; ut,
			<p>2 Trimetrum sive senarium, qui senis constat pedibus, quemque metimur,</p> <p>Per dipodiam; ut,</p> <p>Quī nōs damnant sūt hī trī ō nēs mārīmī,</p> <p>Per monopodiam; ut,</p> <p>Quī nōs damnant sūt hī trī ō nēs mārīmī,</p>

Plura qui quaerit, Autores qui de *Arte Poëtica* fusiūserunt, otiosior consular.

Et discas oportet, & quod didicisti agendo confirmes.
Sen. Epist.

Doctissimorum enim virorum usus pluris faciendus,
quàm omnes omnium Grammaticorum Canores.
Danehus.

Artificis, solus, qui facit, usus erit. Ovid.

The Latine Grammar teacheth the Art or Skill to write or speak Latine aright:
It is divided into four parts.

A Synopsis or short view of the Latine Grammar.

I. Etymologic, which treateth of the Eight parts of speech, and their Accidents, Lib. II.	I. Orthographie, which teacheth how to spell words, Lib. I.	I. Of Letters. C. 1.	C. 1.
It treateth	It treateth	2. Of Syllables. C. 2.	C. 2.
1 In General. C. 1.	1 In General. C. 1.	3. Of Right Utterance. C. 3.	C. 3.
2 In particular, C. 2.	2 In particular, C. 2.	4. Of points in Sentences. C. 4.	C. 4.
1 Of a Noun and	1 Its proper Accidents. C. 1. which are	Cafe, C. 3.	
2 Of a Pronoun, C. 23.	2 Gender, C. 4. the Rules to know which are	1. General, C. 5.	1. Of Proper, C. 5.
	3 Declension, C. 11.	2. Of Adjectives, C. 10.	2. Common, C. 6.
			not increa- sing. C. 7.
			Long, C. 8.
			Short, C. 9.
			the first, C. 11.
			the second, C. 12.
			the third, C. 13.
			the fourth, C. 14.
			the fifth, C. 15.
			To which belong the manner of declining Adjectives, C. 16.
			4 Comparison, C. 17.
			To these belong the Rules of Heteroclitics, which are
			variant, C. 18.
			Deficient in Case, C. 19.
			Number, C. 20.
			Redundant, C. 21.
			1. Its kindes, C. 22.
			2. Of a Pronoun, C. 23.

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

III. *Syntaxis* which teacheth the due joyning words together, *Lib. III. by way of*

		Accidents, <i>cha. 24</i>	
3 Of a Verb and its	Form of the Conjugation	first, <i>cha. 25.</i>	
		second, <i>cha. 26.</i>	
		third, <i>cha. 27.</i>	
		fourth, <i>cha. 28.</i>	
Hither- to be- long	1 The Preter-perfect Tenses	Of Verbs in O	Regular { Simple <i>cha. 29.</i>
			{ Compound c. 30.
			1 { Simple <i>cha. 31.</i>
			{ Compound, and the
1 The Rules to know	1 The Supines		Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in <i>or</i> , <i>cha. 31.</i>
			2 Irregular, <i>cha. 33.</i>
			3 Defectives, <i>cha. 34.</i>
2 The forming of		Irregular Verbs, <i>cha. 35.</i>	
		the Verb <i>Sum</i> , <i>cha. 36.</i>	
3 Impersonals and Derivatives,		<i>cha. 37.</i>	
4 Of a Participle,		<i>cha. 38.</i>	
5 Of an Adverb,		<i>cha. 39.</i>	
6 Of a Conjunction,		<i>cha. 40.</i>	
7 Of a Preposition,		<i>cha. 41.</i>	
8 Of an Interjection,		<i>cha. 42.</i>	
1 Concordance, c. 1. containing the Rule	of the	first	Concord { Sect. 1.
		second	
		third	
		Case of the Relative. Sect. 4.	
1 Of Nouns	1 Substantivos,	Ge.	Case { Sect. 7.
		Da.	
		Ac.	
		Ab.	
2 Adj:ctives,		Sect. 8.	
3 Sect. 7. with a		Sect. 9.	
* The Ablative Case absolute,		Sect. 10.	
2 Of Pronouns,		<i>cha. 4.</i>	
3 Of Verbs,	Nom.	Case,	Sect. 12.
			Sect. 13.
			Sect. 14.
			Sect. 15.
c. 5. with		Sect. 16.	
* Passives,	Acc.		
Sect. 17.		Abl. { Sect. 16.	

A short view of the Latine GRAMMAR.

To	Verbs having divers Constructions.	
which		Sect. 18
also	The Infinitive Mood.	Sect. 19
be-	The Gerunds. Sect. 20	Di, Sect. 21
long	Supines. Sect. 24	Do, Sect. 22
the	Time. Sect. 26	Dum, Sect. 23
Rules	Space.	Sect. 27
of	Place.	Sect. 28
	Impersonals.	Sect. 29
4	Of Participles C. 6. Sect. 30.	
5	Of Adverbs, { Cases. } Sect. 31	
	C. 7. with { Moods. }	
6	Of Conjunctions, C. 8. which { Couple Words } Sect. 32.	
		{ Govern Moods }
7	Of Prepositions, C. 9. Sect. 33	
8	Of Interjections, C. 10. Sect. 34	

To	{ Etymologie }	{ Of a Word, C. 11. Sect. 35
	{ belong Figures }	Sect. 36
	{ Syntaxis }	{ Of Construction, C. 12.
IV. Prosodia, which	Spirits and Tones, C. 1.	
teacheth the right		
Pronunciation of		
Words, Lib. IV.	Quantity of	First and Middle, C. 2.
by observing their	Syllables	
		Last, C. 3.

To Grammar (after a manner)	1 Grammatical, C. 1.	
pertaineth that which	2 Rhetorical, C. 2.	
is said concerning the		
Order of Words, which is	3 Poetical, C. 3. touching which we consider the sorts of	{ Feet, C. 4. C. 5. Verses, }

A TABLE of the Heads of the Latine Grammar.

Chap.	Page	Chap.	Page
O F Grammar, and its Parts	16	O f the Declining of Adje-	
	2	H ives	64
LIB. I. Of Orthographie	2	O f Comparison	68
1 Of Letters	4	O f varying Heteroclitics	74
2 Of Syllables	8	O f Heteroc. that want case	78
3 Of Right utterance	12	O f Heteroclitics that want	
4 Of Points and Sentences	14	Number	80
Lib. II. Of Etymologie	16	O f Redundant Heteroclitics	86
1 Of the eight Parts of Speech,		O f the Kindes of Nouns	90
and their general Accidents	16	O f a Pronoun	94
2 Of a Noun, and its proper Ac-		O f a Verb, and its Accidents	
cidents	20		106
3 Of Case	22	O f the form of the first Con-	
4 Of Gender	22	jugation	112
5 Of the general Rules of Pro-		O f the form of the second	
per Names	26	Conjugation	116
6 Of the general Rules of Com-		O f the form of the third Con-	
mon Names	28	jugation	120
7 Of the first special Rule	30	O f the form of the fourth Con-	
8 Of the second special Rule	34	jugation	124
9 Of the third special Rule	38	O f the Preterperfect tense of	
10 Of the Genders of Adjectives		Verbs Simple	128
	42	O f the Preterperfect tense of	
11 Of the first Declension	44	Compound Verbs	136
12 Of the second Declension	50	O f the Supines of Simple	
13 Of the third Declension	52	Verbs	142
14 Of the fourth Declension	60	O f the Supines of Compound	
15 Of the fifth Declension	62	Verbs, and of the Preterperfect	
		tense	

A Table of the Heads, &c.

Chap.	Pag.	Chap.	Page
<i>sense of Verbs in ox</i>	146	11 <i>Of the Figures of a word</i>	174
33 <i>Of certain Verbs Irregular</i>	148	12 <i>Of the Figures of Constructi-</i>	276
34 <i>Of Verbs that want certain</i>	154	<i>on</i>	
<i>Moods and Tenses</i>	160	Lib. IV. <i>Of Profodic</i>	282
35 <i>Of forming Verbs Irregular</i>	170	1 <i>Of Spirits, Tones, or Accents</i>	ib.
36 <i>Of forming the Verb Sum</i>	172	2 <i>Of the quantity of the first and</i>	288
37 <i>Of Verbs Impersonals and</i>	182	<i>middle Syllables</i>	
<i>Derivatives</i>	188	3 <i>Of the quantity of the last syl-</i>	301
38 <i>Of a Participle</i>	192	<i>lables.</i>	
39 <i>Of an Adverb</i>	196	Appendix <i>Grammatices</i>	310
40 <i>Of a Conjunction</i>	198	1 <i>De ordine</i>	310
41 <i>Of a Preposition</i>	198	2 <i>Vocum</i>	311
42 <i>Of an Interjection</i>	214	3 <i>Poëtico</i>	313
LIB. III. <i>Of Syntax</i>	224	4 <i>De Pede, & ejus generibus</i>	314
1 <i>Of Concordance</i>	226	5 <i>De Versuum variis generibus</i>	318
2 } <i>Of the Government of</i>	258		
4 } <i>Nouns</i>	260		
5 } <i>Pronouns</i>	264		
6 } <i>Verbs</i>	268		
7 } <i>Participles</i>	272		
8 } <i>Adverbs</i>			
9 } <i>Conjunctions</i>			
10 } <i>Prepositions</i>			

A PRAYER to be used every day,
for Childrens good proceeding at their
BOOKS.

O Almighty Lord and merciful Father,
maker of Heaven and Earth, which of
thy free liberality givest wisdom abund-
antly to all that with faith and full assu-
rance ask it of thee. Beautifie by the light
of thy heavenly grace the towardness of our
wits, the which with all powers of nature
thou hast poured into us, that we may not
only understand those things which may
effectually bring us to the knowledge of
thee and the Lord Jesus our Saviour, but
also with our whole heart and will con-
stantly follow the same, and receive daily
increase through thy bountiful goodness
towards us, as well in good life as learning;
so that thou which workest all things in all
creatures, maist make thy gracious bene-
fits shine in us, to the endless glory and
honour of thine immortal Majesty. *Amen.*

Pro Puerorum in Studiis
pio progressu, Precatio
quotidiana.

Domine Pater, Celi ac Terra
effector, qui liberaliter tribuis
sapientiam omnibus eam a te cum
fiducia petentibus: Exorna (qua-
sumus) ingeniorum nostrorum in-
nitatem, quam cum ceteris natu-
ra viribus nobis infudisti, lumine
divina gratia tue; ut non modo
qua ad cognoscendum te & Sal-
vatores nostrum Dominum le-
sum valeant, intelligamus; sed
etiam tota mente, & voluntate
persequamur, & indes benigni-
tate tua, tum doctrinam, tum piete-
te proficiamus; ut qui effici omnia
in omnibus, in uobis resplendescere
dona tua facias, ad gloriam sem-
piternam Majestatis tuae. Amen.

Our Father which art in heaven, Hallow-
ed be thy Name; Thy Kingdome come,
Thy will be done in Earth as it is in Hea-
ven. Give us this day our daily bread. And
forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them
that trespass against us. And lead us not
into temptation, But deliver us from evil,
For thine is the Kingdome, the Power, and
the Glory, for ever and ever, *Amen.*

Pater noster, qui es in caelis, San-
ctificetur Nomen tuum. Ade-
niat regnum tuum. Fiat Voluntas
tua, sicut in caelo, sic & in terra.
Panem nostrum quotidianum da
nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debi-
ta nostra, sicut & nos dimittimus
debitis nostris: Et ne nos in-
ducas in tentationem, sed libera
nos a malo. Quia tuum est Reg-
num, Potentia, & gloria, in secu-
la seculorum. Amen.

FINIS.

re
uis
um
as-
ty-
ide
odo
al-
le-
sed
ate
ni-
ra-
hia
cere
m-
n.

an-
ve-
stas
rra.
da
ebi-
mu
in-
bera
Reg-
cu-